



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

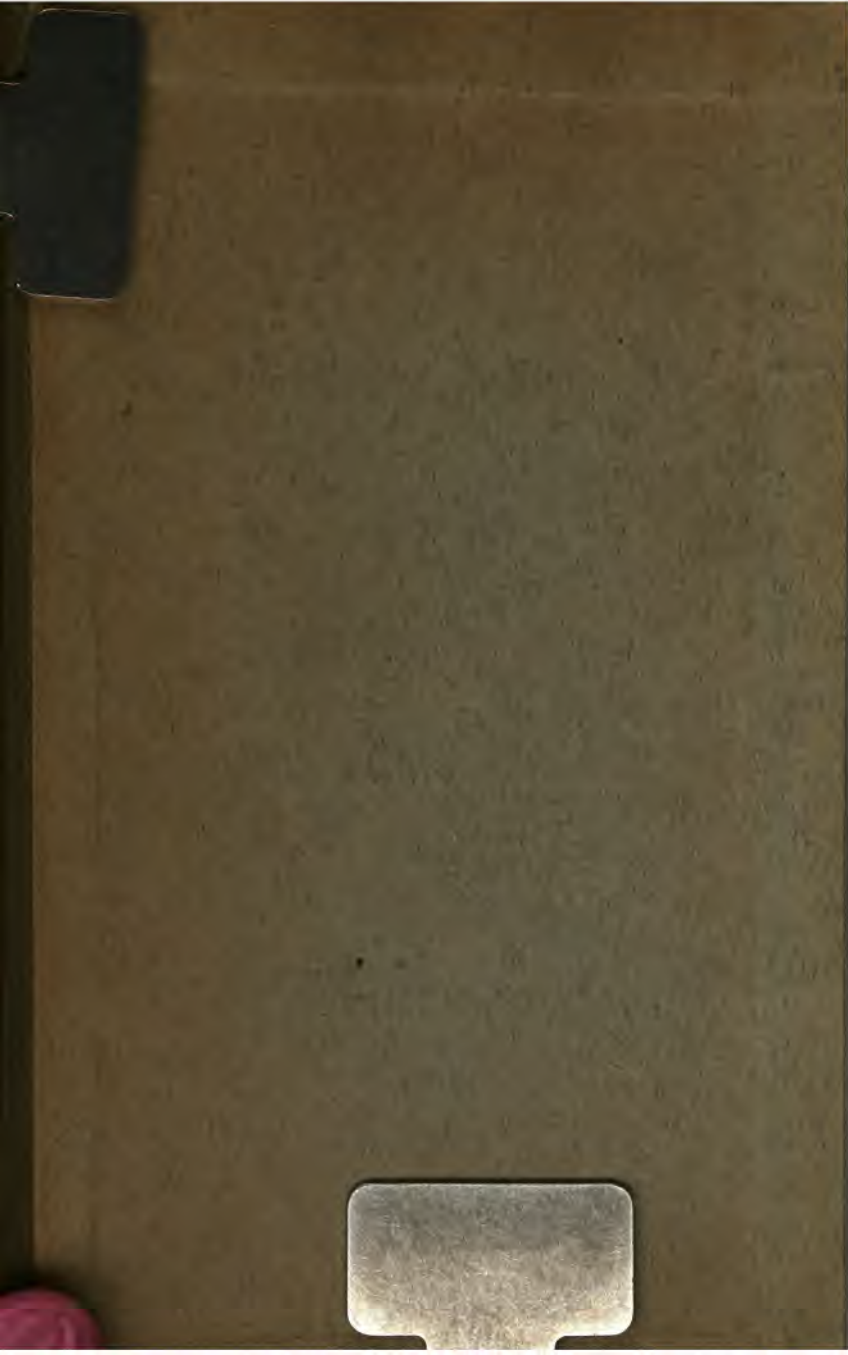
### About Google Book Search

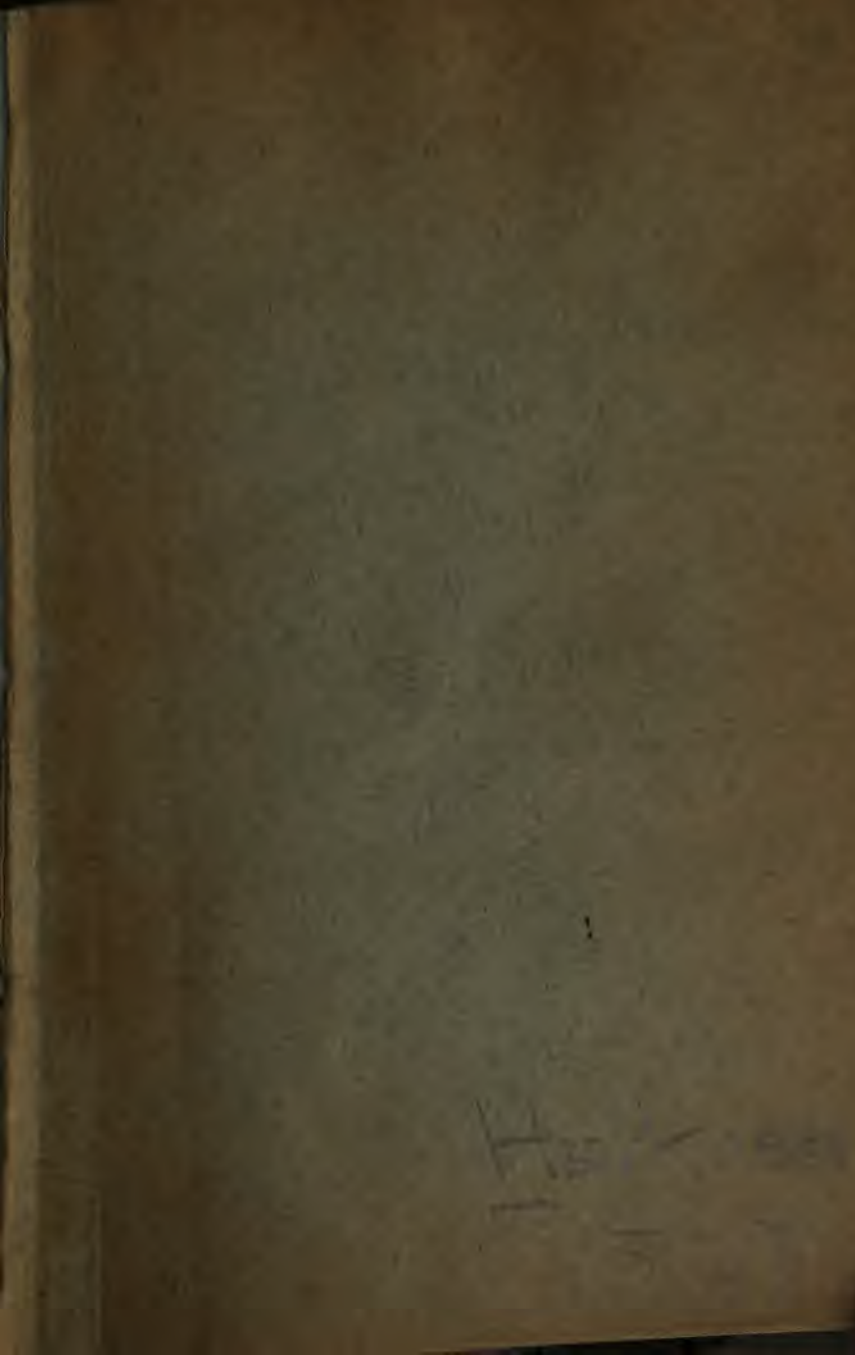
Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

NYPL RESEARCH LIBRARIES



3 3433 08231278 0

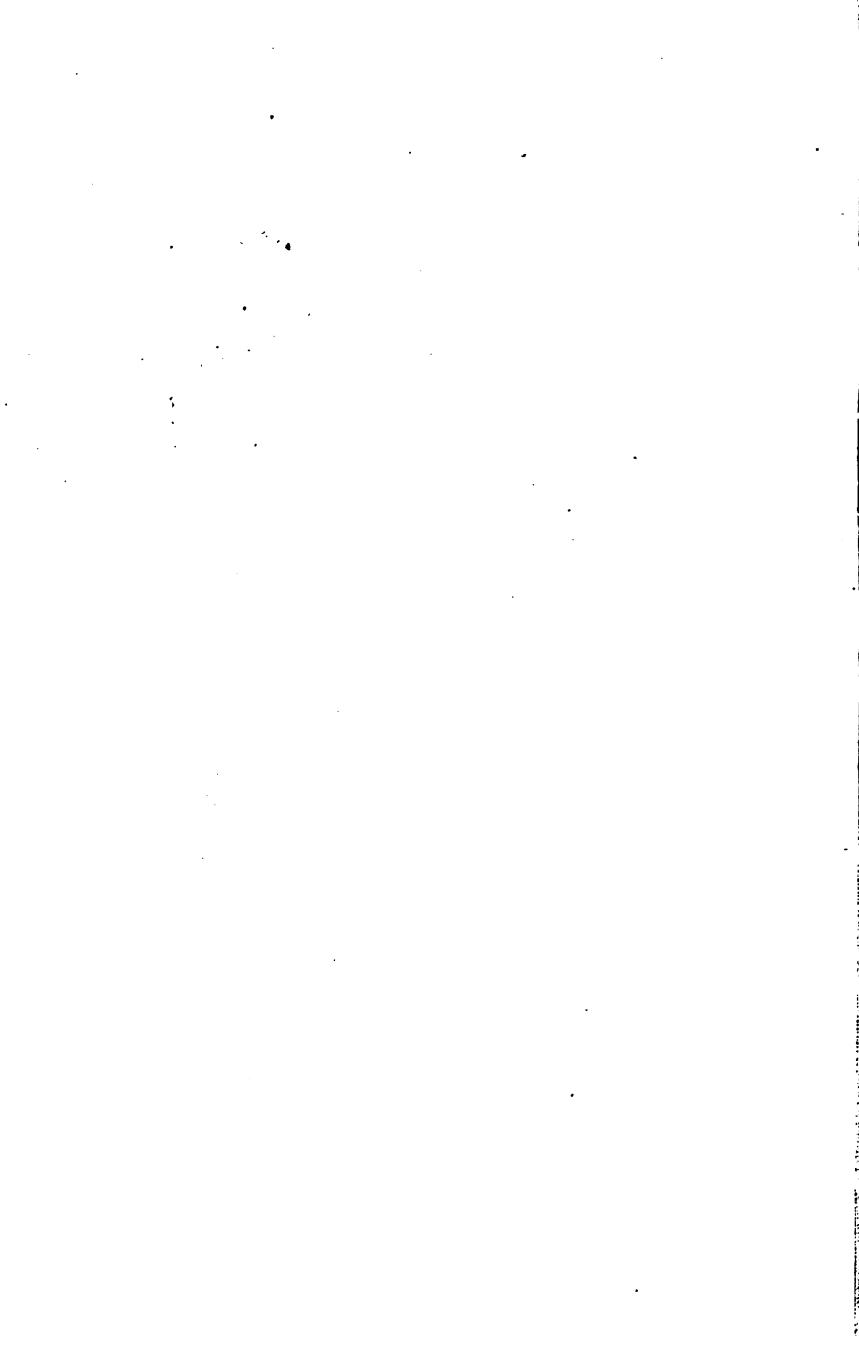












13752

478.2

3161 21

pages.

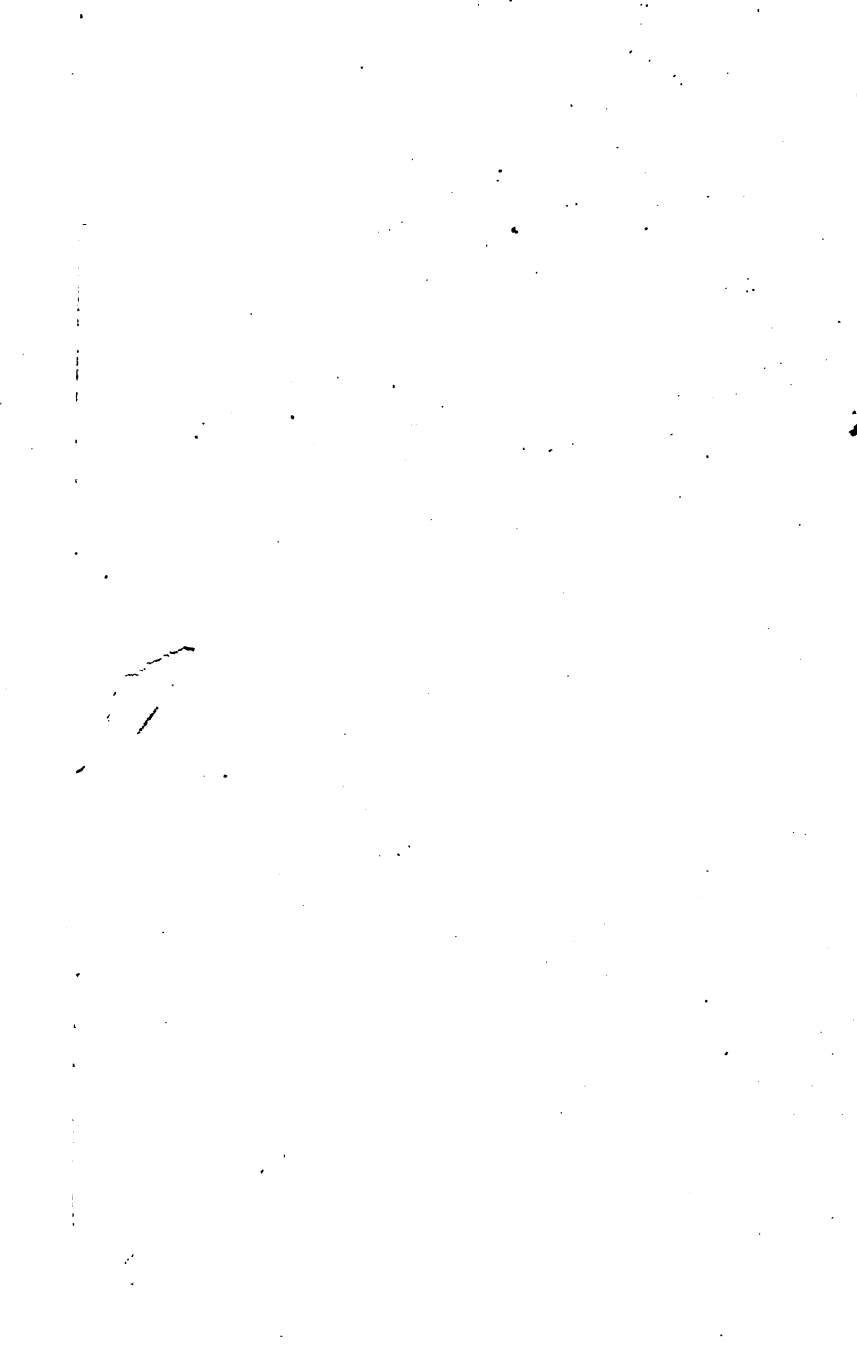
**Acts of the Apostles**, according to the text of AUGUSTUS HAHN,  
with Notes and a Lexicon by JOHN J. OWEN, D. D., LL. D. With  
Map. 12mo.

**Arnold's First Greek Book**,\* on the Plan of the First Latin  
Book. 12mo. 297 pages.

SEE END OF THIS VOLUME.

Harkness

REF



1874  
1879

12/4/12

A

# PRACTICAL INTRODUCTION

TO

# LATIN COMPOSITION.

FOR  
SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES.

BY

ALBERT HARKNESS, PH.D.,

PROFESSOR IN BROWN UNIVERSITY.

AUTHOR OF

"A LATIN GRAMMAR," "AN INTRODUCTORY LATIN BOOK," "A LATIN READER,"  
"A FIRST GREEK BOOK," ETC.

NEW YORK:

D. APPLETON AND COMPANY,

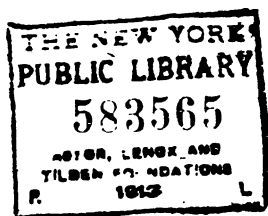
90, 92, & 94 GRAND STREET.

LONDON: 16, LITTLE BRITAIN.

1869.

Small Branch

Long Library.



Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1908, by

ALBERT HARKNESS,

In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the District of Rhode Island.

NOV 1908  
CLERK  
DISTRICT

## PREFACE.

THIS volume is intended to aid the classical student in acquiring a practical acquaintance with the difficult but important subject of Latin composition. It aims to be at once simple, progressive, and complete. Starting with the beginner as soon as he has learned a few grammatical forms, it conducts him step by step through a progressive series of lessons and exercises, until he is so far master both of the theory and of the practice of the subject, that he no longer needs the aid of a special textbook.

The work consists of three parts, of which the first is purely elementary, and is intended as a companion to the Reader. It aims to give the pupil familiarity with the power and use of grammatical inflections, and facility in the application of the great and controlling principles of the language.

Part Second will furnish the learner instruction and practice in Latin composition throughout the subsequent stages of his preparatory course for college. The exercises have special reference to the syntax of the language, and are, to a great extent, imitations of the ordinary constructions contained in the Commentaries of Caesar, and in the Orations of Cicero. In subject matter they also relate to topics contained in those works.

Part Third, intended for the earlier portion of a collegiate course of study, aims to introduce the student to a practical



acquaintance with the elements of Latin style. The Exercises are, with slight changes, translations of sentences carefully selected from the works of Cicero.

In making this selection, it has been the constant aim of the author, not only to give the student clear and well-defined illustrations of Latin constructions and usages, but also thoughts and sentiments of intrinsic interest and worth.

To explain more fully the plan of the work, the author begs leave to call attention to the following points :—

I. For all grammatical rules and principles, the student is referred directly to the grammar. The advantages of this arrangement are obvious. It not only saves room, and thus makes it possible to bring an extended course in Latin composition within the compass of a convenient manual, but also saves the time of the pupil, by relieving him from the worse than useless task of learning new rules, instead of applying those with which he is already familiar.

II. A series of Models, selected from the writings of Cicero, the great master of Latin style, extends through the entire work. English sentences are given to be translated into Ciceronian Latin. Opposite each of these stands Cicero's own expression for the same thought. Then follow Remarks, explaining the process by which we pass from the English expression to the Latin, and commenting upon such peculiarities as seem to require attention. Such a series of Models, properly explained, will, it is thought, be the best possible guide for the learner in the actual work of writing Latin.

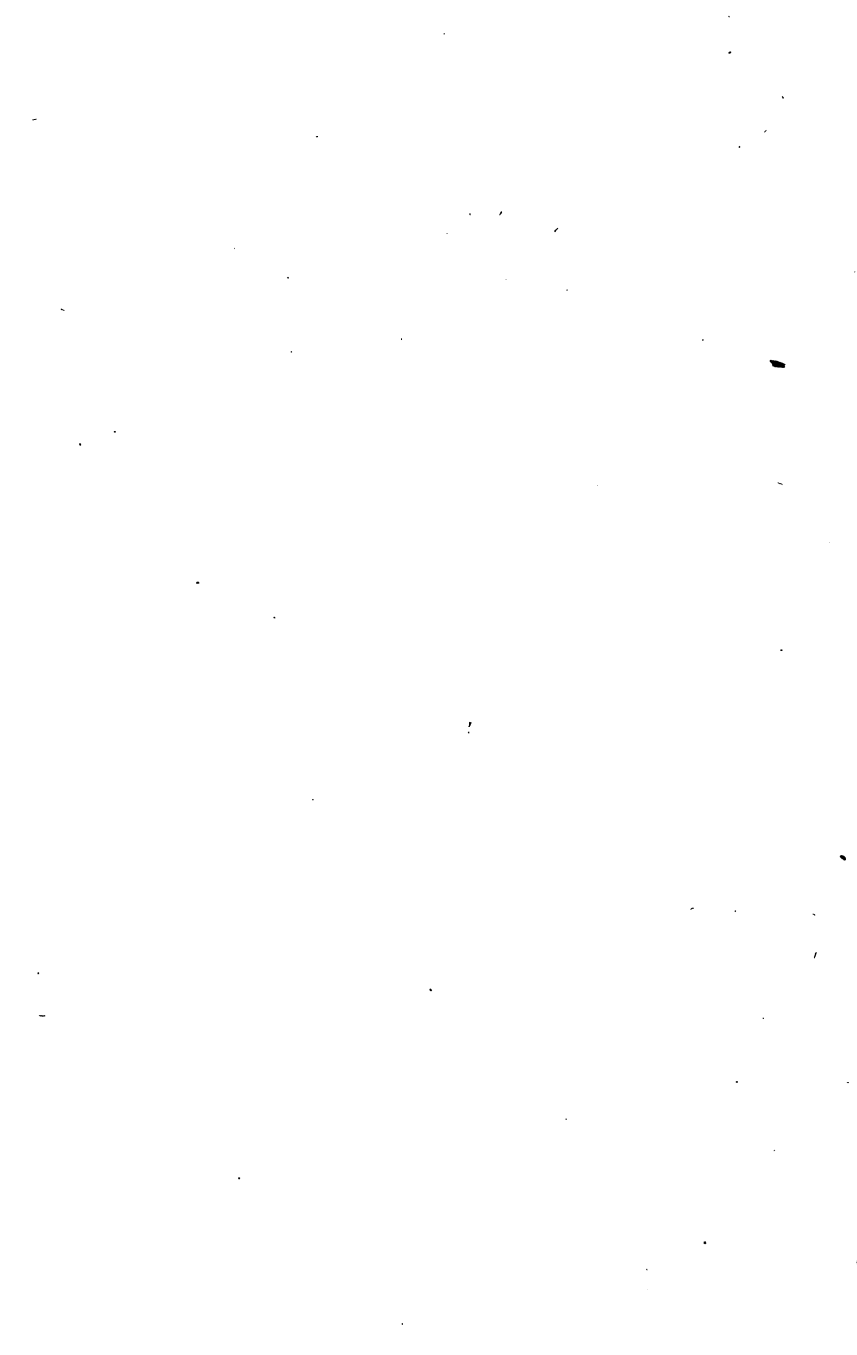
III. Special attention has been given to the important subject of Synonymes and Idioms. But care has been taken not to make peculiarities of construction too prominent. The learner needs to become acquainted with the regular and ordinary

usages, before he is prepared to appreciate those which are exceptional and peculiar.

In this connection, the author is happy to say that Mr. Charles B. Goff has kindly aided him in the preparation of some of the Exercises of Part Second, and Mr. Edward H. Cutler in the preparation of the Vocabularies and in the reading of the proofs.

In conclusion, the author cannot forbear to express his grateful acknowledgments to the classical instructors of the country, who, by their fidelity and skill in the use of his books, have given them a success so far beyond his most sanguine expectations. To their hands this volume is gratefully and respectfully committed.

BROWN UNIVERSITY, *August*, 1868.



# CONTENTS.

---

## PART FIRST.

### GRAMMATICAL FORMS AND RULES.

LESSON	PAGE
I. Declension of Nouns. . . . .	1
II. Adjectives and Pronouns. . . . .	3
III., IV. Verbs. . . . .	6
V. Agreement of Nouns. — Nominative and Vocative. . . . .	10
VI., VII. Use of the Accusative. . . . .	11
VIII. Use of the Dative. . . . .	15
IX., X. Use of the Genitive. . . . .	17
XI.—XIV. Use of the Ablative. . . . .	20
XV. Adjectives. Pronouns. . . . .	26
XVI. Agreement of Verbs. — Indicative. . . . .	28
XVII.—XIX. Tenses and Use of the Subjunctive. . . . .	30
XX. Imperative. Infinitive. . . . .	36
XXI. Gerunds, Supines, Participles. — Particles. . . . .	37
XXII., XXIII. Gender. Formation of Cases. . . . .	39
XXIV.—XXVII. Synopsis of Conjugation. Formation of the Parts of the Verb. . . . .	41
XXVIII.—XXX. Irregular, Defective, and Impersonal Verbs. . . . .	46

## PART SECOND.

### LATIN SYNTAX.

XXXI. Subject and Predicate. . . . .	50
XXXII. Forms of Subject. . . . .	52
XXXIII. Forms of Predicate. . . . .	54
XXXIV. Forms of Modifiers. . . . .	56

XXXV.	Interrogative and Imperative Sentences. . . . .	58
XXXVI.	Complex and Compound Sentences. . . . .	60
XXXVII.	Agreement of Nouns. . . . .	62
XXXVIII.	Nominative and Vocative. . . . .	64
XXXIX.	Accusative as Direct Object. . . . .	66
XL.	Two Accusatives. . . . .	68
XLI.	Two Accusatives. — Special Constructions. . . . .	70
XLII.	Accusative as Subject of Infinitive. In Agreement with another Accusative. . . . .	73
XLIII.	Accusative in an Adverbial Sense. In Exclamations. . . . .	75
XLIV.	Dative with Verbs. . . . .	77
XLV.	Dative with Verbs. Special Constructions. . . . .	80
XLVI.	Dative with Adjectives and Derivatives. . . . .	82
XLVII.	Genitive with Nouns and Adjectives. . . . .	84
XLVIII.	Genitive with Verbs. . . . .	87
XLIX.—LIII.	Ablative. . . . .	89
LIV.	Adjectives. . . . .	102
LV., LVI.	Pronouns. . . . .	105
LVII.	Verbs. — Agreement, Voice, Tense. Indicative Mood. . . . .	110
LVIII.	Subjunctive Mood. . . . .	112
LIX.	Subjunctive of Purpose or Result. . . . .	115
LX.	Relative Clauses of Purpose or Result. . . . .	118
LXI.	Subjunctive of Condition. . . . .	120
LXII.	Subjunctive of Concession. . . . .	123
LXIII.	Subjunctive of Cause and Time. . . . .	125
LXIV.	Subjunctive in Indirect Questions. . . . .	128
LXV.	Subjunctive by Attraction. Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse. . . . .	130
LXVI.	Indirect Discourse. . . . .	132
LXVII.	Imperative Mood. . . . .	134
LXVIII., LXIX.	Infinitive Mood. . . . .	136
LXX.	Subject and Object Clauses. . . . .	141
LXXI.	Gerunds. . . . .	143
LXXII.	Gerunds and Supines. . . . .	146
LXXIII.	Participles. . . . .	148
LXXIV., LXXV.	Particles. . . . .	150
LXXVI.	Forms for expressing Purpose. . . . .	155
LXXVII.	Forms for expressing Condition. . . . .	157
LXXVIII.	Forms for expressing Concession. . . . .	159
LXXIX.	Forms for expressing Time. . . . .	162
LXXX.	Forms for expressing Cause. . . . .	164

## PART THIRD.

## ELEMENTS OF LATIN STYLE.

## CHAPTER I.

## CHOICE OF WORDS AND CONSTRUCTIONS.

LXXXI.	Abstract Nouns. Number. . . . .	167
LXXXII.	Substantives united by Prepositions. . . . .	170
LXXXIII.	Special Words and Expressions. . . . .	173
LXXXIV.	Rendering of certain Nouns and Adjectives. . . . .	175
LXXXV.	Adjectives — continued. . . . .	179
LXXXVI.	Pronouns. — Personal. Reflexive. . . . .	182
LXXXVII.	Pronouns. — Possessive. . . . .	185
LXXXVIII.	Pronouns. — Demonstrative. Relative. . . . .	188
LXXXIX.	Pronouns. — Interrogative. Indefinite. . . . .	191
XC.	Verbs. — Active. Passive. Transitive. Intransitive. . . . .	194
XCI.	General Statements. . . . .	197
XCII.	Verbs. — Tenses. . . . .	200
XCIII.	Verbs. — Indicative Mood. . . . .	204
XCIV.	Verbs. — Potential Mood. . . . .	206
XCV.	Verbs. — Imperative Mood. . . . .	209
XCVI.	Verbs. — Infinitive Mood. . . . .	212
XCVII.	Verbs. — Participles. . . . .	214
XCVIII.	Distinction in the Use of Participles, Relative Clauses, and Clauses with Conjunctions. . . . .	218
XCIX.	Expressions of Duty, Necessity. . . . .	221
C.	Use of Special Verbs. . . . .	224
CI.	Prepositions. . . . .	227
CII.	Adverbs and Conjunctions. . . . .	231

## CHAPTER II.

## ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS AND CLAUSES.

CIII.	Arrangement of Words. . . . .	235
CIV.	Euphony and Rhythm. . . . .	238
CV.	Arrangement of Clauses. . . . .	241

**CHAPTER III.**

**STRUCTURE OF LATIN SENTENCES.**

CVI. Compactness of Structure. . . . .	244
CVII. Unity of the Latin Sentence. . . . .	247
CVIII. Perspicuity. . . . .	251
CIX. Logical Qualities of the Sentence. . . . .	255
CX. Latin Periods. . . . .	258
NOTES. . . . .	263
VOCABULARY. . . . .	277

## EXPLANATION OF REFERENCES AND ABBREVIATIONS.

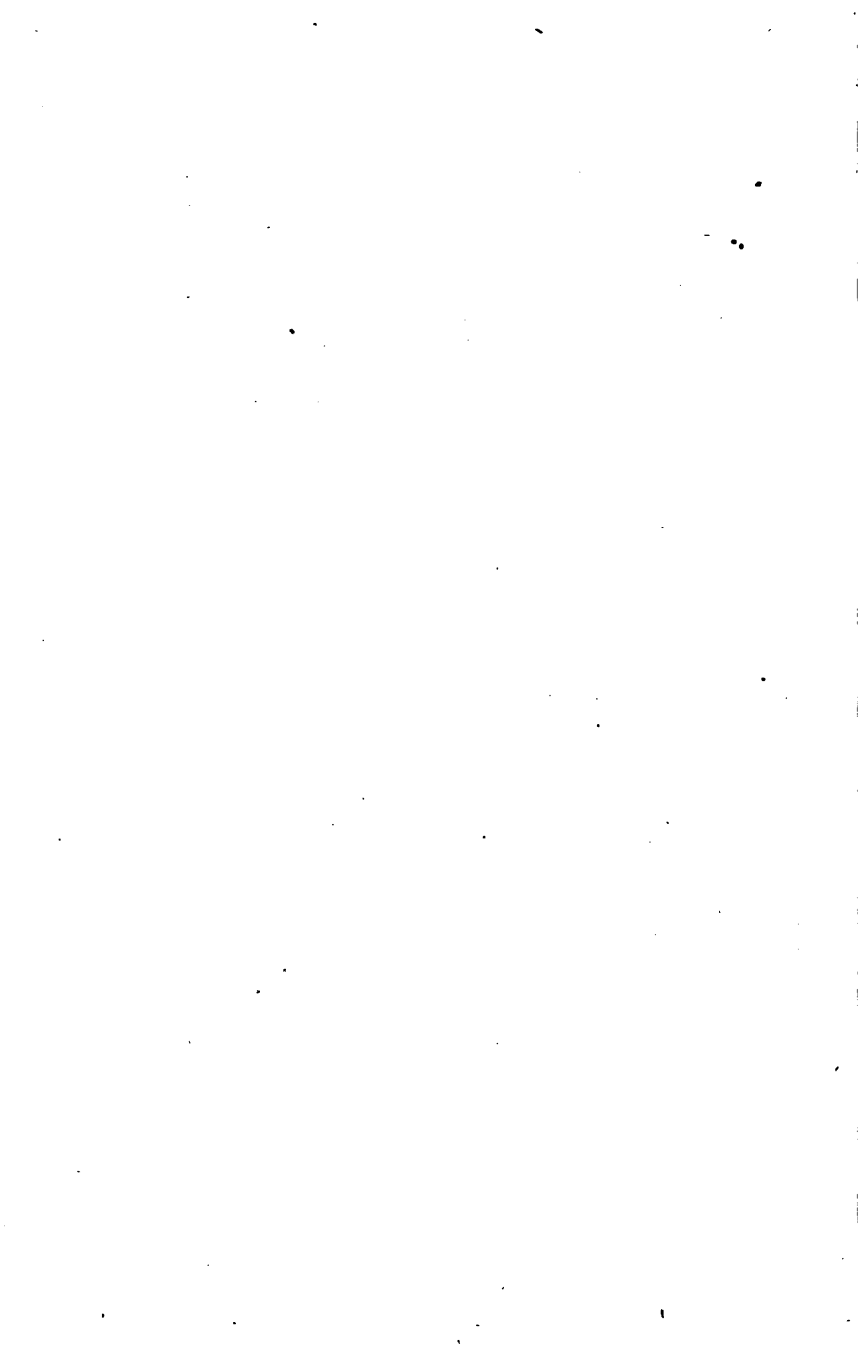
---

ALL reference numerals in the "Lessons from the Grammar," and those marked "G" in other parts of the work, refer to the author's Latin Grammar. The other references are to articles in this work.

The following abbreviations occur:—

abl. . . . .	ablative.	indec. . . . .	indeclinable.
abl. abs. . .	ablative absolute.	lit. . . . .	literally.
acc. . . . .	accusative.	m. . . . .	masculine.
act. . . . .	active.	n. . . . .	neuter.
adj. . . . .	adjective.	part. . . . .	participle.
adv. . . . .	adverb.	pass. . . . .	passive.
comp. . . . .	comparative.	plur., or pl. .	plural.
conj. . . . .	conjunction.	pred. . . . .	predicate.
Conj. . . . .	conjugation.	prep. . . . .	preposition.
dat. . . . .	dative.	pron. . . . .	pronoun.
dep. . . . .	deponent.	relat. . . . .	relative.
distrib. num.	distributive numeral.	sing. . . . .	singular.
f. . . . .	feminine.	subj. . . . .	subjunctive.
gen. . . . .	genitive.	subs. . . . .	substantive.
ger. . . . .	gerund.	superl. . . .	superlative.
impers. . . .	impersonal.	trans. . . . .	transitive.





# PART FIRST.

## GRAMMATICAL FORMS AND RULES.

### LESSON I.

#### DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

[1-6.]<sup>1</sup>

#### I. LESSON FROM THE GRAMMAR.<sup>2</sup>

- |                                |                      |    |
|--------------------------------|----------------------|----|
| I. First Declension.           | 42.                  | 11 |
| II. Second Declension.         | 45.                  | 21 |
| III. Third Declension.         | 48-51.               | 22 |
| IV. Fourth Declension.         | 116.                 | 35 |
| V. Fifth Declension.           | 119.                 | 36 |
| VI. Agreement of Appositives.  | Rule II. 363.        | 1  |
| VII. Genitive with Nouns.      | Rule XVI. 395.       | 1  |
| VIII. Cases with Prepositions. | Rule XXXII. 432-435. | 12 |

<sup>1</sup> In Part First the enclosed numerals standing at the beginning of each lesson refer to the sections in the Reader which the lesson is intended to follow. Thus [1-6] shows that this lesson is to be learned after the pupil has read the first six sections in the Reader.

<sup>2</sup> The lessons from the Grammar contain the grammatical points involved in the Exercises, and should be carefully learned, or reviewed, in the Grammar itself. The references are all to the author's Latin Grammar.

## 2. MODELS.

- |                        |                         |
|------------------------|-------------------------|
| I. Tigranes the king.  | I. <i>Tigrānes rex.</i> |
| II. The love of glory. | II. <i>Amor gloriæ.</i> |
| III. Before light.     | III. <i>Ante lucem.</i> |

## 3. REMARKS.

## I. Tigranes the king.

1. TIGRANES. Looking in the vocabulary for the corresponding Latin, we find *Tigrānes*, the same as in English.

2. THE. The English article, *a, an, the*, has no Latin equivalent. It must therefore be omitted in translating into Latin. See Gram. 42, 4.

3. KING. The corresponding Latin is *rex*, which must be in the Nominative, in apposition with *Tigrānes*, according to Rule II.

4. The Appositive generally follows its subject, as in English. Hence

*Tigrānes rex.*

## II. The love of glory.

1. THE LOVE, *amor*; THE — not translated.

2. OF, sign. of the Genitive.

3. GLORY, *gloria*. Of glory, *gloriæ*; Gen. Sing.

4. The Genitive may either precede or follow its noun, but seems more frequently to follow when not emphatic. See Gram. 598. Hence we have

*Amor gloriæ.*

## III. Before light.

1. BEFORE, *ante*. No Latin case expresses the relation *before*. Hence a preposition must be used.

2. LIGHT, *lux*. But the preposition *ante* is used only with the Accusative. Hence *lucem*, and not *lux*, must be used. See Gram. 433. Hence

*Ante lucem.*

## 4. VOCABULARY.

Art, *ars, artis, f.*

Bird, *avis, avis, f.*

Book, *liber, librī, m.*

Boy, *puer, puērī, m.*

Chariot, *currus, us, m.*

Cicero, *Cicēro, ōnis, m.*

Concerning, *de*, prep. with abl.Eagle, *aquila*, *ae*, f.Friend, *amicus*, *i*, m.Friendship, *amicitia*, *ae*, f.Hope, *spes*, *spei*, f.Orator, *orator*, *oris*, m.Prize, *praemium*, *ii*, n.War, *bellum*, *i*, n.Wisdom, *sapientia*, *ae*, f.

## 5. EXERCISE.

1. The eagle, the eagles. 2. Of an eagle, of the eagles. 3. For an eagle, for eagles. 4. Of friendship, of wisdom. 5. For friendship, for wisdom. 6. With friendship, with wisdom. 7. The friend, the friends. 8. Of the friend, of the friends. 9. For the friend, for the friends. 10. The books, the prizes. 11. The boy's book.

12. Of the bird, of the birds. 13. For the bird, for the birds. 14. The art of war. 15. The arts of war. 16. With the arts of war. 17. The chariot, of the chariots. 18. Of hope, with hope. 19. Cicero the orator. 20. Concerning Cicero the orator.

## LESSON II.

## ADJECTIVES AND PRONOUNS.

[7-10.]

## 6. LESSON FROM THE GRAMMAR.

- I. Declension of Adjectives. 148 ; 150-153.
- II. Comparison of Adjectives. 160-162.
- III. Agreement of Adjectives. Rule XXXIII. 438.
- IV. Declension of Pronouns. 182-191.
- V. Agreement of Pronouns. Rule XXXIV. 445 ; 445, 1.

## 7. MODELS.

- |                                    |                             |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| I. The Roman people.               | I. <i>Popŭlus Romānus.</i>  |
| II. True <sup>1</sup> friendships. | II. <i>Verae amicitiae.</i> |
| III. An animal which.              | III. <i>Animal quod.</i>    |
| IV. This state.                    | IV. <i>Haec civitas.</i>    |

## 8. REMARKS.

## I. The Roman people.

1. In translating a noun and its adjective into Latin, we must begin with the noun, because the gender and case of the noun will determine the ending of the adjective, which must agree with it.

2. THE PEOPLE, *popŭlus*; THE — not translated.

3. ROMAN, *Romānus*, a, um. But as *popŭlus* is in the Nom. Sing. Masc., the adjective must be in the same case, gender, etc., according to Rule XXXIII. Hence *Romānus*.

4. The adjective may either precede or follow its noun, but seems more frequently to follow when not emphatic. See Gram. 598. Hence  
*Popŭlus Romānus.*

## II. True friendships.

1. FRIENDSHIPS. Friendship (for which you must look, not friendships) is *amicitia*; FRIENDSHIPS is *amicitiae*, the plural of *amicitia*.

2. TRUE, *verus*, a, um. But as *amicitiae* is in the Nom. Plur. Fem., the adjective must be in the same case, etc.; hence *verae*.

3. In true friendships, as opposed to false friendships, true is emphatic. Hence *verae* must precede its noun. See Gram. 598, 2.

*Verae amicitiae.*

## III. An animal which.

1. AN ANIMAL, *animal*; AN — not translated.

2. WHICH, *qui*, *quae*, *quod*. But as *animal* is in the Neut. Sing., the relative must be in the same gender and number, according to Rule XXXIV.; hence *quod*.

*Animal quod.*

## IV. This state.

1. STATE, *civitas*.

2. THIS, *hic*, *haec*, *hoc*. But as *civitas* is in the Nom. Sing. Fem., the

<sup>1</sup> In the Models and Exercises, *italicized* English words are emphatic.

demonstrative which agrees with it as an adjective must be in the same case, etc. See Gram. 445, 1; hence *haec*.

*Haec civitas.*

## 9. VOCABULARY.

Acceptable, *gratus*, *a*, *um*.

Beautiful, *pulcher*, *chra*, *chrom*.

Certain, *a' certain*, *quidam*, *quaedam*, *quoddam* and *quiddam*.

Crown, *corōna*, *ae*, *f*.

Diligent, *diligens*, *entis*.

High, *altus*, *a*, *um*.

Himself, herself, itself, *sui*.

I, *ego*, *mei*.

Kind, *benignus*, *a*, *um*.

Law, *lex*, *legis*, *f*.

Mountain, *mons*, *montis*, *m*.

My, *meus*, *a*, *um*. G. 185.

Present, *donum*, *i*, *n*.

Pupil, *discipulus*, *i*, *m*.

This, *hic*, *haec*, *hoc*.

Thou, you, *tu*, *tui*.

True, *verus*, *a*, *um*.

Useful, *utilis*, *e*.

Who, which, what, interrog., *qui*,  
*quae*, *quod*, adj.; *quis*, *quae*,  
*quid*, subs.

Your, *tuus*, *a*, *um*; *vester*, *tra*,  
*trum*. G. 185.

## 10. EXERCISE.

1. A *kind* friend, of a *kind* friend. 2. Kind friends, of kind friends. 3. *True* friendship, of *true* friendships. 4. An acceptable present, with acceptable presents. 5. The beautiful books, the beautiful crowns, the beautiful presents. 6. Useful laws, of the useful laws.

7. A high mountain, a higher mountain, the highest mountain. 8. The most diligent pupils. 9. Of me, of you,<sup>1</sup> of himself, of whom? 10. With my books, with your<sup>1</sup> books. 11. This mountain, this crown, this present. 12. A certain book.

<sup>1</sup> In the Exercises the pronoun *you* may be treated as singular, unless it is marked (pl.), or is shown by the sense to be plural. In like manner, *your* may be treated as referring to one person, unless the sense shows that two or more persons are addressed.

## LESSON III.

VERBS. — SUM. FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS.  
[11-13.]

## 11. LESSON FROM THE GRAMMAR.

- I. Verb Sum. 204.
- II. First Conjugation. 205, 206.
- III. Second Conjugation. 207, 208.
- IV. Subject Nominative. Rule III. 367.
- V. Agreement of Verb with Subject. Rule XXXV. 460.
- VI. Predicate Nouns. Rule I. 362.
- VII. Direct Object. Rule V. 371.

## 12. MODELS.

- I. God made the world.                      I. *Deus mundum aedificāvit.*
- II. Cincinnatus was dictator.            II. *Cincinnātus dictātor fuit.*

## 13. REMARKS.

- I. God made the world.
  - 1. GOD, *Deus*. As subject it must be in the Nominative, according to Rule III.
  - 2. MADE. Look for the present *make*, not for *made*; MAKE, BUILD, *aedifico* (I make); I MADE, *aedificāvi*. But as *Deus*, the subject, is in the Third Pers. Sing., the verb must be in the same person and number, according to Rule XXXV.; hence *aedificāvit*.
  - 3. WORLD, *mundus*. But as direct object of *aedificāvit*, it must be in the Accus.; hence *mundum*.
  - 4. The order is — Subject, Object, Verb. See Gram. 593.  
*Deus mundum aedificāvit.*

## II. Cincinnatus was dictator.

1. CINCINNATUS, *Cincinnātus*, the same as in English. As subject it must be in the Nominative.

2. WAS. The verb *to be* is *sum*, I am. I WAS, *fui*; but according to Rule XXXV., the verb must agree with its subject, *Cincinnātus*; hence *fuit*.

3. DICTATOR, *dictātor*, the same as in English. As predicate noun, it must agree in case with *Cincinnātus*, according to Rule I., hence in the Nom.

4. The Predicate Noun may either precede or follow the verb. Placing it before the verb, we have

*Cincinnātus dictātor fuit.*

## 14. VOCABULARY.

Accuse, *accūso, āre, āvi, ātum.*

Advise, *moneo, ēre, ui, itum.*

Be, *sum, esse, fui.*

Blame, *vitupĕro, āre, āvi, ātum.*

Grieve, *doleo, ēre, ui, itum.*

Happy, *beātus, a, um.*

Praise, *laudo, āre, āvi, ātum.*

That, *ille, a, ud.*

## 15. EXERCISE.

1. This law is useful. 2. That law was useful. 3. These laws will be useful. 4. We may be happy. 5. You (pl.)<sup>1</sup> might have been happy. 6. I praise, we praise. 7. He was blaming, they were blaming. 8. I shall praise, we shall praise. 9. He accuses, he is accused. 10. He will accuse, he will be accused.

11. They praised Cicero. 12. We will praise Cicero. 13. Cicero has been praised. 14. I grieve, we grieve. 15. He was grieving, they were grieving. 16. I shall grieve, we shall grieve. 17. He advises, he is advised. 18. He was advising, he was advised. 19. You will advise the boys. 20. The boys have been advised.

<sup>1</sup> See foot note page 5.



## LESSON IV.

VERBS. — THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS. DE-  
PONENT VERBS. PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

[14-18.]

## 16. LESSON FROM THE GRAMMAR.

- I. Third Conjugation. 209, 210 ; 213-215.
- II. Fourth Conjugation. 211, 212.
- III. Deponent Verbs. 221-226.
- IV. Periphrastic Conjugation. 227-231.
- V. Use of Adverbs. Rule LI. 582.

## 17. MODELS.

- I. The wise live happily.      I. *Sapientes feliciter vi-  
vunt.*
- II. Diligence should be culti-      II. *Diligentia colenda est.*  
vated.

## 18. REMARKS.

I. The wise live happily.

1. THE WISE. Wise, *sapiens* ; the wise, *sapientes*, Nom. Plur.  
See Gram. 441, 1.

2. LIVE. I live, *vivo*. But the verb must agree with the subject,  
*sapientes* ; hence *vivunt*. Third Pers. Plur.

3. HAPPILY, *feliciter*. But the adverb in Latin generally precedes the  
verb, though it generally follows it in English. See Gram. 600.

*Sapientes feliciter vivunt.*

II. Diligence should be cultivated.

1. DILIGENCE, *diligentia*. Nom. Sing.

2. SHOULD BE CULTIVATED, is to be cultivated. The duty or neces-

sity denoted by *should be, is to be, ought*, may be expressed by the Second Periphrastic conjugation. See Gram. 229. I cultivate, *colo*. Periphrastic conjugation, *colendus sum*. But the verb must agree with *diligentia* in number and person, and the participle in gender, number, and case. See Gram. 460, 1. Hence we have *colenda est*.

*Diligentia colenda est.*

## 19. VOCABULARY.

Always, <i>semper</i> , adv.	Instruct, <i>erūdio, ire, iui, itum</i> .
City, <i>urbs, urbis</i> , f.	Lead, <i>duco, ēre, duxi, ductum</i> .
Father, <i>pater, tris</i> , m.	Our, <i>noster, tra, trum</i> .
Follow, <i>sequor, i, secūtus sum</i> , dep.	Rule, <i>rego, ēre, rexi, rectum</i> .
Fortify, <i>munio, ire, iui, itum</i> .	Saguntum, <i>Saguntum, i, n</i> .
Hannibal, <i>Hannibal, ālis</i> , m.	Sleep, <i>dormio, ire, iui, itum</i> .
His, her, its, their, <i>suus, a, um</i> .	Take, <i>cipio, ēre, cepi, captum</i> .
Imitate, <i>imītor, āri, ātus sum</i> , dep.	

## 20. EXERCISE.

1. He leads, he is led. 2. He will rule, he will be ruled. 3. They have ruled, they have been ruled. 4. Hannibal took Saguntum. 5. Saguntum was taken. 6. The cities had been taken. 7. He sleeps, they sleep. 8. He will sleep, they will sleep. 9. He may sleep, they may sleep. 10. Your father instructed you. 11. These boys have been instructed.

12. The boy imitates his father. 13. We will imitate our fathers. 14. You have always imitated your father. 15. We will follow you. 16. The boys followed their father. 17. We were about to praise you. 18. Diligent pupils must be praised. 19. They were about to fortify the city. 20. These cities must be fortified.

## LESSON V.

• AGREEMENT OF NOUNS. — NOMINATIVE AND VOCATIVE.  
[19-22.]

## 21. LESSON FROM THE GRAMMAR.

- I. Predicatē Nouns. Rule I. 362.
- II. Appositives. Rule II. 363.
- III. Subject Nominative. Rule III. 367.
- IV. Case of Address. Rule IV. 369.

## 22. MODELS.

- I. Hear, citizens. I. *Audite, cives.*
- II. For other models, see under Lessons I. and III.

## 23. REMARKS.

- 1. HEAR. I hear, *audio* ; hear, hear ye, *audite*, Imperative Second Pers. Plur. The subject *vos*, ye, is omitted. See Gram. 367, 2.
- 2. CITIZENS. Citizen, *civis* ; citizens, *cives*, Voc. Plur. See Rule IV.
- 3. The Vocative generally, though not always, stands after one or more words. See Gram. 602, VI.

## 24. VOCABULARY.

Brother, *frater, tris*, m.  
 Brutus, *Brutus, i*, m.  
 Consul, *consul, ūlis*, m.  
 Diligence, *diligentia, ae*, f.  
 Greatly, *valde*, adv.  
 Herodotus, *Herodōtus, i*, m.  
 History, *historia, ae*, f.

Letter, *epistōla, ae*, f.  
 Many, *multi, ae, a*, plur.  
 Philosopher, *philosōphus, i*, m.  
 Save, *servo, are, avi, atum*.  
 Socrates, *Socrātes, is*, m.  
 Soldier, *miles, itis*, m.  
 Write, *scribo, ěre, scripsi, scriptum*.

## 25. EXERCISE.

1. Cicero was an orator. 2. The consul was an orator.  
 3. Cicero the consul was an orator. 4. Brutus had been consul. 5. Brutus was consul. 6. Cicero the orator wrote many letters. 7. The letters of Cicero the orator have been greatly praised. 8. Socrates was a philosopher. 9. Your brother will be an orator. 10. Herodotus was the father of history. 11. The orator praises Herodotus the father of history. 12. Pupils, your diligence will be praised. 13. Your diligence, boys, must be praised. 14. The city has been fortified. 15. The city must be saved.

## LESSON VI.

## USE OF THE ACCUSATIVE.

[23-25.]

## 26. LESSON FROM THE GRAMMAR.

- I. Accusative as Direct Object. Rule V. 371.
- II. Two Accusatives — Same Person. Rule VI. 373.
- III. Two Accusatives — Person and Thing. Rule VII. 374.

## 27. MODELS.

- I. They called the council Senate. I. *Consilium appellavērunt Senātum.*
- II. He asked me my opinion. II. *Me sententiam rogāvit.*
- III. For Model for Direct Object, see under Lesson III.

## 28. REMARKS.

I. They called the council Senate.

1. THEY CALLED. I call, *appello*; they called, *appellavērunt* (appel-

larunt), Perf. Indic. Third Pers. Plur. The subject is omitted, being implied in the ending *erunt*. See Gram. 367, 2.

2. THE COUNCIL, *consilium*, Accus. See Rule VI.

3. SENATE, *Senātus* ; Accus. *Senātum*. See Rule VI.

4. The verb, whose usual place is at the end of the sentence, may stand between the two Accusatives, as in this Model.

II. He asked me my opinion.

1. HE ASKED. I ask, *rogo* ; he asked, *rogāvit*, Perf. Indic. Third Pers. Sing. The subject is omitted. See Gram. 367, 2.

2. ME. I, *ego* ; me, *me*, Accus. See Rule VII.

3. MY OPINION. Opinion, *sententia* ; Accus. *sententiam*. See Rule VII. The possessive *my* in this Model is not expressed in Latin, because it can be readily supplied from the context ; *my opinion*, not the opinion of another. See Gram. 447.

## 29. VOCABULARY.

Ask, *rogo, āre, āvi, ātum*.

Call, *appello, āre, āvi, ātum*.

Catiline, *Catilīna, ae, m*.

Delight, *delecto, āre, āvi, ātum*.

Enemy, *hostis, is, m. and f*.

Island, *insūla, ae, f*.

Judge, *judico, āre, āvi, ātum*.

Modesty, *verecundia, ae, f*.

Opinion, *sententia, ae, f*.

Preceptor, *praeceptor, ōris, m*.

Rome, *Roma, ae, f*.

Sicily, *Sicilia, ae, f*.

Teach, *doceo, ēre, docui, doctum*.

Virtue, *virtus, ūtis, f*.

## 30. EXERCISE.

1. Your letter delights me. 2. This letter will delight your father. 3. Who wrote that letter? 4. My brother wrote that letter. 5. They call the island Sicily. 6. The island is called Sicily. 7. Sicily is an island. 8. They called Herodotus the father of history. 9. We judge you, O Catiline, an enemy. 10. You, O Catiline, will be judged an enemy. 11. We teach boys modesty. 12. We will teach our pupils wisdom. 13. The preceptor will ask you your opinion. 14. The city was called Rome. 15. Virtue must be praised.

## LESSON VII.

## ACCUSATIVE — CONTINUED.

[26-29.]

## 31. LESSON FROM THE GRAMMAR.

- I. Accusative of Time and Space. Rule VIII. 378.
- II. Accusative of Limit. Rule IX. 379.
- III. Accusative of Specification. Rule X. 380.
- IV. Accusative in Exclamations. Rule XI. 381.
- V. Interrogative Sentences. 346, II.

## 32. MODELS.

- |                                 |                                  |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| I. He lived thirty years.       | I. <i>Triginta annos vixit.</i>  |
| II. Plato came to Tarentum.     | II. <i>Plato Tarentum venit.</i> |
| III. They are not at all moved. | III. <i>Nihil moventur.</i>      |
| IV. O <i>deceptive</i> hope!    | IV. <i>O fallācem spem!</i>      |

## 33. REMARKS.

- I. He lived thirty years.
  - 1. HE LIVED. I live, *vivo* ; he lived, *vixit*. See Gram. 367, 2.
  - 2. THIRTY, *triginta*, indeclinable.
  - 3. YEARS. Year, *annus* ; years, Accus. Plur. *annos*. See Rule VIII.
- II. Plato came to Tarentum.
  - 1. PLATO, *Plato*, Nom. See Rule III.
  - 2. CAME. I come, *venio* ; came, he came, *venit*. See Gram. 285.
  - 3. TO TARENTUM. Tarentum, *Tarentum* ; to Tarentum, Accus. *Tarentum*. See Rule IX.
- III. They are not at all moved.
  - 1. THEY ARE MOVED. I move, *moveo* ; am moved, *moveor* ; they are moved, *moventur*, Pres. Indic. Pass. Third Pers. Plur.

2. NOT AT ALL, *nihil*. See Rule X.

IV. O deceptive hope!

1. O HOPE. Hope, *spes*; O hope, *O spes*. Rule XI.

2. DECEPTIVE, *fallax*; Acc. Sing. *fallacem*. Rule XXXIII. 438.  
It is emphatic, and accordingly precedes its noun. See Gram. 598, 2.

### 34. VOCABULARY.

Athens, *Athenae*, *arum*, f. pl.

Come, *venio*, *ire*, *veni*, *ventum*.

Day, *dies*, *diei*, m.

Forty-three, *tres (tria) et quadraginta*. G. 174, 175.

Hour, *hora*, *ae*, f.

How many, *quot*, indeclinable.

In, *in*, prep. with abl.

Italy, *Italia*, *ae*, f.

Messenger, *nuntius*, *ii*, m.

Month, *mensis*, *mensis*, m.

Move, *moveo*, *ere*, *movi*, *motum*.

Not, *non*, adv.; interrog., *nonne*.

G. 346, II. 1.

Not at all, *nihil*, indeclinable. G. 128.

Numa, *Numa*, *ae*, m.

Reign, *regno*, *are*, *avi*, *atum*.

Send, *mitto*, *ere*, *misi*, *missum*.

Seven, *septem*, indeclinable. G. 175, 2.

Two, *duo*, *ae*, o. G. 176.

Wonderful, *admirabilis*, *e*.

Year, *annus*, *i*, m.

### 35. EXERCISE.

1. How many years did *Numa* reign? 2. *Numa* reigned forty-three years. 3. Were you (pl.) not two years in *Italy*? 4. We were in *Italy* seven months. 5. The consul came to Rome. 6. He was in that city seven days. 7. Was he not asked his opinion? 8. He was asked his opinion. 9. You, consul, have saved the city. 10. O wonderful virtue! 11. You will not move the consul *at all*. 12. Did you not send a messenger to Athens? 13. I sent two messengers to Athens. 14. How many hours did you sleep? 15. I slept seven hours.

## LESSON VIII.

## USE OF THE DATIVE.

[30-38.]

## 36. LESSON FROM THE GRAMMAR.

- I. Dative with Verbs. Rule XII. 384.  
 II. Two Datives — To Which and For Which. Rule XIII.  
 390.  
 III. Dative with Adjectives. Rule XIV. 391.  
 IV. Dative with Derivatives. Rule XV. 392.

## 37. MODELS.

- |                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| I. They serve the king.      | I. <i>Regi serviunt.</i>                        |
| II. It is a care to me.      | II. <i>Est mihi curae.</i>                      |
| III. Country is dear to all. | III. <i>Patriq̄ omnibus cara</i><br><i>est.</i> |
| IV. Obedience to laws.       | IV. <i>Obtemperatio legibus.</i>                |

## 38. REMARKS.

- I. They serve the king.  
 1. THEY SERVE, *serviunt*.  
 2. THE KING. King, *rex*; Dat. *regi*. Rule XII.  
 II. It is a care to me (to me for a care).  
 1. IT IS, *est*. It is placed at the beginning of the sentence because it is emphatic. See Gram. 594, I.  
 2. TO ME. I, *ego*; to me, *mihi*. Rule XIII.  
 3. A CARE = for a care. Care, *cura*; for a care, *curae*, Dat. Rule XIII.  
 III. Country is dear to all.  
 1. COUNTRY, *patria*.  
 2. IS, *est*.



3. DEAR. Dear, *carus* ; Fem. *cara*, to agree with *patria*.  
 4. TO ALL. All, *omnis* ; Dat. Plur. *omnibus*. Rule XIV.  
 5. Observe the order of the words in the model, though much freedom is allowable in this respect.

## IV. Obedience to laws.

1. OBEDIENCE, *obtemperatio*.2. TO LAWS. Law, *lex* ; to laws, *legibus*, Dat. Plur. Rule XV.

## 39. VOCABULARY.

All, *omnis*, *e*.Award, *tribuo*, *ēre*, *ui*, *itum*.Citizen, *civis*, *civis*, *m*. and *f*.Country, one's country, *patria*, *ae*, *f*.Dear, *carus*, *a*, *um*.Ever = always, *semper*, *adv*.General, *imperator*, *ōris*, *m*.Give, *do*, *dare*, *dedi*, *datum*.Glory, *gloria*, *ae*, *f*.Good, *bonus*, *a*, *um*.Have, *sum*, *esse*, *fui*, with *dat*. G.

387.

Honor, *honor*, *ōris*, *m*.Industry, *industria*, *ae*, *f*.Learning, *doctrina*, *ae*, *f*.Obedience, *obtemperatio*, *ōnis*, *f*.Obey, *pareo*, *ēre*, *ui*, *itum*.Praiseworthy, *laudabilis*, *e*.Prefer, *praefero*, *ferre*, *tūli*, *lātum*.

G. 292, 2.

Roman, *Romānus*, *a*, *um*.Wealth, *divitiae*, *ārum*, *f*. *pl*.

## 40. EXERCISE.

1. *Good* citizens will obey the laws. 2. The Romans awarded honors to their generals. 3. Industry is an honor to a pupil. 4. Virtue is a glory to all. 5. I prefer virtue to learning. 6. We prefer learning to wealth. 7. I will give you that book as a present. 8. I have seven beautiful books. 9. Will not this present be acceptable to you? 10. That present will be acceptable to me. 11. Is not the country dear to you? 12. The country has ever been very dear to me. 13. Obedience to the laws is praiseworthy.

## LESSON IX.

## USE OF THE GENITIVE.

[39, 40.]

## 41. LESSON FROM THE GRAMMAR.

- I. Genitive with Nouns. Rule XVI. 395.  
 II. Genitive with Adjectives. Rule XVII. 399.

## 42. MODELS.

- |                        |                               |
|------------------------|-------------------------------|
| I. The love of truth.  | I. <i>Amor veritātis.</i>     |
| II. Desirous of truth. | II. <i>Veritātis cupidus.</i> |

## 43. VOCABULARY.

Athenian, <i>Atheniensis</i> , is, m. and f.	Man, <i>homo</i> , inis; <i>vir</i> , <sup>1</sup> <i>virī</i> , m.
Celebrated, distinguished, <i>clarus</i> , a, um.	Money, <i>pecunia</i> , ae, f.
Demosthenes, <i>Demosthēnes</i> , is, m.	Often, <i>saepe</i> , adv.
Desirous of, <i>cupidus</i> , a, um.	Oration, <i>oratio</i> , ōnis, f.
Fond of, <i>amans</i> , <i>amantis</i> .	Pleasure, <i>voluptas</i> , ātis, f.
King, <i>rex</i> , <i>regis</i> , m.	Praise, <i>laus</i> , <i>laudis</i> , f.
Love, <i>amor</i> , ōris, m.	Precept, <i>praeceptum</i> , i, n.
	Skilled in, <i>peritus</i> , a, um.

## 44. EXERCISE.

1. The orations of Cicero have often been praised. 2.  
 You have often praised the orations of Cicero the orator.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Homo* is the ordinary term for *man* as a member of the human family; while *vir* is a term of respect, a *hero*, a *man* in the full sense of the word.

3. The orations of Demosthenes, the *celebrated* orator, will always be praised. 4. Boys are fond of pleasure. 5. The pupils are fond of praise. 6. The king was desirous of glory. 7. Men are fond of money. 8. The love of country is an honor to a citizen. 9. The precepts of the *philosophers* were useful to the Athenians. 10. The general is skilled in *war*.

## LESSON X.

### GENITIVE — CONTINUED.

[41-43.]

#### 45. LESSON FROM THE GRAMMAR.

- I. Predicate Genitive. Rule XVIII. 401.
- II. Genitive with certain Verbs. Rule XIX. 406.
- III. Accusative and Genitive. Rule XX. 410.

#### 46. MODELS.

- |                                    |                                    |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| I. It is of small value.           | I. <i>Parvi pretii est.</i>        |
| II. He remembers <i>the past</i> . | II. <i>Meminit praeteritorum.</i>  |
| III. You accuse men - of crime.    | III. <i>Viros scelëris arguis.</i> |

#### 47. REMARKS.

- 1. MODEL I. — OF SMALL VALUE, *parvi pretii*. Rule XVIII.
- 2. MODEL II. — THE PAST = past things, events, *praeteritorum*, Gen. Plur. Neut. of *praeteritus*, from *praetereo*. Rule XIX. *Praeteritorum rerum* should not be used for *praeteritorum*, except to avoid real ambiguity, as it is less euphonious.

*Præteritōrum* would regularly precede the verb, but is made emphatic by being placed at the end of the sentence. See Gram. 594, II.

3. OF CRIME, *scelēris*, Gen. of *scelus*. Rule XX.

#### 48. VOCABULARY.

Already, *jam*, adv.

Concerns, it concerns, *refert*, *re-*  
*tulit*, impers.

Esteem, *aestimo*, *āre*, *āvi*, *ditum*.

Favor, *beneficium*, *ii*, n.

Folly, *stultitia*, *ae*, f.

Forget, *obliviscor*, *i*, *oblitus sum*,  
dep.

Goodness, *bonitas*, *ātis*, f.

Grain, *frumentum*, *i*, n.

Great, *magnus*, *a*, *um*.

Greatly, with *intērest* and *refert*,  
*magni*.

High, at a high price, *magno*, or

*magni*; with verbs of valuing,

*magni*; very highly, *maximi*.

Integrity, *integritas*, *ātis*, f.

Interests, it interests, *intērest*, *in-*  
*terfuit*, impers.

Never, *nunquam*, adv.

Pity, *misereor*, *eri*, *eritus sum*, dep.

Poor, *pauper*, *ēris*.

Remember, *memini*, *isse*. G. 297, I.

Repent, I repent, *me poenitet*,  
*poenituit*. G. 299.

Sell, *vendo*, *ēre*, *didi*, *ditum*.

Theft, *furtum*, *i*, n.

Value, price, *pretium*, *ii*, n.

#### 49. EXERCISE.

1. Virtue is a characteristic of a good man. 2. Integrity is of great value. 3. Goodness must be highly esteemed. 4. We esteem goodness very highly. 5. This book will be of great value to us. 6. We pity the poor. 7. I remember your favors. 8. We do not forget our friends. 9. We shall never forget you. 10. They accuse the boy of theft. 11. I have already repented of my folly. 12. He sells grain at a high price. 13. This greatly interests us.

## LESSON XI.

## USE OF THE ABLATIVE.

[44, 45.]

## 50. LESSON FROM THE GRAMMAR.

- I. Ablative of Cause, Manner, Means. Rule XXI. 414.  
 II. Ablative of Price. Rule XXII. 416.

## 51. MODELS.

- |   |                                      |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| I. He is led by glory.                          | I. <i>Gloria ducitur.</i>            |
| II. You purchased the house<br>at a high price. | II. <i>Domum magno emis-<br/>ti.</i> |

## 52. REMARKS.

1. MODEL I. — BY GLORY, *gloria*, Abl. Rule XXI.  
 2. MODEL II. — AT A HIGH PRICE, *magno*, Abl. Rule XXII. The Abl. of the adjective is sometimes thus used, *pretio* being understood.

## 53. VOCABULARY.

By, <i>a, ab</i> , prep. with abl. G. 434, 3.	Proud, <i>superbus</i> , <i>a, um</i> .
Glory in, <i>glorior, āri, ātus sum</i> , dep.	Purchase, <i>emo, ēre, emi, emptum</i> .
Gold, <i>aurum, i, n</i> .	Rejoice, <i>gaudeo, ēre, gavisus sum</i> .
Happiness, success, <i>felicitas, ātis, f</i> .	G. 272, 3.
Horse, <i>equus, equi, m</i> .	Scipio, <i>Scipio, ōnis, m</i> .
Judge, <i>judex, icis, m</i> .	Study, <i>studium, ii, n</i> .
Mina, <i>mina, ae, f</i> .	Talent, <i>talentum, i, n</i> .
Not, with imperatives, <i>ne</i> , adv.	Thirty, <i>triginta</i> , indecl.
One, <i>unus, a, um</i> . G. 176.	Valor, <i>virtus, utis, f</i> .

## 54. EXERCISE.

1. Socrates has often been praised for (because of) his wisdom. 2. They glory in their wealth. 3. This philosopher glories in his wisdom. 4. The pupils rejoice in their studies. 5. We are delighted with the precepts of the *philosophers*. 6. Wisdom is not purchased with gold. 7. Do not sell happiness for gold. 8. The judge has purchased a horse for one talent. 9. I will sell this horse for thirty minae. 10. He is proud of his wealth. 11. Scipio was proud of his country.

## LESSON XII.

## ABLATIVE — CONTINUED.

[46-48.]

## 55. LESSON FROM THE GRAMMAR.

- I. Ablative with Comparatives. Rule XXIII. 417.
- II. Ablative of Difference. Rule XXIV. 418.
- III. Ablative in Special Constructions. Rule XXV. 419.

## 56. MODELS.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| I. Nothing is more lovely<br>than virtue. | I. <i>Nihil est amabilius<br/>virtute, or Nihil est<br/>amabilius quam<br/>virtus.</i> |
| II. He preceded me by two<br>days.        | II. <i>Biduo me antecessit.</i>  |
| III. We enjoy very many<br>things.        | III. <i>Plurimis rebus fruimur.</i>  |

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| IV. Safety rests upon truth.                     | IV. <i>Salus veritāte nititur.</i>              |
| V. I do not need a <i>remedy</i> .               | V. <i>Non egeo medicīna.</i>                    |
| VI. They are <i>worthy</i> of<br>friendship.     | VI. <i>Digni sunt amicitia.</i>                 |
| VII. We need your <i>authori-</i><br><i>ty</i> . | VII. <i>Auctoritāte tua nobis<br/>opus est.</i> |

## 57. REMARKS.

1. MODEL I. — THAN VIRTUE, *quam virtus* or *virtute*. Rule XXIII. 417, 1. The Abl. *virtute* may either follow or precede the comparative, *amabilius*.

2. MODEL II. — BY TWO DAYS, *biduo*, Abl. of Dif. Rule XXIV.

3. MODEL III. — VERY MANY, *plurimis*, Superl. See G. 160.

4. THINGS, *rebus*, Abl. Rule XXV. *Rebus* is necessary to avoid ambiguity, because, though *plurima* may be used substantively, in the sense of very many things, *plurimis* would be ambiguous, as it would not distinguish *things* from *persons*.

5. MODELS IV. V. VI. — UPON TRUTH, A REMEDY, OF FRIENDSHIP, *veritāte, medicīna, amicitia*, Abla. Rule XXV.

6. *Medicina* would regularly precede its verb, but is here emphatic. The regular order in Model VI. would be, *Amicitia digni sunt*, but as *digni* is emphatic, it is placed at the beginning of the sentence. See G. 594, I.

7. MODEL VII. — WE NEED = there is need to us, *nobis opus est*. See G. 419, 3. AUTHORITY, *auctoritāte*, Abl. Rule XXV. *Auctoritāte* is emphatic, and is accordingly placed at the beginning of the sentence.

## 58. VOCABULARY.

Abound in, <i>abundo, āre, āvi, ātum</i> .	Duty, <i>officium, ii, n</i> .
Cato, <i>Cato, ōnis, m</i> .	Enjoy, <i>fruor, i, fructus</i> or <i>fructus</i>
Discharge, fulfil, <i>fungor, i, func-</i>	<i>sum, dep</i> .
<i>tus sum, dep</i> .	Five, <i>quinque, indecl</i> .

Learned, <i>doctus, a, um.</i>	Relying upon, <i>fretus, a, um.</i>
Much, with comparatives, <i>multo,</i> adv.	Trust in, <i>confido, ěre, fĭsus sum.</i>
Need, there is need, <i>opus est, fuit.</i>	Use, <i>utor, uti, usus sum, dep.</i>
Older, <i>major, ġris, or major natu.</i>	Wisely, <i>sapienter, adv.</i>
	Worthy, <i>dignus, a, um.</i>

**59. EXERCISE.**

1. Cicero was more learned than Cato. 2. You are more diligent than your brother. 3. Virtue is better than wisdom. 4. Wisdom is better than gold. 5. Wisdom is dearer to us than gold. 6. You are five years older than I. 7. Your father uses his wealth wisely. 8. We enjoy our studies. 9. We will discharge our duties. 10. This city abounds in wealth. 11. We do not trust in wealth. 12. Your pupils are worthy of praise. 13. I rely (am relying) upon your friendship. 14. *We* need friends.

**LESSON XIII.****ABLATIVE — CONTINUED.**

[49-51.]

**60. LESSON FROM THE GRAMMAR.**

- I. Ablative of Place. Rule XXVI. 421.
- II. Ablative of Source and Separation. Rule XXVII. 425.
- III. Ablative of Time. Rule XXVIII. 426, 427.

**61. MODELS.**

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| I. In the forum.                       | I. <i>In foro.</i>                        |
| II. He was at Rome.                    | II. <i>Romae fuit.</i>                    |
| III. I ward off slaughter from<br>you. | III. <i>Caedem a vobis de-<br/>pello.</i> |



IV. He died in his *eightieth*  
year.

IV. *Octogesimo anno est*  
*mortuus.*

## 62. REMARKS.

1. MODEL II. — AT ROME, *Romae*; why Gen. rather than Abl. *Roma*? See G. 421, II.

2. MODEL IV. — IN — YEAR, *anno*. Rule XXVIII. Why not *in anno*? See G. 426, 2. *Octogesimo* is emphatic, and accordingly precedes its noun. See G. 598, 2.

## 63. VOCABULARY.

Ago, <i>abhinc</i> , adv.	Receive, <i>accipio, ĕre, cēpi, ceptum</i> .
Corinth, <i>Corinthus</i> , i, f.	Reside, <i>habito, āre, āvi, ātum</i> .
Danger, <i>pericŭlum</i> , i, n.	See, <i>video, ĕre, vidi, visum</i> .
Flee, <i>fugio, ĕre, fugi, fugitum</i> .	Sunset, <i>solis occŭsus, us, m</i> .
Free from, <i>libĕro, āre, āvi, ātum</i> .	Temple, <i>templum</i> , i, n.
From, <i>a, ab</i> , prep. with abl.	Three, <i>tres, tria</i> .
Garden, <i>hortus</i> , i, m.	Time, <i>tempus, ōris, n</i> .
Greece, <i>Graecia, ae, f</i> .	Where, <i>ubi</i> , adv.
Keep from, keep off, <i>arceo, ĕre, cui,</i> <i>ctum</i> .	Whole, <i>totus, a, um</i> . G. 149.
	Winter, <i>hiems, ĕmis, f</i> .

## 64. EXERCISE.

1. There were beautiful cities *in Greece*. 2. Were you in Corinth? 3. We were in *Corinth* the whole winter. 4. In *Athens* we saw beautiful temples. 5. Does not your friend reside at Rome? 6. He resides in Athens. 7. He fled from Rome to Athens. 8. I have received two letters *from your father*. 9. The city has been freed from great dangers. 10. Where were you at *sunset*? 11. I was in the garden *at that time*. 12. I was in Rome three years ago. 13. We will keep the enemy from the city.

## LESSON XIV.

## ABLATIVE — CONTINUED.

[52-55.]

## 65. LESSON FROM THE GRAMMAR.

- I. Ablative of Characteristic. Rule XXIX. 428.
- II. Ablative of Specification. Rule XXX. 429.
- III. Ablative Absolute. Rule XXXI. 430, 431.
- IV. Cases with Prepositions. Rule XXXII. 432-435.

## 66. MODELS.

- |  |                                       |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| I. Piso, a man of the <i>highest</i> virtue.     | I. <i>Piso, vir summa virtute.</i>    |
| II. Piso was a man of the <i>highest</i> virtue. | II. <i>Piso summa virtute fuit.</i>   |
| III. They are similar in character.              | III. <i>Moribus similes sunt.</i>     |
| IV. They flourished in the reign of Servius.     | IV. <i>Servio regnante viguerunt.</i> |
| V. I have written to a friend.                   | V. <i>Ad amicum scripsi.</i>          |

## 67. REMARKS.

1. MODEL I. — A MAN OF THE HIGHEST VIRTUE, *vir summa virtute*; but in the predicate, as in the second model, Piso was a man, etc., *vir* is omitted. See G. 428. 1, 2). As *summa* is emphatic, it is placed before its noun. See G. 598. 2.

2. MODEL III. — IN CHARACTER. Character, manners, *mores*; in character, *moribus*; Abl. of Specification. Rule XXX.

3. MODEL IV. — IN THE REIGN OF SERVIUS = Servius reigning, *Servio regnante*; Abl. Absol. Rule XXXI.

## 68. VOCABULARY.

Ancus, <i>Ancus</i> , <i>i</i> , m.	Light, <i>lux</i> , <i>lucis</i> , <i>f</i> .
Before, <i>ante</i> , prep. with acc.	Marcus, <i>Marcus</i> , <i>ii</i> , m.
Conspiracy, <i>conjuratio</i> , <i>ōnis</i> , <i>f</i> .	Remarkable, <i>singulāris</i> , <i>e</i> .
Courage, <i>virtus</i> , <i>utis</i> , <i>f</i> .	Spain, <i>Hispania</i> , <i>ae</i> , <i>f</i> .
Eloquence, <i>eloquentia</i> , <i>ae</i> , <i>f</i> .	Surpass, <i>supĕro</i> , <i>āre</i> , <i>avi</i> , <i>ātum</i> .
Form, make, <i>facio</i> , <i>ĕre</i> , <i>feci</i> , <i>factum</i> .	Tarquin, <i>Tarquinius</i> , <i>ii</i> , m.
Greek, <i>Graecus</i> , <i>i</i> , m.	To, <i>ad</i> , prep. with acc.

## 69. EXERCISE.

1. The general, a man of *remarkable* courage, will save the city. 2. The general is a man of remarkable courage. 3. Cicero, a man of remarkable eloquence, was consul. 4. The Greeks surpassed the Romans in learning. 5. The Romans surpassed the Greeks in valor. 6. Tarquin came to Rome in the reign of Ancus Marcius. 7. A conspiracy was formed in Rome when Cicero was consul. 8. Scipio was in Spain. 9. Tarquin came into Italy. 10. The boy came to me *before light*.

## LESSON XV.

## ADJECTIVES. PRONOUNS.

[56-62.]

## 70. LESSON FROM THE GRAMMAR.

- I. Agreement of Adjectives. Rule XXXIII. 438, 439.  
 II. Agreement of Pronouns. Rule XXXIV. 445.  
     Personal and Possessive Pronouns. 446-449.  
     Demonstrative Pronouns. 450-452.

Relative Pronouns. 453.

Interrogative Pronouns. 454.

Indefinite Pronouns. 455-459.

## 71. MODELS.

- |                               |                                 |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| I. Fortune is blind.          | I. <i>Fortūna caeca est.</i>    |
| II. I who encourage you.      | II. <i>Ego qui te confirmo.</i> |
| III. Wash your hands.         | III. <i>Manus lava.</i>         |
| IV. He loves himself.         | IV. <i>Se diligit.</i>          |
| V. The guardian of this city. | V. <i>Custos hujus urbis.</i>   |
| VI. Who am I?                 | VI. <i>Quis ego sum?</i>        |
| VII. A certain rhetorician.   | VII. <i>Quidam rhetor.</i>      |

## 72. REMARKS.

1. MODEL I. — BLIND, *caeca*, Fem. Sing. Nom. to agree with *fortuna*. Rule XXXIII.

2. MODEL II. — ENCOURAGE, *confirmo*, First Pers. to agree with *qui*, which is of the First Pers. to agree with the antecedent *ego*. Rule XXXIV.

3. MODEL III. — YOUR HANDS, *manus*. The possessive, *tuas*, your, is omitted. See G. 447.

4. MODEL V. — OF THIS CITY. This city, *haec urbs*; of this city, *hujus urbis*.

5. MODEL VI. — WHO, *quis*? Why not *qui*? See G. 454.

## 73. VOCABULARY.

Have, *habeo, ēre, ui, itum*.

Instructor, *praeceptor, ōris, m*.

Make, *facio, ēre, feci, factum*.

Modest, *modestus, a, um*.

Peace, *pax, pacis, f*.

Some one, a certain one, *quidam, quaedam, quiddam* or *quoddam*. G. 191.

Yesterday, *heri, adv*.

## 74. EXERCISE.

1. Peace will be acceptable to us. 2. The city will be beautiful. 3. I have seen *beautiful* cities. 4. The pupils are diligent. 5. Your friendship delights me. 6. Your instructor praises you. 7. Which book have you? 8. I have *your* book. 9. *True* wisdom makes men modest. 10. This precept will be useful to me. 11. The precepts of your instructor will be useful to you. 12. Some boys praise themselves. 13. The letter which you wrote yesterday will delight your father.

## LESSON XVI.

## AGREEMENT OF VERBS.—INDICATIVE.

[63-67.]

## 75. LESSON FROM THE GRAMMAR.

I. Agreement of Verb with Subject. Rule XXXV. 460-463.

II. Use of Indicative. Rule XXXVI. 474.

Present. 466, 467.

Imperfect. 468, 469.

Future and Future Perfect. 470, 473.

Perfect and Pluperfect. 471, 472.

## 76. MODELS.

I. Cato praised this law.

I. *Cato hanc legem laudavit.*

- |                            |                                   |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| II. Cicero and I are well. | II. <i>Ego et Cicerō valēmus.</i> |
| III. I will write to you.  | III. <i>Scribam ad te.</i>        |

## 77. REMARKS.

1. MODEL I. — PRAISED, *laudāvit*, Historical Perfect (G. 471, II.), Third Pers. Sing. to agree with *Cato*. Rule XXXV.

2. MODEL II. — CICERO AND I, *ego et Cicerō*. In Latin the First Pers. stands before the Second.

3. ARE WELL, *valēmus*, First Pers. Plur. to agree with *ego et Cicerō*. See G. 463, 1.

4. MODEL III. — I WILL WRITE, *scribam*, Fut. Why not *ego scribam*? See G. 367, 2; 446.

5. TO YOU, *ad te*. This may stand either before or after the verb, though the modifiers of verbs more frequently stand before them. See G. 600.

## 78. VOCABULARY.

At, <i>ad</i> , or <i>apud</i> , prep. with accus.	Pydna, <i>Pydna</i> , <i>ae</i> , <i>f</i> .
Conquer, <i>vinco</i> , <i>ēre</i> , <i>vici</i> , <i>victum</i> .	Servius, <i>Servius</i> , <i>ii</i> , <i>m</i> .
For his (her, its) own sake, <i>propter sese (se)</i> .	Ten, <i>decem</i> , indecl.
Love, <i>amo</i> , <i>āre</i> , <i>āvi</i> , <i>ātum</i> .	To-morrow, <i>cras</i> , adv.
Macedonia, <i>Macedonia</i> , <i>ae</i> , <i>f</i> .	Tried, <i>spectātus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .
Perseus, <i>Perseus</i> , <i>i</i> , <i>m</i> .	Wise, <i>sapiens</i> , <i>entis</i> .

## 79. EXERCISE.

1. By whom was *Saguntum* taken? 2. This city was taken by Hannibal. 3. How many books have you? 4. I have ten good books. 5. Cato was a man of *tried* virtue. 6. We rejoice in your happiness. 7. Who was reigning at that time? 8. King Servius was reigning at Rome. 9. Will you not write to me? 10. I will write

to you to-morrow. 11. Virtue must be loved for its own sake. 12. Socrates was judged the wisest of men. 13. Herodotus has been called the father of history. 14. Perseus, the king of Macedonia, was conquered at Pydna.

## LESSON XVII.

### TENSES AND USE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

[68-74.]

#### 80. LESSON FROM THE GRAMMAR.

- I. Sequence of Tenses. Rule XXXVII. 480, 481.
- II. Potential Subjunctive. Rule XXXVIII. 485, 486.
- III. Subjunctive of Desire. Rule XXXIX. 487, 488.
- IV. Subjunctive of Purpose or Result. Rule XL. 489-492; 494; 497-500.

#### 81. MODELS.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| I. Perhaps you may inquire.                                  | I. <i>Forsitan quaerātis.</i>                       |
| II. Who doubts?  | II. <i>Quis dubitet?</i>                            |
| III. Let us love our country.                                | III. <i>Amēmus patriam.</i>                         |
| IV. He strives that he may conquer.                          | IV. <i>Enititur ut vincat.</i>                      |
| V. I allowed <i>no day</i> to pass without giving something. | V. <i>Nullum intermisi diem quin aliquid darem.</i> |

#### 82. REMARKS.

- 1. MODEL I. — YOU MAY INQUIRE, *quaerātis*, Subj. Rule XXXVIII. Subject *vos*, omitted. See G. 367, 2.

2. MODEL II. — WHO DOUBTS, or would doubt? = no one doubts, *quis dubitet?* question of appeal, Subj. See G. 486, II.

3. MODEL III. — LET US LOVE, *amemus*, Subj. of Desire. Rule XXXIX. The verb is made emphatic by standing at the beginning of the sentence. See G. 594, I.

4. OUR COUNTRY, *patriam*, possessive omitted. See G. 447.

5. MODEL IV. — THAT HE MAY CONQUER, *ut vincat*, Subj. of Purpose. Rule XL. Present tense, because it depends upon a Principal tense, *enittitur*. Rule XXXVII.

6. MODEL V. — I ALLOWED — TO PASS, *intermisi*.

7. WITHOUT GIVING SOMETHING = but that I gave something, *quin aliquid darem*. *Darem*, Subj. with *quin*, Imperfect tense, dependent upon *intermisi*. See G. 498, 3; 481, II. 1.

8. *Nullum* — *diem* are made emphatic by separation. See G. 594, III.

### 83. VOCABULARY.

Doubt, *dubito*, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātum*.

So, *tam*; *ita*, adv.

That, expressing purpose or result,

*ut*, conj.

That = but that, *quin*, conj.

### 84. EXERCISE.

1. He praises you (pl.) that he may be praised by you.
2. He praised you (pl.) that he might be praised by you.
3. They will praise us that they may be praised by us.
4. I do not doubt that you (pl.) have been diligent.
5. We did not doubt that you (pl.) had been diligent.
6. The judge may be accused of folly.
7. Let us obey the laws.
8. May our pupils love virtue.
9. May they be diligent.
10. The pupils are so diligent that they are praised by their preceptor.
11. Let us praise virtue.
12. Let virtue be praised.



## LESSON XVIII.

## SUBJUNCTIVE — CONTINUED.

[75-82.]

## 85. LESSON FROM THE GRAMMAR.

- I. Subjunctive of Condition. Rule XLI. 503-513.
- II. Subjunctive of Concession. Rule XLII. 515, 516.
- III. Subjunctive of Cause. Rule XLIII. 517-520.
- IV. Subjunctive of Time with Cause. Rule XLIV. 521-523.

## 86. MODELS.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| I. If this is a state, I am a citizen.                       | I. <i>Si haec civitas est, civis sum ego.</i>              |
| II. The day would fail me, if I should recount.              | II. <i>Dies deficiat, si numërem.</i>                      |
| III. Wisdom would not be sought, if it accomplished nothing. | III. <i>Sapientia non expetëretur, si nihil efficeret.</i> |
| IV. Though he may deride.                                    | IV. <i>Licet irrideat.</i>                                 |
| V. Since life is full of fear.                               | V. <i>Quum vita metus plena sit.</i>                       |
| VI. You are waiting till he speaks.                          | VI. <i>Exspectas dum dicat.</i>                            |

## 87. REMARKS.

1. MODEL I. — In *civis sum ego*, regularly *ego sum civis*, or *ego civis sum*, *civis* is emphatic, and is accordingly placed at the beginning of the clause. See G. 594, I.

2. MODEL II. — WOULD FAIL, SHOULD RECOUNT, *deficiat, numërem*, Subj. Rule XLI. 509.

3. MODEL III. — WOULD BE SOUGHT, ACCOMPLISHED, *expeteretur, efficeret*, Subj. Rule XLI. 510, Imperfect, 510, 1.

4. MODEL IV. — MAY DERIDE, *irrideat*, Subj. of Concession. Rule XLII.

5. MODEL V. — SINCE — IS, *quum — sit*, Subj. of Cause. Rule XLIII.

6. MODEL VI. — TILL HE SPEAKS, that he may speak; *dum dicat*, Subj. of Cause and Time. Rule XLIV.

## 88. VOCABULARY.

Although, <i>quamquam</i> ; <i>licet, etsi</i> ,	Read, <i>lego, ĕre, legi, lectum</i> .
conj.	Until, <i>dum, donec</i> , conj.
Because, <i>quod</i> , conj.	Wait, <i>expecto, āre, āvi, ātum</i> .
However, <i>quavis</i> , adv.	When, <i>quum</i> , conj.
If, <i>si</i> , conj.	Yet, <i>tamen</i> , adv.
Just, <i>justus, a, um</i> .	

## 89. EXERCISE.

1. If they are good, they are happy. 2. If you will be diligent, you will be praised. 3. If you would be diligent, you would be praised. 4. If you (pl.) were diligent, you would be praised. 5. If they had been good, they would have been happy. 6. Although the judge is just, he is yet often blamed. 7. However just he may be, he will often be blamed. 8. You will be praised, because you are diligent. 9. The citizens will praise the judge, because (on the ground that) he is just. 10. We will wait until you read the letter (i. e. that you may read it). 11. We saw beautiful temples, when we were in Rome.

## LESSON XIX.

## SUBJUNCTIVE — CONTINUED.

[83-85.]

## 90. LESSON FROM THE GRAMMAR.

- I. Subjunctive in Indirect Questions. Rule XLV. 525.
- II. Subjunctive by Attraction. Rule XLVI. 527.
- III. Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse. Rule XLVII. 529.

## 91. MODELS.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| I. What a day may bring forth is uncertain.                         | I. <i>Quid dies ferat, incertum est.</i>                       |
| II. I fear I shall increase the labor, while I wish to diminish it. | II. <i>Vereor ne, dum minuire velim laborem, augeam.</i>       |
| III. He boasted that he had made the ring which he wore.            | III. <i>Gloriatus est, annulum quem haberet se confecisse.</i> |

## 92. REMARKS.

1. MODEL I. — MAY BRING FORTH, *ferat*, Subj. Rule XLV.
2. UNCERTAIN, *incertum*, Nom. Sing. Neut., to agree with the clause *quid — ferat*. See G. 438, 3; 35, III.
3. MODEL II. — I SHALL INCREASE = lest I may increase, *ne augeam*, Subj. See G. 492, 4.
4. WHILE I WISH, *dum velim*. *Velim* is attracted into the Subjunctive by the Subjunctive *augeam*. Rule XLVI.
5. In the arrangement of words and clauses in Model II., observe (1) that the clause *dum — laborem* is inserted in the clause *ne — augeam* (G. 604, I.), and (2) that the object *laborem* is expressed in the in-

serted clause, *dum—laborem*, but omitted after *augeam*. A literal rendering of the Latin would be, *I fear lest, while I wish to diminish the labor, I may increase (it)*. Emphasis places *laborem* at the end of the clause. See G. 594, II.

6. MODEL III. — THAT HE HAD MADE, *se confecisse*, Infinitive with Subject Accusative, depending upon *gloriātus est*. See G. 550. *Se*, not *eum*, must be used, according to G. 449, I.

7. WHICH HE WORE, had, *quem habēret*. *Habēret*, Subj., because in Indirect Discourse. Rule XLVII. The Imperfect is used, because it depends upon an Historical tense, *gloriātus est*, and denotes Incomplete action. See G. 481, II. 1. In the language of the one who made the boast, the Indicative would be used, *quem habeo*.

8. The object *annūlum* would regularly follow the subject *se*, but is here placed at the beginning of the clause because it is emphatic.

### 93. VOCABULARY.

Ask (a question), <i>interrogo, are, āvi, ātum.</i>	Please, <i>placeo, ere, ui, itum</i> , dat. G. 385.
Do, <i>facio, ere, feci, factum.</i>	Say, <i>dico, ere, dixi, dictum.</i>
Know, <i>scio, ire, ivi, itum.</i>	Whether, <i>num</i> , adv. G. 526, I.
Not to know, <i>nescio, ire, ivi, itum.</i>	Who, which (relative), <i>qui, quae, quod.</i>

### 94. EXERCISE.

1. What did your father say? 2. I do not know what he said. 3. He asks what I have done. 4. He asked what I had done. 5. They ask what I am doing. 6. They asked what I was doing. 7. He asked me to read the letter which he had received. 8. The preceptor praises the pupils, because they are diligent. 9. He says that he praises the pupils, because they are diligent. 10. Did not that letter please your father? 11. I asked whether that letter pleased your father.

## LESSON XX.

## IMPERATIVE. INFINITIVE.

[86-91.]

## 95. LESSON FROM THE GRAMMAR.

- I. Imperative. Rule XLVIII. 535.
- II. Subject of Infinitive. Rule XLIX. 545.
- III. Infinitive as Subject. 549.
- IV. Infinitive as Object. 550.

## 96. MODELS.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| I. Practise justice.                                   | I. <i>Justitiam cole.</i>                      |
| II. That a <i>citizen</i> should be bound, is a crime. | II. <i>Facinus est vinciri civem.</i>          |
| III. I find that Plato came to Tarentum.               | III. <i>Platōnem Tarentum venisse reperio.</i> |

## 97. REMARKS.

1. MODEL II. — THAT A CITIZEN SHOULD BE BOUND, *vinciri civem*, or *civem vinciri*. The latter is the common order, but in the former *vinciri* and *civem* are made emphatic. *Vinciri civem* is the subject of *est* (G. 549), and *civem* is the subject of *vinciri*. Rule XLIX.

2. MODEL III. — THAT PLATO CAME TO TARENTUM, *Platōnem Tarentum venisse*, object of the active verb, *reperio*. See G. 550.

3. TO TARENTUM, *Tarentum*. Rule IX.

## 98. VOCABULARY.

Ancient, <i>antiquus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .	Guard, <i>custodio</i> , <i>ire</i> , <i>ivi</i> , <i>itum</i> .
Break, offend against, <i>violo</i> , <i>are</i> , <i>avi</i> , <i>atum</i> .	Parent, <i>parens</i> , <i>entis</i> , <i>m</i> . and <i>f</i> . People = nation, <i>populus</i> , <i>i</i> , <i>m</i> .

Practise, *colo, ere, colui, cultum.*  
Safe, *salvus, a, um.*

See that, take care that, *curo, are,*  
*avi, atum.*

## 99. EXERCISE.

1. Boys, obey the laws, love your parents, imitate the good. 2. Soldiers, see that you guard the city. 3. Remember the ancient valor of the Roman people. 4. It is the part of a *good* citizen to obey the laws. 5. It is the part of a wise man to practise virtue. 6. Ancus was reigning. 7. They say that Ancus was reigning. 8. We know that the city is safe. 9. Do not break the laws. 10. Imitate your father. 11. They say that the city has been taken. 12. It is true that *good* laws are useful.

## LESSON XXI.

GERUNDS, SUPINES, PARTICIPLES. — PARTICLES.  
[92-99.]

## 100. LESSON FROM THE GRAMMAR.

- I. Gerunds and Gerundives. 559-566.
- II. Supines. 567-570.
- III. Supine in *um*. Rule L. 569.
- IV. Participles. 571-581.
- V. Use of Adverbs. Rule II. 582-585.
- VI. Use of Conjunctions. 587, 588.

## 101. MODELS.

- I. The art of living. I. *Ars vivendi.*
- II. We are inclined to learn. II. *Ad discendum propensi sumus.*

III. For cultivating the fields.	III. <i>Ad colendos agros.</i>
IV. By reading the orators.	IV. <i>Legendis oratoribus.</i>
V. He has come to congratulate you.	V. <i>Venit tibi gratulatum.</i>
VI. Plato died while writing.	VI. <i>Plato scribens mortuus est.</i>
VII. Laelius was living happily.	VII. <i>Laelius beate vivebat.</i>
VIII. You and Tullia are well.	VIII. <i>Tu et Tullia valetis.</i>

## 102. REMARKS.

1. MODEL I. — OF LIVING, *vivendi*, Gen. of Gerund, depending upon *ars*. Rule XVI.

2. MODEL III. — FOR CULTIVATING THE FIELDS, *ad colendos agros*; *colendos*, Gerundive agreeing with *agros*. See G. 562. *Ad colendum agros* should not be used. See G. 562, 3; 565, 2.

3. MODEL IV. — *Legendis* is Gerundive, agreeing with *oratoribus*. *Legendo oratores* may also be used.

4. MODEL V. — TO CONGRATULATE, *gratulatum*, Sup. Rule L.

5. MODEL VI. — WHILE WRITING, *scribens*, Participle, G. 578, I.

6. MODEL VIII. — ARE WELL, *valetis*, Second Pers. Plur., G. 463, 1.

## 103. VOCABULARY.

Act, <i>ago, ĕre, egi, actum.</i>	Hear, <i>audio, ire, ivi, itum.</i>
Agreeable, <i>jucundus, a, um.</i>	Inclined, <i>propensus, a, um.</i>
Ambassador, <i>legatus, i, m.</i>	Learn, <i>disco, ĕre, didici.</i>
And, <i>et; atque; que</i> , enclitic. G.	Live, <i>vivo, ĕre, vixi, victum.</i>
587, I. 2.	Neither — nor, <i>neque — neque;</i>
Ask for, seek, <i>peto, ĕre, petivi,</i>	<i>nec — nec.</i>
<i>petitum.</i>	Play, <i>ludo, ĕre, lusi, lusum.</i>
Either — or, <i>aut — aut</i> , conj.	Terrify, <i>terreo, ĕre, ui, itum.</i>
Happily, <i>beate</i> , adv.	

## 104. EXERCISE.

1. We are desirous of living happily. 2. The art of reading will be useful to us. 3. Are you (pl.) not desirous of learning wisdom? 4. We are desirous of learning wisdom. 5. Boys are inclined to play. 6. Men are inclined to act. 7. We learn by teaching. 8. They will send ambassadors to ask for *peace*. 9. This is agreeable to hear. 10. The soldiers, being terrified, fled. 11. Let us imitate the good and wise. 12. He is either in Rome or in Athens. 13. They were neither in Rome nor in Athens.

## LESSON XXII.

## GENDER. FORMATION OF CASES.

[100-111.]

## 105. LESSON FROM THE GRAMMAR.

- I. Gender. 44, 47; 99-115, 118, 120.  
 II. Formation of Cases. 55-90.

## 106. MODELS.

- |                              |                                |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| I. He yields to the time.    | I. <i>Tempōri cedit.</i>       |
| II. In winter and summer.    | II. <i>Hĩeme et aestāte.</i>   |
| III. <i>Cato's</i> orations. | III. <i>Catōnis oratiōnes.</i> |

## 107. REMARKS.

1. MODEL I. — TO THE TIME, *tempōri*, Dat. Rule XII.
2. MODEL II. — IN WINTER, *hiĩeme*, Abl. Rule XXVIII.
3. MODEL III. — CATO'S, *Catōnis*, Gen. Rule XVI. The Genitive



more commonly follows its noun, but may precede, especially when emphatic. G. 598, 2.

4. Give the Gender of all the nouns in the Models.

### 108. VOCABULARY.

Battle, <i>proelium</i> , <i>ii</i> , n.	Incursion, <i>incursio</i> , <i>ōnis</i> , f.
Brave, <i>fortis</i> , <i>e</i> .	Reward, <i>merces</i> , <i>ēdis</i> , f.
Demand, <i>postūlo</i> , <i>āre</i> , <i>āvi</i> , <i>ātum</i> .	Safe, secure, <i>tutus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .
Despair of, <i>despēro</i> , <i>āre</i> , <i>āvi</i> , <i>ātum</i> , with acc., or <i>de</i> with abl.	Safety, <i>salus</i> , <i>utis</i> , f.
From, <i>a</i> or <i>ab</i> ; <i>e</i> or <i>ex</i> .	Small, <i>parvus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .
Incite, <i>incito</i> , <i>āre</i> , <i>āvi</i> , <i>ātum</i> .	Timid, <i>timidus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .
	Trumpeter, <i>tubicen</i> , <i>inis</i> , m.

### 109. EXERCISE.

1. The trumpeter incites the brave soldiers to battle.  
 2. The brave soldiers are incited to battle by the trumpeter.  
 3. The citizens have despaired of safety.  
 4. Let us not despair of safety.  
 5. Timid men often despair of safety.  
 6. Brave soldiers will never despair of their country.  
 7. The citizens are safe from the incursions of the enemy.  
 8. Let us not be timid in danger.  
 9. A reward must be demanded.  
 10. We will demand a small reward.

## LESSON XXIII.

### GENDER AND FORMATION OF CASES — CONTINUED.

[112-147.]

### 110. VOCABULARY.

Admonish, <i>admōneo</i> , <i>ēre</i> , <i>ui</i> , <i>itum</i> .	<i>ra</i> , <i>altērum</i> . G. 149; 149, 3.
Another, <i>alius</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>ud</i> ; <i>alter</i> , <i>altē-</i>	Bravely, <i>fortiter</i> , adv.

Common, *communis*, e.Content, *contentus*, a, um.Easy, *facilis*, e.Ennius, *Ennius*, ii, m.Fight, *pugno*, āre, āvi, ātum.Herald, *praeco*, ōnis, m.Hope, *spes*, *spei*, f.Liberate, *libero*, āre, āvi, ātum.Name, *nomen*, īnis, n.Not yet, *nondum*, adv.Poem, *poëma*, ātis, n.Proclaim, *proclāmo*, āre, āvi, ātum.Rule, *dominatio*, ōnis, f.Son, *filius*, ii, m. G. 45, 5, 2).Tyrant, *tyrannus*, i, m.Victor, *victor*, ōris, m.Xenophon, *Xenōphon*, ōntis, m.

## 111. EXERCISE.

1. Hope is common to all men. 2. It is easy to admonish another. 3. The *brave* soldiers fought most bravely. 4. The son of Xenophon fought bravely. 5. Xenophon heard that his son had fought bravely. 6. Herald, proclaim the name of the *victor*. 7. The names of the *victors* will be proclaimed by the heralds. 8. Have you not read the poems of Ennius? 9. I have not yet read them. 10. They liberated the city from the rule of the *tyrants*. 11. Let us be content with our books.

## LESSON XXIV.

## SYNOPSIS OF CONJUGATION. FORMATION OF THE PARTS OF THE VERB.

[148-168.]

## 112. LESSON FROM THE GRAMMAR.

I. Synopsis of Conjugation. 216-226.

II. Formation of the Parts of the Verb. 240-242; 246-260.

## 113. MODELS.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| I. I will write to you what<br>I think.<br>II. He <i>will</i> conquer his dis-<br>position and com-<br>mand himself. | I. <i>Ad te scribam quid<br/>sentiam.</i><br>II. <i>Vincet animum sibi-<br/>que imperabit.</i> |
|--|--|

## 114. REMARKS.

1. MODEL I. — I THINK, *sentiam*, Subj. in Indirect Question. See G. 525.
2. MODEL II. — HIS. The possessive should here be omitted in Latin. See G. 447.
3. Give the Principal Parts and the Synopsis of the Verbs in the Models.

## 115. VOCABULARY.

Alba Longa, <i>Alba Longa</i> , <i>Albae Longae</i> , f.	Priscus, <i>Priscus</i> , i, m.
Ascanius, <i>Ascanius</i> , ii, m.	Romulus, <i>Romulus</i> , i, m.
Citadel, <i>arx</i> , <i>arcis</i> , f.	Saturnia, <i>Saturnia</i> , ae, f.
Early, ancient, <i>antiquus</i> , a, um.	Succeed, <i>succedo</i> , ere, cessi, cessum, dat. G. 386.
Enlarge, <i>amplio</i> , are, avi, atum.	Tullius, <i>Tullius</i> , ii, m.
Found, <i>condo</i> , ere, didi, ditum.	

## 116. EXERCISE.

1. The citadel was called Saturnia.
2. Did not Ascanius found a city in Italy?
3. He founded a city in very early times.
4. He is said to have founded a city in very early times.
5. They say that he founded a city.
6. The city was called Alba Longa.
7. Who founded Rome?
8. Romulus founded Rome.
9. Who enlarged

the city? 10. King Ancus enlarged the city. 11. Whom did *Servius Tullius* succeed? 12. King *Servius* succeeded *Tarquinius Priscus*.

## LESSON XXV.

### FORMATION OF THE PARTS OF VERBS — CONTINUED. [169-184.]

#### 117. VOCABULARY.

Against, <i>contra</i> , <i>in</i> , prep. with acc.	Porsena, <i>Porsēna</i> , <i>ae</i> , m.
Camillus, <i>Camillus</i> , <i>i</i> , m.	Relate, <i>narro</i> , <i>dre</i> , <i>āvi</i> , <i>ātum</i> .
Conspire, <i>conjūro</i> , <i>āre</i> , <i>āvi</i> , <i>ātum</i> .	Sword, <i>ferrum</i> , <i>i</i> , n., lit. iron; with fire and sword, <i>ferro</i> <i>ignēque</i> .
Fable, <i>fabūla</i> , <i>ae</i> , f.	With, <i>cum</i> , prep. with abl.
Field, <i>ager</i> , <i>agri</i> , m.	Youth, <i>juvēnis</i> , <i>is</i> , m. and f.
Fire, <i>ignis</i> , <i>ignis</i> , m.	
Lay waste, <i>vasto</i> , <i>dre</i> , <i>āvi</i> , <i>ātum</i> .	

#### 118. EXERCISE.

1. What ought to be done? 2. I will ask my father what ought to be done. 3. Ask your father what ought to be done. 4. Who conquered the enemy? 5. Camillus is said to have conquered the enemy. 6. They were conquered in a great battle. 7. The youths conspired against king Porsena. 8. Will you (pl.) not make peace with the enemy? 9. We are making peace with the enemy. 10. I will relate to you this fable. 11. The enemy will lay waste the fields with fire and sword.

## LESSON XXVI.

## FORMATION OF THE PARTS OF VERBS — CONTINUED.

[185-200.]

## 119. VOCABULARY.

Be subject to, obey, <i>pareo, ēre, ui, itum</i> , dat.	naval engagement, <i>pugna navālis</i> .
Cannae, <i>Cannae, ārum</i> , f. pl.	New Carthage, <i>Carthāgo Nova, Carthaginis Novae</i> , f.
Carthaginian, <i>Poenus, i, m.</i> ; <i>Carthaginiensis, is</i> , m. and f.	Once, <i>semel</i> , adv.
Fight, battle, <i>pugna, ae</i> , f.	Publius, <i>Publius, ii</i> , m.
Formerly, <i>quondam</i> , adv.	State, <i>civitas, ātis</i> , f.
Friendly, <i>amicus, a, um</i> .	Try, <i>tento, āre, āvi, ātum</i> .
In vain, <i>frustra</i> , adv.	Victory, <i>victoria, ae</i> , f.
Naval, <i>navālis, e</i> ; naval battle,	Village, <i>vicus, i, m</i> .

## 120. EXERCISE.

1. Who took New Carthage? 2. Publius Scipio is said to have taken that city. 3. Peace will be tried in vain. 4. We will try peace once. 5. They called the village Cannae. 6. Many states of Italy were formerly subject to the Romans. 7. Saguntum was friendly to the Romans. 8. The Romans conquered the Carthaginians in (by) a naval battle. 9. This victory was most acceptable to the soldiers. 10. Victory is always acceptable to soldiers.

## LESSON XXVII.

FORMATION OF THE PARTS OF VERBS — CONTINUED.  
[201-214.]

## 121. VOCABULARY.

Among, *inter*, prep. with acc.Booty, *praeda*, ae, f.Caesar, *Caesar*, āris, m.Capua, *Capua*, ae, f.Cleopatra, *Cleopātra*, ae, f.Coat of mail, *lorica*, ae, f.Come to the relief of, *subvĕnio*,  
*ire, vĕni, ventum*.Divide, *divĭdo*, ěre, *visi, visum*.Egypt, *Aegyptus*, ī, f.Find, *invĕnio, ire, vĕni, ventum*.Golden, *aureus*, a, um.Mithridates, *Mithridātes*, is, m.Nile, *Nĭlus*, ī, m.Ptolemy, *Ptolemaeus*, ī, m.Queen, *regina*, ae, f.School, *ludus*, ī, m.Sulla, *Sulla*, ae, m.

## 122. EXERCISE.

1. Will you not come to the relief of your country?
2. We ask you to come to the relief of your country.
3. He says that he will come to the relief of his country.
4. By whom was *Mithridates* conquered?
5. He was conquered in many battles by Sulla.
6. He was conquered in Greece.
7. This school was at Capua.
8. Cleopatra was queen of Egypt.
9. The soldiers will divide the booty among themselves.
10. Ptolemy, king of Egypt, was conquered by Caesar.
11. The king's golden coat of mail was found in the Nile.

## LESSON XXVIII.

IRREGULAR, DEFECTIVE, AND IMPERSONAL VERBS.  
[215-221.]

## 123. LESSON FROM THE GRAMMAR.

- I. Irregular Verbs. 287-296.
- II. Defective Verbs. 297.
- III. Impersonal Verbs. 298-301.

## 124. MODELS.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| I. Who proposed the law ?                     | I. <i>Quis legem tulit?</i>                |
| II. I should prefer to be<br>Phidias.         | II. <i>Ego me Phidiam esse<br/>mallem.</i> |
| III. They began to be cred-<br>ulous.         | III. <i>Credūli esse coepērunt.</i>        |
| IV. It is proper that this<br>should be done. | IV. <i>Hoc fieri oportet.</i>              |

## 125. REMARKS.

1. MODEL II. — SHOULD PREFER, *mallem*, Potential Subj. See G. 485.

2. TO BE = that I should be, *me esse*, depending upon *mallem*. See G. 551, II.

3. MODEL III. — CREDULOUS, *credūli*, Nom., agreeing with the subject of *coepērunt*. See G. 547, I.

4. MODEL IV. — THAT THIS SHOULD BE DONE, *hoc fieri*, subject of *oportet*. See G. 549, 1.

5. Give the Synopsis of the Irregular, Defective, and Impersonal Verbs in the Models.

## 126. VOCABULARY.

Approve, <i>probo, āre, āvi, ātum.</i>	Occupy, <i>occūpo, āre, āvi, ātum.</i>
Be able, can, <i>possum, posse, potui.</i>	Plan, <i>consilium, ii, n.</i>
Forces, <i>copiae, ārum, f. pl.</i>	Renew, <i>instauro, āre, āvi, ātum.</i>
From, out of, <i>e, ex</i> , prep. with abl.	Return, go back, <i>redeo, ire, ii, itum.</i>
G. 434, 3.	
Gaul, the country, <i>Gallia, ae, f.</i>	So, so greatly, to such an extent, <i>adeo, adv.</i>
Gaul, a Gaul, <i>Gallus, i, m.</i>	
Lacedaemonian, <i>Lacedaemonius, ii, m.</i>	Thermopylae, <i>Thermopylae, ārum, f. pl.</i>
Lead out, <i>edūco, ēre, duxi, ductum.</i>	Wage against, <i>infēro, ferre, tūli, illātum.</i>
Leonidas, <i>Leonidas, ae, m.</i>	

## 127. EXERCISE.

1. Caesar was waging war against the Gauls. 2. War has been waged against us. 3. Caesar had returned from Gaul to Rome. 4. Leonidas was king of the Lacedaemonians. 5. The Lacedaemonians sent their king Leonidas to occupy Thermopylae. 6. We led out our forces from the city. 7. The enemy were so terrified that they fled. 8. Were they able to renew the war? 9. They were not able to renew the war. 10. Do you (pl.) not approve my plan? 11. We approve it. 12. It will be approved by all.



## LESSON XXIX.

## IRREGULAR, DEFECTIVE, AND IMPERSONAL VERBS —

CONTINUED.

[222-229.]

## 128. VOCABULARY.

Begin, <i>coepi, coepisse.</i>	Leuctra, <i>Leuctra, ōrum</i> , n. pl.
Engagement, fight, <i>proelium, ii</i> , n., <i>pugna, ae, f.</i>	Observe, <i>servo, āre, āvi, ātum.</i>
Finish, bring to a close, <i>finio, ire,</i> <i>ivi, itum.</i>	Six, <i>sex</i> , indecl.
	Wish, <i>volo, velle, volui.</i>

## 129. EXERCISE.

1. Did not the enemy fortify the city? 2. They began to fortify the city. 3. Do you (pl.) not *wish* to fortify the city? 4. We *wish* to fortify it. 5. *Shall* we not *be able* to fortify it? 6. You (pl.) *will be able* to fortify it. 7. The war was brought to a close (finished) by a *naval* engagement. 8. Will you (pl.) not give me this book as a present? 9. We will give you *six books* as a present. 10. This peace will be observed many years. 11. The Lacedaemonians were conquered at Leuctra.

## LESSON XXX.

## IRREGULAR, DEFECTIVE, AND IMPERSONAL VERBS —

CONTINUED.

[230-245.]

## 130. VOCABULARY.

Agis, <i>Agis, idis</i> , m.	Conceal, <i>celo, āre, āvi, ātum.</i>
Chaeronea, <i>Chaeroneā, ae, f.</i>	Joy, <i>gaudium, ii</i> , n.

Liberty, <i>libertas</i> , ātis, f.	Present, <i>dono</i> , āre, āvi, ātum.
Pericles, <i>Pericles</i> , is, m.	Preside over, <i>praesum</i> , esse, fui.
Philip, <i>Philippus</i> , i, m.	Recover, <i>recupero</i> , āre, āvi, ātum.
Prefer, would rather, <i>malo</i> , malle, malui.	Republic, <i>res publica</i> , rei publi- cae, f.

### 131. EXERCISE.

1. Pericles at that time presided over the republic. 2. He is said to have presided over the republic many years.
3. Philip wished to wage war against the Athenians. 4. War was waged by Philip against the Athenians. 5. Philip conquered the Athenians at Chaeronea. 6. The victor wished to conceal his joy. 7. Many wish to rule.
8. I prefer to obey. 9. The Athenians wished to present the general with a golden crown. 10. The Lacedaemonians wished to recover their liberty.

# PART SECOND.

## LATIN SYNTAX.

---

### LESSON XXXI.

#### SUBJECT AND PREDICATE.

[1, 3.]<sup>1</sup>

#### 132. LESSON FROM THE GRAMMAR.

- I. Case of Subject. 367.
- II. Agreement of Verb. 460.
- III. Arrangement of Subject and Predicate. 593.
- IV. Effect of Emphasis and Euphony. 594.

#### 133. MODELS.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| I. Scipio was made consul.                   | I. <i>Scipio factus est consul.</i>               |
| II. Demosthenes himself does not satisfy us. | II. <i>Nobis non satisfācit ipse Demosthēnes.</i> |

---

<sup>1</sup> This portion of the work is intended to accompany the reading of Caesar's Commentaries on the Gallic War. The enclosed numerals standing at the beginning of each lesson refer to Books and Chapters in that work. Thus [1, 3] denotes Book I. Chap. III., and shows that this lesson is to be learned after the pupil has read the first three Chapters of the first Book.

## 134. REMARKS.

1. MODEL II. — DEMOSTHENES HIMSELF, *ipse Demosthēnes*. These words, which would regularly stand at the beginning of the sentence, are placed at the end because emphatic. See G. 594, II.

2. Us, *nobis*, Dative depending upon *satisfacit*. Rule XII. See also G. 385, 2. *Nobis*, being emphatic, stands at the beginning of the sentence. G. 594, I.

## 135. VOCABULARY.

Accomplish, <i>conficio, ēre, fēci, fec-</i> <i>tum</i> .	Eloquent, <i>elōquens, entis</i> .
Adjacent, nearest, <i>proximus, a,</i> <i>um</i> . G. 166.	Establish, <i>confirmo, āre, āvi, ātum</i> .
Among, with, near to, <i>apud</i> , prep. with acc.	German, <i>Germānus, i, m</i> .
Belgians, <i>Belgae, ārum, m. pl</i> .	He, she, it, <i>is, ea, id</i> . G. 451.
Borders, territory, <i>fines, finium,</i> <i>m. pl</i> .	Keep from, <i>prohibeo, ēre, ui, itum</i> . G. 425, 2, 2).
	Wage, <i>gero, ēre, gessi, gestum</i> .

## 136. EXERCISE.

1. The Romans surpassed the Gauls in valor. 2. The Gauls were surpassed in valor by the Romans. 3. The Romans praised their own valor. 4. Cicero was the most eloquent of the Romans. 5. He was the most eloquent among the Romans. 6. The Belgians waged many wars with the Germans. 7. All these things must be accomplished by us at the same time. 8. Peace must be established with the adjacent states. 9. The enemy must be kept from our borders. 10. War must be waged in the territory of the enemy.

## LESSON XXXII.

## FORMS OF SUBJECT.

[1, 6.]

## 137. LESSON FROM THE GRAMMAR.

- I. Subject — Noun or Pronoun, expressed or implied.  
367, 1.
- II. Subject — Infinitive, Clause with Conjunction, Indirect  
Question. 549, 492, 495, 525, 2.
- III. Subject — Simple, Complex, Compound. 351, 352,  
361, 1.
- IV. Agreement of Verb with Compound Subject. 463.

## 138. MODELS.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| I. Glory follows virtue.   | I. <i>Gloria virtutem sequitur.</i>                   |
| II. They are led by glory.   | II. <i>Gloria ducuntur.</i>                           |
| III. That an orator should<br>be angry is by no<br>means becoming.               | III. <i>Oratorem irasci mi-<br/>nime decet.</i>       |
| IV. It remains for me to<br>supplicate you (that<br>I should supplicate<br>you). | IV. <i>Reliquum est, ut te<br/>orem.</i>              |
| V. It is asked what ought<br>to be done.   | V. <i>Quaeritur quid agen-<br/>dum sit.</i>           |
| VI. Habit and reason have<br>made you gentle.                                    | VI. <i>Consuetudo et ratio<br/>te lenem fecerunt.</i> |
| VII. Marcus and I are well.  | VII. <i>Ego et Marcus valē-<br/>mus.</i>              |

## 139. REMARKS.

1. MODEL II. — THEY ARE LED, *ducuntur*. The subject is omitted, being implied in the ending of the verb. See G. 367, 2.

2. BY GLORY, *gloria*, Abl. Rule XXI.

3. MODEL III. — THAT AN ORATOR SHOULD BE ANGRY, *oratórem irasci*, an Infinitive with a subject, used as the subject of *deceat*. See G. 549, 1.

4. BY NO MEANS, *minime*, least, least of all things. It qualifies *deceat*. Rule LI.

5. MODEL IV. — IT REMAINS = is left, *reliquum est*.

6. FOR ME TO SUPPLICATE YOU = that I should supplicate you, *ut te orem*, a clause expressing both subject and result. See G. 495, 2. Such clauses usually follow the predicate.

7. MODEL V. — WHAT OUGHT TO BE DONE, *quid agendum sit*, indirect question, subject of *quaeritur*. See G. 525, 2. For the Subjunctive, see G. 525.

8. MODEL VII. — MARCUS AND I, *ego et Marcus*. In compound subjects and objects, the Latin places the first person before the second or third.

9. ARE WELL, *valemus*. For person, see G. 463, 1.

## 140. VOCABULARY.

Burn, burn up, <i>exūro, ēre, ussi, ustum</i> .	Persuade, <i>persuādeo, ēre, suāsi, suāsum</i> , dat. G. 385.
Encounter, <i>subeo, ire, ii, itum</i> . G. 295.	Prepared, <i>parātus, a, um</i> .
Helvetians, <i>Helvetii, ōrum</i> , m. pl.	Remains, it remains, <i>reliquum est</i> ( <i>ut</i> with subj.)
Marcus, <i>Marcus, i</i> , m.	Speak, <i>dico, ēre, dixi, dictum</i> .
Of, concerning, <i>de</i> , prep. with abl.	Town, <i>oppīdum, i</i> , n.
	Uncertain, <i>incertus, a, um</i> .

## 141. EXERCISE.

1. The Helvetians will burn their towns and villages.
2. All the towns and villages will be burned.
3. The

soldiers are prepared to encounter these dangers. 4. Marcus and I were prepared to encounter all dangers. 5. We have seen the beautiful city. 6. You and Marcus did not see that city. 7. It will be easy to persuade *your* father. 8. You and Marcus will easily persuade *my* father. 9. Whether that city was taken is uncertain. 10. It remains for me to speak of this city.

### LESSON XXXIII.

#### FORMS OF PREDICATE.

[1, 9.]

#### 142. LESSON FROM THE GRAMMAR.

- I. Predicate — Verb, Noun, Adjective, Infinitive. 353, 353, I.
- II. Predicate — Simple, Complex, Compound. 353, 354–356, 361, 2.
- III. Agreement of Predicate with Subject. 460, 362, 438.
  1. Verb with Subject. 460.
  2. Predicate Noun with Subject. 362.
  3. Predicate Adjective with Subject. 438, 2.

#### 143. MODELS.

- |                                 |                                      |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| I. The world is subject to God. | I. <i>Mundus Deo paret.</i>          |
| II. Gorgias was a rhetorician.  | II. <i>Gorgias fuit rhetor.</i>      |
| III. The reasons are most just. | III. <i>Causae justissimae sunt.</i> |
| IV. To live is to think.        | IV. <i>Vivere est cogitare.</i>      |

- V. He stated his opinion.  
 VI. These things are acceptable and agreeable to the people.

- V. *Sententiam dixit.*  
 VI. *Haec populo grata atque jucunda sunt.*

### 144. REMARKS.

1. MODEL III. — MOST JUST, *justissimae*, superlative, in the Nom. Fem. Plur. to agree with *causae*. Rule XXXIII. It may stand either before or after *sunt*.
2. MODEL IV. — TO LIVE, *vivere*, subject of *est*. See G. 549.
3. TO THINK, *cogitare*, predicate nominative after *est*. See G. 553, I.

### 145. SYNONYMES.

Leader, commander; *dux, imperator*.

1. *Dux, ducis*, m.; LEADER, GENERAL, — considered simply in his capacity as the *leader* of troops.
2. *Imperator, oris*, m.; COMMANDER, GENERAL, — with special reference to his authority and rank as commander, — a higher title than *dux*.

### 146. VOCABULARY.

Call, <i>appello, nomino, voco, are, avi, atum</i> . See Syn. 184.	Language, tongue, <i>lingua, ae, f</i> .
Celts, <i>Celtae, arum</i> , m. pl.	Leader, <i>dux, ducis</i> , m. and f.
Commander, <i>imperator, oris</i> , m.	Not only — but also, <i>non solum — sed etiam</i> .
Fear, <i>metuo, ere, ui</i> . G. 274.	

### 147. EXERCISE.

1. The Gauls were the enemies of the Romans.
2. We have been called the friends of the *Gauls*.
3. The Gauls were called in their language Celts.
4. The Belgi-



ans were very brave. 5. Caesar was the commander of the Romans. 6. The Romans did not fear the leaders of the *enemy*. 7. The Romans called Cicero the father of his country. 8. Peace and friendship will be established with the enemy. 9. It is easy to encounter these dangers. 10. The Romans not only waged war with the Gauls, but also conquered them.

## LESSON XXXIV.

### FORMS OF MODIFIERS.

[1, 12.]

### 148. LESSON FROM THE GRAMMAR.

- I. Modifiers of Subject — Adjectives, Nouns, 352.
- II. Modifiers of Verb Predicate — Objective Modifiers, Adverbial Modifiers. 354.
- III. Modifiers of Predicate Noun. 352, 355,
- IV. Modifiers of Predicate Adjective. 356.
- V. Position of Modifiers in the Sentence. 598–601.

### 149. MODELS.

- |                                      |  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| I. Good men love equity.             | I. <i>Viri boni aequitatem amant.</i>    |
| II. The name of peace is pleasing.   | II. <i>Nomen pacis est dulce.</i>        |
| III. I greatly feared the voyage.    | III. <i>Navigatiōnem valde timēbam.</i>  |
| IV. Justice is the queen of virtues. | IV. <i>Justitia est regīna virtutum.</i> |

V. Virtue is productive of pleasure.

V. *Virtus est efficiens voluptätis.*

### 150. REMARKS.

1. MODEL III. — GREATLY, *valde*. An adverb used with an object generally stands directly before the verb, *valde timebam*.

2. I FEARED, *timebam* or *timui*. The latter would express simply the *fact*, I feared, while the former denotes the *continuance* of the fear, I feared = I was fearing.

3. MODEL V. — OF PLEASURE, *voluptätis*. Rule XVII. Such a genitive may either precede or follow its adjective.

### 151. VOCABULARY.

Arar, <i>Arar, äris</i> , m.; acc. <i>Arärim</i> .	Lead across, <i>tradäco, äre, duxi, ductum</i> .
Army, <i>exercitus, us</i> , m.	
Endeavor, <i>conor, äri, ätus sum</i> , dep.	Order, <i>jubeo, äre, jussi, jussum</i> .
Labienus, <i>Labienus, i</i> , m.	Orgetorix, <i>Orgetörix, igis</i> , m.
	River, <i>flumen, inis</i> , n.

### 152. EXERCISE.

1. The soldiers greatly feared the valor of the brave Helvetians. 2. Caesar, the commander of the *Roman army*, conquered the enemy. 3. The leaders of the enemy were conquered in many battles. 4. He *ordered* the beautiful towns to be burned. 5. Orgetorix formed this conspiracy. 6. He *endeavored* to persuade all the states to wage war with Caesar. 7. He said that this plan would be useful to all the states. 8. Cicero was called the father of his country. 9. This state formerly waged war with the Roman people. 10. Labienus led his forces across the river Arar.

## LESSON XXXV.

## INTERROGATIVE AND IMPERATIVE SENTENCES.

[1, 15.]

## 153. LESSON FROM THE GRAMMAR.

- I. Interrogative Sentences. 346, II.  
 1. Single Questions. 346, II. 1.  
 2. Double Questions. 346, II. 2.  
 3. Answers. 346, II. 3.
- II. Imperative Sentences. 346, III.
- III. Moods in Imperative Sentences — Imperative, Subjunctive. 535, 488, II.

## 154. MODELS.

- |                                      |  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| I. What is better than goodness?     | I. <i>Quid est melius bonitate?</i>              |
| II. Is that your fault, or ours?     | II. <i>Utrum ea vestra, an nostra culpa est?</i> |
| III. Did he state the cause? He did. | III. <i>Dixitne causam? Dixit.</i>               |
| IV. Save yourselves.                 | IV. <i>Conservate vos.</i>                       |
| V. Use your strength.                | V. <i>Robore utare.</i>                          |

## 155. REMARKS.

1. MODEL I. — THAN GOODNESS, *quam bonitas*, or *bonitate*. We will use the latter form, which may stand either before or after *melius*. For the ablative, see Rule XXIII.

2. MODEL III. — HE DID = he did state it, *dixit*. See G. 346, II. 3.

## 156. SYNONYMES.

Road, way, path ; *via, iter, semita*.

1. *Via, ae, f.* ; ROAD, WAY, — the usual route.
2. *Iter, itinēris, n.* ; (1), ROAD, WAY, — the direct route ; (2), JOURNEY, MARCH, — the progress made.
3. *Semita, ae, f.* ; PATH, FOOT-PATH.

## 157. VOCABULARY.

Four, *quattuor*, indecl.

Helvetian, *Helvetius, a, um*.

How large, *quantus, a, um*.

Journey, *iter, itinēris, n*.

Narrow, *angustus, a, um*.

Path, *semita, ae, f*.

Province, *provincia, ae, f*.

Road, *via, ae, f*.

Route, *iter, itinēris, n*.

Show, *monstro, are, avi, atum*.

Through, *per*, prep. with acc.

## 158. EXERCISE.

1. Did you call Caesar the friend of the Gauls? 2. We cannot call Caesar the friend of the Gauls. 3. How large a force had Caesar? 4. I do not know how large a force he had. 5. Did he not make a journey through the Roman province? 6. How many roads are there to the city? 7. There are four roads to the city. 8. I will show you the *nearest* route. 9. This path is very narrow. 10. Was Orgetorix a Roman or a Helvetian? 11. He was a Helvetian. 12. Who was the *bravest* of the Helvetians? 13. Orgetorix. 14. Do not wage war with the Romans. 15. Let us bravely encounter these dangers.

## LESSON XXXVI.

## COMPLEX AND COMPOUND SENTENCES.

[1, 19.]

## 159. LESSON FROM THE GRAMMAR.

- I. Complex Sentences. 357-359.
- II. Compound Sentences. 360.
- III. Compound Sentences — Abridged. 361.

## 160. MODELS.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| I. The reasons which you mention are most just.                         | I. <i>Causae quas commemoras justissimae sunt.</i>                  |
| II. The name of peace is delightful, and the thing itself beneficial.   | II. <i>Nomen pacis dulce est, et ipsa res salutaris.</i>            |
| III. Preserve yourselves, your wives, your children, and your fortunes. | III. <i>Conservate vos, conjuges, liberos, fortunasque vestras.</i> |
| IV. Who would seek honor (as eagerly) as he would avoid ignominy?       | IV. <i>Quis honorem tam expetât quam ignominiam fugiat?</i>         |
| V. We love equity and right.  | V. <i>Aequitatem et jus amamus.</i>                                 |

## 161. REMARKS.

1. Observe that the first model is a complex sentence with the relative clause, *quas commemoras*; that the second is a compound sentence, consisting of two members connected by *et*, and that the third has a compound object, *vos — vestras*.

2. MODEL I. — WHICH, *quas*, in the Fem. Plur. to agree with its antecedent, according to Rule XXXIV., and in the Accus. as the object of *commemōras*, according to Rule V.

3. MODEL II. — THE THING ITSELF, *ipsa res*. *Res* is the subject of *est*, understood.

4. MODEL III. — YOURSELVES, *vos*. *Ipsos* need not be added. For this reflexive use of *vos*, see G. 448.

5. YOUR, *vestras*, expressed but once; here with the last object, *fortūnas*. If not emphatic, it would here be omitted. See G. 447.

## 162. VOCABULARY.

Aeduans, <i>Aedui</i> , <i>ōrum</i> , m. pl.	Dumnorix, <i>Dumnōrix</i> , <i>īgis</i> , m.
Ancient, <i>antiquus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> , <i>pristīnus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> . <sup>1</sup>	Flow into, <i>influo</i> , <i>ēre</i> , <i>fluxi</i> , <i>fluxum</i> .
Cavalry, <i>equitātus</i> , <i>us</i> , m.	Into, <i>in</i> , prep. with acc.
Command, be in command of, <i>praesum</i> , <i>esse</i> , <i>fui</i> , dat. G. 386.	Lake, <i>lacus</i> , <i>us</i> , m.
	Lemannus, <i>Lemannus</i> , <i>i</i> , m.
	Remember, <i>reminiscor</i> , <i>i</i> , dep. G. 406, II.
Cross, <i>transeo</i> , <i>ire</i> , <i>ii</i> , <i>itum</i> .	Rhone, <i>Rhodānus</i> , <i>i</i> , m.

## 163. EXERCISE.

1. *How large a force* Caesar had at that time is uncertain. 2. Whether those cities could be taken was uncertain. 3. They say that the Gauls were surpassed in valor by the Romans. 4. We crossed the river which flows into lake Lemannus. 5. The river which we crossed is called the Rhone. 6. The enemy must be conquered and their cities must be taken. 7. Dumnorix, who commanded the cavalry of the Aeduans, fled. 8. Let us not establish peace and friendship with the enemy. 9. *Let us remember* the ancient valor of the Romans.

<sup>1</sup> *Antiquus* refers to the remote past; while *pristinus* generally refers to the more recent past, or else has the force of *primitive*, *pristine*.

## LESSON XXXVII.

## AGREEMENT OF NOUNS.

[1, 24.]

## 164. LESSON FROM THE GRAMMAR.

- I. Agreement of Predicate Nouns. 362.  
 II. Agreement of Appositives. 363.

## 165. MODELS.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| I. Virtues are the attendants and companions of wisdom.                         | I. <i>Virtutes sunt ministræ comitesque sapientiae.</i>                               |
| II. Artemisia was the wife of <i>Mausolus</i> , king of Caria.                  | II. <i>Artemisia Mausoli, Cariae regis, uxor fuit.</i>                                |
| III. Two most powerful cities, Carthage and Numantia, were destroyed by Scipio. | III. <i>Duae urbes potentissimæ, Carthago atque Numantia, a Scipione sunt deletæ.</i> |
| IV. He learned when a boy what deserved to be learned.                          | IV. <i>Puer didicit, quod discendum fuit.</i>   |

## 166. REMARKS.

1. MODEL I. — ATTENDANTS, *ministrae*, not *ministri*, to agree in gender with *virtutes*. See G. 362, 1, 1).
2. MODEL II. — KING OF CARIA, *Cariae regis*, or *regis Cariae*. *Regis* is in the Gen. in apposition with *Mausoli*. The whole sentence could be arranged in the English order: *Artemisia fuit uxor Mausoli, regis Cariae*. But in that form it would lose not only in point of euphony, but also of compactness; the modifier, *regis Cariae*, would be merely an

awkward addition to the sentence, while in the model it is incorporated into the very structure of the sentence itself.

3. MODEL III. — TWO MOST POWERFUL CITIES, *duae urbes potentissimae*. Here *potentissimae* qualifies *urbes*, while *duae* qualifies the complex idea, *urbes potentissimae*; not *two cities*, but *two most powerful cities*. In such cases one adjective often precedes the noun, while the other follows it, as in the model, though both may either precede or follow the noun.

4. MODEL IV. — WHEN A BOY, *puer*, in apposition with the omitted subject of *didicit*. See G. 363, 2 and 3.

5. DESERVED TO BE LEARNED, *discendum fuit*, Periphrastic Conjugation. See G. 231.

## 167. SYNONYMES.

Custom, usage, habit; *consuetudo*, *mos*.

1. *Consuetudo*, *inis*, f.; CUSTOM, USAGE, HABIT, — the generic word for custom of any kind.

2. *Mos*, *moris*, m.; CUSTOM, — used chiefly of approved and established customs, especially if national. *Mores*, plur., CHARACTER.

## 168. VOCABULARY.

Caria, *Caria*, ae, f.

Custom, habit, *consuetudo*, *inis*, f.;  
*mos*, *moris*, m.

Destroy, *deleo*, *ere*, *evi*, *etum*.

Excellent, *praeclārus*, a, um.

Mausolus, *Mausōlus*, i, m.

Nature, *natura*, ae, f.

Numantia, *Numantia*, ae, f.

Powerful, *potens*, *entis*.

Second, another, *alter*, *era*, *erum*.

G. 149; 149, 2.

## 169. EXERCISE.

1. Mausolus was at that time king of *Caria*. 2. Rome was for many years a most powerful city. 3. They say that Carthage was formerly a most powerful city. 4. Did



you not say that Caesar was the commander of the *Roman army*? 5. Cicero says that the two cities, Carthage and Numantia, were destroyed by Scipio, the commander of the *Roman army*. 6. Habit is a second nature. 7. We say that habit is a second nature. 8. From whom (pl.) did you receive that *excellent* custom? 9. We received this *excellent* custom from our fathers.

## LESSON XXXVIII.

### NOMINATIVE AND VOCATIVE.

[1, 29.]

### 170. LESSON FROM THE GRAMMAR.

- I. Nominative as Subject. 367.
- II. Nominative in Agreement with another Nominative. 368.
- III. Vocative. 369.

### 171. MODELS.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| I. Socrates was condemned.                                      | I. <i>Socrātes damnātus est.</i>                                |
| II. Themistocles the commander liberated Greece from servitude. | II. <i>Themistōcles imperātor servitūte Graeciam liberāvit.</i> |
| III. I approve your decision, Brutus.                           | III. <i>Tuum, Brute, iudicium probo.</i>                        |

### 172. REMARKS.

1. MODEL II. — THE COMMANDER, *imperātor*, Nom. in apposition with the Nom. *Themistōcles*. Rule II.

2. FROM SERVITUDE, *servitūte*, Abl. of Separation. Rule XXVII.

See also G. 425, 3. *Servitute* may stand either before or after the direct object, *Graeciam*.

3. MODEL III. — YOUR, *tuum*. The possessive should here be expressed to avoid ambiguity.

4. BRUTUS, *Brute*. For the place of the Vocative in the sentence, see G. 602, VI.

### 173. VOCABULARY.

Allobroges, <i>Allobrōges</i> , <i>um</i> , m. pl.	Junius, <i>Junius</i> , <i>ii</i> , m.
Collatinus, <i>Collatinus</i> , <i>i</i> , m.	Lucius, <i>Lucius</i> , <i>ii</i> , m.
Condemn, <i>damno</i> , <i>āre</i> , <i>āvi</i> , <i>ātum</i> .	Lucullus, <i>Lucullus</i> , <i>i</i> , m.
Crassus, <i>Crassus</i> , <i>i</i> , m.	Mercury, <i>Mercurius</i> , <i>ii</i> , m.
First, <i>primus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> . G. 166.	Numitor, <i>Numitor</i> , <i>ōris</i> , m.
Geneva, <i>Genēva</i> , <i>ae</i> , <i>f</i> .	Quintus, <i>Quintus</i> , <i>i</i> , m.
God, <i>deus</i> , <i>dei</i> , m. G. 45, 6.	Rich, <i>dives</i> , <i>itis</i> . G. 165, 2.
Grandson, <i>nepos</i> , <i>ōtis</i> , m.	When, interrog., <i>quando</i> , adv.

### 174. EXERCISE.

1. Crassus and Lucullus were the richest of the Romans. 2. Mercury was the messenger of the *gods*. 3. Romulus, the first king of the Romans, was the grandson of *Numitor*. 4. We *have praised* the good, and we *have been praised* by the good. 5. Caesar says that Geneva is a town of the Allobroges. 6. Lucius Junius Brutus and Lucius Tarquinius Collatinus were made consuls. 7. When, Labienus, will you cross the river? 8. Why, O judges, did you condemn Socrates? 9. Marcus Tullius Cicero and Quintus Tullius Cicero were brothers.

## LESSON XXXIX.

## ACCUSATIVE AS DIRECT OBJECT.

[1, 32.]

## 175. LESSON FROM THE GRAMMAR.

Accusative as Direct Object. 371.

1. Cognate Accusative. 371, 1.
2. Accusative with other Cases. 371, 2.
3. Transitive and Intransitive Verbs. 371, 3.
4. Accusative with Compounds. 371, 4.
5. Clause as Object. 371, 5.
6. Passive Construction. 371, 6.

## 176. MODELS.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| I. Brutus freed his country.             | I. <i>Brutus patriam liberavit.</i>             |
| II. They live a secure life.             | II. <i>Tutam vitam vivunt.</i>                  |
| III. They wrote laws for their states.   | III. <i>Leges civitatibus suis scripserunt.</i> |
| IV. They were sighing over these things. | IV. <i>Haec gemebant.</i>                       |
| V. He crossed the Euphrates.             | V. <i>Euphratē transiit.</i>                    |
| VI. You know that I think the same.      | VI. <i>Scis me idem sentire.</i>                |

## 177. REMARKS.

1. MODEL III.—THEIR STATES, *civitatibus suis*, Dat. Rule XII. See also 371, 2. These words may stand either before or after the direct object, *leges*. See G. 600, 3. *Suis* must be expressed to avoid ambiguity.

2. MODEL IV. — THESE THINGS, *haec* or *has res*. The former is preferable, because it is shorter and equally clear.

3. MODEL V. — *Euphrātem*. See G. 371, 4.

4. MODEL VI. — THAT I THINK THE SAME, *me idem sentire*, object of *scis*. G. 371, 5. For the case of *me*, see G. 545; for that of *idem*, 371, 1, 3).

## 178. SYNONYMES.

Army; *exercitus*, *agmen*, *acies*.

1. *Exercitus*, *i*, m. (*exerceo*); ARMY, — the generic word for army, as composed of disciplined men.

2. *Agmen*, *agminis*, n. (*ago*); ARMY ON THE MARCH.

3. *Acies*, *ei*, f.; ARMY IN BATTLE ARRAY; LINE OF BATTLE.

## 179. VOCABULARY.

Army (on the march), <i>agmen</i> , <i>inis</i> , n.	Laelius, <i>Laelius</i> , <i>ii</i> , m. G. 45, 5, 2).
Arrange (a line of battle), <i>instruo</i> , <i>ere</i> , <i>struxi</i> , <i>structum</i> .	Large, <i>magnus</i> , <i>a</i> , um.
As, relat. after <i>idem</i> , <i>qui</i> , <i>quae</i> , <i>quod</i> .	Lead (a life), live, <i>vivo</i> , <i>ere</i> , <i>vixi</i> , <i>victum</i> .
Attack, <i>adorior</i> , <i>iri</i> , <i>ortus sum</i> , dep.	Life, <i>vita</i> , <i>ae</i> , f.
Base, <i>turpis</i> , e.	Line of battle, <i>acies</i> , <i>aciei</i> , f.
Boast, make a boast, <i>glorior</i> , <i>ari</i> , <i>atus sum</i> , dep.	March, journey, <i>iter</i> , <i>itinēris</i> , n.; on the march, <i>in itinēre</i> .
Both — and, <i>et</i> — <i>et</i> .	Now, <i>nunc</i> , adv.
Camp, <i>castra</i> , <i>orum</i> , n. pl. G. 132.	Number, <i>numerus</i> , <i>i</i> , m.
Encamp, <i>castra pono</i> , <i>ere</i> , <i>posui</i> , <i>positum</i> .	Place, <i>locus</i> , <i>i</i> , m. G. 141.
Ford, <i>vadum</i> , <i>i</i> , n.	Rhine, <i>Rhenus</i> , <i>i</i> , m.
Immense, <i>ingens</i> , <i>entis</i> .	Take, carry, <i>porto</i> , <i>are</i> , <i>avi</i> , <i>atum</i> .
	Think, judge, <i>sentio</i> , <i>ire</i> , <i>sensi</i> , <i>sensum</i> .
	Useless, <i>inutilis</i> , e.

## 180. EXERCISE.

1. Have you not many friends? 2. Both you and I have a very large number of friends. 3. An *immense* army crossed the Rhine and encamped in Gaul. 4. The commander of the *enemy* arranged his line of battle. 5. The enemy will attack our army on the march. 6. At *this place* the Rhine is crossed by a ford. 7. *You*, Laelius, have lived a *most happy* life. 8. Has he not led a *useless* life? 9. Do not lead a *base* life. 10. Did you not make that boast? 11. I made the *same* boast as you. 12. We will endeavor to take with us all the *grain* which we now have. 13. You think the same as all *good* men.

## LESSON XL

## TWO ACCUSATIVES.

[1, 37.]

## 181. LESSON FROM THE GRAMMAR.

## I. Two Accusatives — Same Person. 373.

1. Predicate Accusative. 373, 1.
2. Verbs with Predicate Accusative. 373, 2.
3. Adjective as Predicate Accusative. 373, 3.
4. Passive Construction. 373, 4.

## II. Two Accusatives — Person and Thing. 374.

1. Person and Thing — Active and Passive. 374, 1.
2. Verbs with two Accusatives. 374, 2.

## 182. MODELS.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| I. Panaetius calls Plato the<br>Homer of philoso-<br>phers.             | I. <i>Panaetius Platōnem<br/>Homērum philoso-<br/>phōrum appellat.</i> |
| II. Panaetius calls Plato di-<br>vine.                                  | II. <i>Panaetius Platōnem<br/>divīnum appellat.</i>                    |
| III. I was asked my opinion.  | III. <i>Ego sententiam rogā-<br/>tus sum.</i>                          |
| IV. I ask of you this favor.  | IV. <i>Te hoc beneficium<br/>rogo. /</i>                               |
| V. We will surely retain in<br>memory that which<br>you have taught us. | V. <i>Quod nos docuisti, id<br/>certe memoria reti-<br/>nebimus.</i>   |

## 183. REMARKS.

1. MODEL III. — MY OPINION, *sententiam*. Rule VII. The Possessive is omitted. See G. 447.

2. MODEL V. — IN MEMORY = by means of memory, *memoria*, Abl. of Means. Rule XXI. The relative clause often precedes the antecedent clause, as in this model (G. 604, II.), and then the antecedent itself generally stands at the beginning of its own clause.

## 184. SYNONYMES.

To call, to name; *appello, voco, nomīno*.

1. *Appello, āre, āvi, ātum*; (1) TO CALL, TO NAME, — especially with the idea of calling a person (or thing) by his true name, or of giving him a characteristic title; (2) TO ADDRESS.

2. *Voco, āre, āvi, ātum*; (1) TO CALL, — generally with special reference to *pronouncing* or *speaking* the name; (2) TO SUMMON, INVITE.

3. *Nomīno, āre, āvi, ātum*; TO NAME, — to give a name.

## 185. VOCABULARY.

Ariovistus, *Ariovistus*, i, m.  
 Blind, *caecus*, a, um.  
 Calamity, *calamitas*, atis, f.  
 Conceal, *celo*, are, avi, atum.  
 Dinner, *coena*, ae, f.  
 Favor, *faveo*, ere, favi, fautum.  
 Fortune, *fortuna*, ae, f.

Invite, *voco*, are, avi, atum.  
 Make, *efficio*, ere, feci, factum.  
 Mourn over, *maereo*, ere. G. 268.  
 Name, *nomen*, inis, n.  
 Name, to name, call, *nomino*; ap-  
     *pello*; *voco*, are, avi, atum.  
 Senate, *senātus*, us, m.

## 186. EXERCISE.

1. The senate called Ariovistus king and friend. 2. Let us call the commander of the army by his own name.
3. I have invited your brother to dinner. 4. Romulus ordered the city to be called Rome from his own name.
5. Fortune often makes those whom she favors *blind*. 6. You have made your life happy and useful. 7. Who taught the Belgians the arts of war? 8. Were not the Germans taught the arts of war by Ariovistus? 9. Why were we not asked our opinion? 10. Let us ask them their opinion. 11. They will mourn over this calamity. 12. I will not conceal from you my opinion.

## LESSON XLI.

TWO ACCUSATIVES — CONTINUED. SPECIAL CON-  
 STRUCTIONS.

[1, 40.]

## 187. LESSON FROM THE GRAMMAR.

- I. Special Constructions. 374, 3.
1. With *Celo*. 374, 3, 1).

2. With Verbs of Teaching. 374, 3, 2).
3. With Verbs of Asking, Demanding. 374, 3, 3).
4. With *Peto*, *Postŭlo*, *Quaero*. 374, 3, 4).

II. Infinitive, or Clause, as Accusative of Thing. 374, 4.

III. Neuter Pronoun, or Adjective, as Accusative of Thing. 374, 5.

IV. Two Accusatives with Compounds. 374, 6.

### 188. MODELS.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| I. You were kept ignorant of the most important things. | I. <i>Maximis de rebus celatus es.</i>                        |
| II. He taught Socrates to play on the lyre.             | II. <i>Socratem fidibus docuit.</i>                           |
| III. I ask you in regard to the same things.            | III. <i>Te iisdem de rebus interrŏgo.</i>                     |
| IV. He asks this from the king.                         | IV. <i>Hoc a rege petit.</i>                                  |
| V. He teaches you to be wise.                           | V. <i>Te sapere docet.</i>                                    |
| VI. Philosophy taught us to know ourselves.             | VI. <i>Philosophia nos docuit ut nosmet ipsos nosceremus.</i> |
| VII. He admonished me of it.                            | VII. <i>Id me monuit.</i>                                     |
| VIII. He led his forces over the Rhone.                 | VIII. <i>Rhodunum copias trajecit.</i>                        |

### 189. REMARKS.

1. MODEL I. — OF = concerning, in regard to, *de*. G. 434.
2. THE MOST IMPORTANT, GREATEST, THINGS, *maximis rebus*. *Maximis* alone would not distinguish *things* from *persons*. An emphatic adjective belonging to a noun with a preposition is often placed before



the preposition. Hence *maximis de rebus*; also *iisdem de rebus*, in Model III.

3. MODEL II.—TO PLAY UPON THE LYRE, in the Latin idiom WITH THE LYRE, *fidibus*, Abl. of Means. Rule XXI.

4. MODEL V.—TO BE WISE, *sapere*. This simply supplies the place of one accusative after *docet*. He teaches you to be wise, i. e. teaches you wisdom. G. 374, 4.

5. MODEL VI.—TO KNOW OURSELVES = that we should know ourselves, *ut nosmet ipsos nosceremus*. G. 374, 4. For the mood of *nosceremus*, see G. 492, and for the tense, 481, II. 1. For the difference in force between this clause and the infinitive, as used in Model V., see G. 554, II. and III.

6. MODEL VIII.—HE LED OVER, *trajecit*, lit. *threw over*, or *across*.

7. HIS FORCES, *copias*; possessive omitted.

## 190. VOCABULARY.

Across, <i>trans</i> , prep. with acc.	It is permitted, <i>licet</i> , <i>licuit</i> or <i>licitum est</i> , impers. G. 299.
Admonish, <i>moneo</i> , <i>ere</i> , <i>ui</i> , <i>itum</i> .	
Demand, <i>postulo</i> , <i>are</i> , <i>avi</i> , <i>atum</i> .	Keep in ignorance, <i>celo</i> , <i>are</i> , <i>avi</i> , <i>atum</i> . To keep ignorant of (in regard to), <i>celo de</i> .
Depart, <i>discedo</i> , <i>ere</i> , <i>cessi</i> , <i>cessum</i> .	Multitude, <i>multitudo</i> , <i>inis</i> , f.
Home, <i>domus</i> , <i>us</i> or <i>i</i> , f. G. 117, 1.	No, <i>nullus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> . G. 149.
In regard to, <i>de</i> , prep. with abl.	Of = from, <i>a</i> , <i>ab</i> , prep. with abl.
Inform, teach, <i>doceo</i> , <i>ere</i> , <i>docui</i> , <i>doctum</i> .	

## 191. EXERCISE.

1. Did they not ask these favors from Caesar? 2. We will ask no favors from Marcus. 3. We will not keep you in ignorance *in regard to this calamity*. 4. Caesar was not kept ignorant of these plans. 5. They informed Caesar in regard to the plans of the enemy. 6. The soldier will ask from his commander to be permitted to

depart to his home. 7. Of what will he admonish them? 8. What did he at the same time demand of Ariovistus? 9. He demanded *of him* that he should not lead the Germans into Gaul. 10. The king had already led a multitude of Germans across the Rhine into Gaul.

## X LESSON XLII.

ACCUSATIVE AS SUBJECT OF INFINITIVE. IN AGREEMENT WITH ANOTHER ACCUSATIVE.

[1, 44.]

### 192. LESSON FROM THE GRAMMAR.

- I. Accusative as Subject of an Infinitive. 545.  
 II. Accusative in Agreement with another Accusative. 362, 363.  
     1. As Predicate Accusative. 362; 373, 1.  
     2. As Appositive. 363.

### 193. MODELS.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| I. You know that I speak Latin.                    | I. <i>Scis me Latine loqui.</i>                    |
| II. I rejoice that you recommend that to me.       | II. <i>Gaudeo id te mihi suadere.</i>              |
| III. They called Cicero the father of his country. | III. <i>Ciceronem patrem patriae nominaverunt.</i> |
| IV. Marcellus took the city of Syracuse.           | IV. <i>Marcellus urbem Syracusas cepit.</i>        |

## 194. REMARKS.

1. MODEL I. — THAT I SPEAK, *me loqui*, object of *scis*. See Rule V., also G. 371, 5; 550. ME, subject of *loqui*. Rule XLIX.

2. LATIN = in Latin, *Latine*, adverb qualifying *loqui*. Rule LI. Observe the difference of idiom between the English and the Latin.

3. MODEL II. — *Id*, being emphatic, is placed at the beginning of the infinitive clause, even before the subject *te*. G. 594, I.

4. MODEL IV. — THE CITY OF SYRACUSE, Latin idiom, THE CITY SYRACUSE, *urbem Syracusas*. Rule II.

## 195. VOCABULARY.

For, in behalf of, <i>pro</i> , prep. with	Latin, in Latin, <i>Latine</i> , adv.
abl.	Nasica, <i>Nasica</i> , <i>ae</i> , m.
Gracchus, <i>Gracchus</i> , <i>i</i> , m.	Tiberius, <i>Tiberius</i> , <i>ii</i> , m.
Greek, in Greek, <i>Graece</i> , adv.	Twice, <i>bis</i> , adv.

## 196. EXERCISE.

1. The Roman people made Cicero consul. 2. Did you not say that Cicero was consul at that time? 3. I said that Tiberius Gracchus was at that time consul. 4. They say that Publius Scipio Nasica was twice consul. 5. We know that you have been called wise. 6. Do you not know that Cicero spoke both Latin and Greek? 7. They say that Marcus already speaks Latin. 8. Why did you teach him to speak Latin? 9. He will come *with a large army* to take the city of Geneva. 10. We know that you are always prepared to encounter dangers for your country.

## LESSON XLIII.

## ACCUSATIVE IN AN ADVERBIAL SENSE. IN EXCLAMATIONS.

[1, 49.]

## 197. LESSON FROM THE GRAMMAR.

- I. Accusative of Time and Space. 378.
  - 1. Accusative with *Per*. 378, 1.
- II. Accusative of Limit. 379.
  - 1. Accusative with *Ad*. 379, 1.
  - 2. *Urbs* or *Oppidum* with Preposition. 379, 2.
  - 3. Words like Names of Towns. 379, 3.
  - 4. Other Names of Places. 379, 4.
- III. Accusative of Specification. 380.
  - 1. In good prose only in its freer sense. 380, 2.
- IV. Accusative in Exclamations. 381.

## 198. MODELS.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>I. <i>At Athens</i> Pericles was<br/>for very many years<br/>the leader of the<br/>public council.</p> | <p>I. <i>Athēnis</i> Pericles plu-<br/>rimos annos prin-<br/>ceps consilii pub-<br/>lici fuit.</p> |
| <p>II. Hippias came to Olym-<br/>pia.</p>   | <p>II. <i>Hippias Olympiam</i><br/>venit.</p>  |
| <p>III. There are <i>three</i> roads<br/>to Mutina.</p>   | <p>III. <i>Tres sunt viae ad</i><br/><i>Mutinam</i>.</p>   |
| <p>IV. Demaratus betook<br/>himself to Tarquinii,<br/>a city of Etruria.</p>                              | <p>IV. <i>Demarātus se contū-</i><br/><i>lit Tarquinius in</i><br/><i>urbem Etruriae</i>.</p>      |

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| V. Scipio was conducted home.               | V. <i>Scipio domum reductus est.</i>             |
| VI. Latona fled to <i>Delos</i> .           | VI. <i>Latōna confūgit Delum.</i>                |
| VII. He came into Epirus.                   | VII. <i>In Epīrum venit.</i>                     |
| VIII. My letter will not profit you at all. | VIII. <i>Nihil tibi meae litterae prodērunt.</i> |
| IX. O welcome arrival!                      | IX. <i>O gratum adventum!</i>                    |

### 199. REMARKS.

1. MODEL I. — AT ATHENS, *Athēnis*, Abl. of Place. Rule XXVI. Emphasis places it at the beginning of the sentence. G. 594, I.

2. MODEL III. — THERE ARE, *sunt*. In this signification, — *there is, there are*, — the verb *sum* generally stands before its subject, as in the model, and indeed generally at the beginning of the sentence; but here *tres* is emphatic, and takes the first place.

3. MODEL IV. — A CITY OF ETRURIA, *in urbem Etruriae*. Observe the difference of idiom. In the English, *city* is in apposition with *Tarquinius*, while in Latin *in urbem* is treated simply as a modifier of *contulit*, — betook himself into a city of Etruria. *Tarquinius* — *Etruriae* would regularly precede *contulit*; but, being emphatic, it stands at the end of the sentence.

4. MODEL VIII. — NOT AT ALL, *nihil*. Rule X. It is emphatic.

### 200. SYNONYMES.

Letter, epistle; *littera, litterae, epistola*.

1. *Littera, ae, f.*; LETTER, — of the alphabet.

2. *Litterae, arum, f. plur.*; LETTER, EPISTLE, — regarded simply as a written communication without any reference to its epistolary character.

3. *Epistola, ae, f.*; LETTER, EPISTLE, — with special reference to its epistolary character.

## 201. VOCABULARY.

Betake one's self, <i>se conferre</i> ; con-	Letter, epistle, <i>litt̄erac, ārum, f.</i> ;
<i>f̄tro, ferre, t̄uli, collātum.</i>	<i>epistōla, ae, f.</i>
Fortunate, <i>fortunātus, a, um.</i>	Move, <i>commōveo, ēre, mōvi, mōtum.</i>
Greek, <i>Graecus, a, um.</i>	Pronounce, speak, <i>dico, ēre, dixi,</i>
Letter of the alphabet, <i>litt̄era, ae, f.</i>	<i>dictum.</i>
	Request, <i>rogātus, us, m.</i>

## 202. EXERCISE.

1. Caesar waged war in Gaul ten years. 2. Did not the soldiers wish to return home? 3. Did you not say that Ariovistus sent ambassadors to Caesar? 4. I said so. 5. The soldiers betook themselves to the city of Geneva. 6. They betook themselves to their camp *at Geneva*. 7. Did not the Allobroges send ambassadors to the senate at Rome? 8. Cicero wrote many letters to his brother Quintus. 9. Demosthenes, when a boy, was not able to pronounce the letter R. 10. Your brother knows one Greek letter. 11. I read your letter at Rome. 12. The commander will *not* be *at all* moved by this request. 13. O happy country! 14. O fortunate city!

## LESSON XLIV.

### DATIVE WITH VERBS.

[1, 54.]

## 203. LESSON FROM THE GRAMMAR.

### I. Dative with Verbs. 384.

1. Dative of Advantage and Disadvantage. 385.

2. Dative with Compounds. 386.

3. Dative of Possessor. 387.

4. Dative of Agent. 388.

5. Ethical Dative. 389.

II. Two Datives — To which and For which. 390.

1. Verbs with two Datives. 390, 1.

## 204. MODELS.

I. We yield to the sacred laws of our country.

II. I do not look with envy upon *your advantages*.

III. My Cicero sends you greeting.

IV. *Provide for* your country.

V. The *fountain* has the name Arethusa.

VI. What should be done by us?

VII. What does the law mean?

VIII. The house was an ornament to the city.

I. *Sanctis patriae legibus obsequimur.*

II. *Non ego invideo tuis commōdis.*

III. *Cicero meus tibi salutem dicit.*

IV. *Prospicite patriae.*

V. *Fonti nomen Arethusa est.*

VI. *Quid nobis agendum est?*

VII. *Quid sibi lex vult?*

VIII. *Domus urbi fuit ornamento.*

## 205. REMARKS.

1. MODEL I. — For the order of words, see G. 598, 3.

2. MODEL II. — NON: see G. 602, IV. Why is the possessive (*tuis*) expressed with *commōdis*, but omitted with *patriae* in Model I.? See G. 447.

3. MODEL III. — SENDS GREETING, *salutem dicit*, lit. *says safety*, i. e. expresses his desire for your safety and health.

4. MODEL V. — THE FOUNTAIN HAS, *fonti est*, lit. *is to the fountain*.

5. MODEL VI. — BY US, *nobis*, lit. *to us*. See G. 388.

6. MODEL VII. — MEAN, *sibi vult*, lit. *wish for itself*, i. e. propose to itself.

7. MODEL VIII. — AN ORNAMENT, *ornamento*, lit. *for an ornament*. Observe the difference of idiom, but remember that the Latin sometimes employs the nominative, like the English. See G. 390, 2.

## 206. VOCABULARY.

Ally, *socius*, *ii*, n.

Be in command of, *praesum*, *esse*,  
*fui*.

Business, *negotium*, *ii*, n. To have  
business, *negotium*, *sum*, *esse*,  
*fui*, with dat.

Defence, *praesidium*, *ii*, n.

Envy, to look upon with envy, *in-*  
*video*, *ere*, *vidi*, *visum*.

Ephesus, *Ephesus*, *i*, f.

Especially, *maxime*, adv.

It is the intention, *in animo est*,  
*esse*, *fuit*, with dat. It is my  
intention, *mihi est in animo*.

Mean, *volo*, *velle*, *volui*, with dat.

Mind, *animus*, *i*, m.

## 207. EXERCISE.

1. I have ever favored both you and your brother. 2. The good and wise never envy the rich. 3. Praise and glory are especially envied. 4. Caesar, who is in command of the army, is especially envied. 5. It is our intention to wage war against the Romans and their allies. 6. *Ariovistus* at that time had a large army. 7. *That beautiful city* had the name of Ephesus. 8. What did these presents mean? 9. The good and wise must be praised by all. 10. What business had the Helvetians in the Roman province? 11. Virtue is a glory to all. 12. The cavalry of the Aeduians was a defence to the Roman army.



## LESSON XLV. -

## DATIVE WITH VERBS. SPECIAL CONSTRUCTIONS.

[2, 5.]

## 208. LESSON FROM THE GRAMMAR.

- I. Double Construction. 384, 1.
- II. *To* or *For*, how rendered into Latin. 384, 2.
- III. Accusative or Dative with a Difference of Meaning. 385, 3.

## 209. MODELS.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| I. He presents gifts to the citizens.                           | I. <i>Munera civibus donat.</i>                          |
| II. The Tarentines presented Archias the poet with citizenship. | II. <i>Tarentini Archiam poetam civitate donaverunt.</i> |
| III. We came to Delos.  | III. <i>Delum venimus.</i>                               |
| IV. I yield to the time.  | IV. <i>Tempori cedo.</i>                                 |
| V. They fight for liberty.                                      | V. <i>Pro libertate dimicant.</i>                        |
| VI. He wrote laws for the state.                                | VI. <i>Leges civitati scripsit.</i>                      |
| VII. I consult you.   | VII. <i>Ego vos consulō.</i>                             |
| VIII. Consult for yourselves.                                   | VIII. <i>Consulte vobis.</i>                             |
| IX. He feared danger.   | IX. <i>Periculum metuebat.</i>                           |
| X. He feared for himself.                                       | X. <i>Sibi metuebat.</i>                                 |

## 210. REMARKS.

- 1. MODEL I. — For the arrangement of two or more objects with the same verb, see G. 600, 3.

2. MODELS III. AND IV. — Why is *to Delos* rendered by the Accus. *Delum*, and *to the time*, by the Dative, *tempōri*? See G. 379, 3; 383, 384.

3. MODELS V. AND VI. — Why is *for liberty* rendered by *pro* with the Abl., *pro libertāte*, and *for the state* by the Dative, *civitātī*? See G. 384, 2, 2); 383, 384.

## 211. VOCABULARY.

Consult, <i>consūlo, ēre, sūlvi, sultum.</i>	Surround, <i>circumdo, āre, dēdi, dātum.</i> G. 264, 1.
Detriment, <i>detrimentum, i, n.</i>	
Distinguished, <i>clarus, a, um.</i>	Often, <i>saepe</i> , adv.
Near, near to, <i>ad</i> , prep. with acc.	Wall, <i>murus, i, m.</i>
Ought, <i>debeo, ēre, ui, itum.</i>	Winter quarters, <i>hiberna, orum, n.</i>
Supplicate, <i>supplicō, āre, āvi, ātum.</i>	adj. used as subs.

## 212. EXERCISE.

1. Servius Tullius the king surrounded the city of Rome with a wall. 2. The Athenians presented Demosthenes the orator with a golden crown. 3. Demosthenes, the distinguished orator, was presented with a golden crown. 4. We ought to encounter all dangers *for our country*. 5. We will all supplicate the commander in behalf of this soldier. 6. Whom did you (pl.) consult in regard to this plan? 7. We consulted Caesar the commander of the army. 8. For whom did *Caesar* consult? 9. He consulted for the safety of his whole army. 10. Let us lead our forces *into winter quarters* near Geneva. 11. The friendship of the Roman people was often a detriment, not a defence, to their allies.

## LESSON XLVI.

## DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES AND DERIVATIVES.

[2, 12.]

## 213. LESSON FROM THE GRAMMAR.

- I. Dative with Adjectives. 391, 391, 2.  
 II. Dative with Derivatives. 392.

## 214. MODELS.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| I. The soil of <i>their country</i> is dear to all.                | I. <i>Patriae solum omnibus carum est.</i>      |
| II. Pleasure is especially unfriendly to <i>virtue</i> .           | II. <i>Voluptas maxime est inimica virtuti.</i> |
| III. Your letters are acceptable to me.                            | III. <i>Tuae epistolae mihi gratae sunt.</i>    |
| IV. We are seeking a Latin word equivalent to the Greek.           | IV. <i>Quaerimus verbum Latinum par Graeco.</i> |
| V. <i>Very kind</i> to his father.                                 | V. <i>Perindulgens in patrem.</i>               |
| VI. Useful for many things.  | VI. <i>Multas ad res utilis.</i>                |
| VII. <i>Liberty</i> is characteristic of the <i>Roman people</i> . | VII. <i>Romani populi est propria libertas.</i> |
| VIII. Justice is obedience to the laws.                            | VIII. <i>Justitia est obtemperatio legibus.</i> |
| IX. They speak consistently with themselves.                       | IX. <i>Sibi constanter dicunt.</i>              |

## 215. REMARKS.

1. MODEL II. — Why is *virtuti* placed at the end of the sentence? G. 594, II.

2. MODEL IV. — Why is *quaerimus* placed at the beginning of the sentence? G. 594, I.

3. MODEL VI. — FOR MANY THINGS, *multas ad res*. For the order of words, see Rem. 189, 2<sup>1</sup>. With *utilis* observe the difference of meaning between the Dative and the Accus. with *ad*: *mihi utilis*, useful to me; *multas ad res utilis*, useful for many things, purposes.

4. MODEL VII. — OF THE ROMAN PEOPLE, *Romāni populi*, Gen. depending upon *propria*. See Rule XVII.; also G. 399, 3. This genitive is emphatic, and therefore stands at the beginning of the sentence. G. 594, I. The emphatic *Romāni* precedes its noun. The emphatic subject, *libertas*, is placed at the end of the sentence. G. 594, II.

5. MODEL IX. — WITH THEMSELVES, *sibi*, Dative depending upon *constanter*, which admits the Dative after the analogy of its primitive *constans*, from *consto*.

## 216. SYNONYMES.

Acceptable, agreeable; *acceptus, gratus, jucundus*.

1. *Acceptus, a, um*; ACCEPTABLE, WELCOME, — for whatever reason.

2. *Gratus, a, um*; GRATEFUL, ACCEPTABLE, — especially because of value or worth.

3. *Jucundus, a, um*; AGREEABLE, PLEASANT, DELIGHTFUL.

*Acceptus* implies simply that the object to which it is applied is *acceptable*, *gratus* that it is acceptable because of its value, whether agreeable or not, and *jucundus*, that it is in itself agreeable.

## 217. VOCABULARY.

A battle is fought, <i>pugnātur, pug-</i> <i>nātum est</i> , impers.	Acceptable, <i>acceptus, a, um; gratus,</i> <i>a, um.</i>
---	--

<sup>1</sup> See Explanation of References, page xi.

Admonition, <i>admonitio</i> , <i>ōnis</i> , f.	Near, <i>prope</i> , <i>propius</i> , <i>proxime</i> , adv.
Although, <i>etiamsi</i> , conj.	Peculiar to, <i>proprius</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .
Approach, <i>appropinquo</i> , <i>āre</i> , <i>āvī</i> , <i>ātum</i> .	Spirited, in a spirited manner, <i>acriter</i> , adv.
But, <i>sed</i> ; <i>autem</i> . G. 587, III. 2.	Word, <i>verbum</i> , <i>i</i> , n.

## 218. EXERCISE.

1. The friendship of the Aeduans was acceptable to Caesar. 2. Your letters will always be acceptable to me. 3. Your admonition, although it is not agreeable, is yet acceptable to me. 4. Your words are very agreeable to me. 5. The books which you sent were very acceptable to me. 6. At that time the study of eloquence was not common to Greece, but peculiar to Athens. 7. We have endeavored to persuade the citizens. 8. *At the same time* the Aeduans were approaching the borders of the Belgians, who are nearest to the Germans. 9. A spirited battle was fought very near the camp of *Caesar*.

## LESSON XLVII.

## GENITIVE WITH NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES.

[2, 19.]

## 219. LESSON FROM THE GRAMMAR.

## I. Genitive with Nouns. 395.

1. Varieties of Genitive with Nouns. 396.

2. Peculiarities. 397.

3. Other Constructions. 398.

## II. Genitive with Adjectives. 399.

## 220. MODELS.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| I. The glory of <i>virtue</i> is eternal.                         | I. <i>Virtutis gloria est sempiterna.</i>                        |
| II. Socrates in the judgment of Greece was the wisest of all men. | II. <i>Socrātes iudicio Graeciae omnium sapientissimus fuit.</i> |
| III. Compare the life of Trebonius with that of Dolabella.        | III. <i>Conferte vitam Trebonii cum Dolabellae.</i>              |
| IV. Love of (to) country.   | IV. <i>Amor in patriam.</i>                                      |
| V. He is desirous of victory.                                     | V. <i>Victoriae avidus est.</i>                                  |
| VI. The mind is capable of all virtues.                           | VI. <i>Mens virtutum omnium capax est.</i>                       |
| VII. No one will be found like you.                               | VII. <i>Nemo tui similis invenietur.</i>                         |

## 221. REMARKS.

1. MODEL II. — IN THE JUDGMENT, i. e. in accordance with, by the judgment, *iudicio*. Rule XXI.
2. OF ALL MEN, *omnium*, used substantively. G. 441.
3. MODEL III. — WITH THAT OF DOLABELLA, *cum Dolabellae*, — *vita* being omitted. G. 397, 1, (1).
4. MODEL IV. — OF COUNTRY, *patriae*, or *in* or *erga patriam*. G. 398, 4.
5. MODEL VII. — LIKE YOU, *tui similis*, or *tibi similis*. G. 391, 1; 399, 3,

## 222. SYNONYMES.

Avaricious, desirous, devoted to, pursuing; *avārus, cupīdus, avidus, studiōsus*.

1. *Avārus, a, um* ; AVARICIOUS, — desirous of money and gain.

2. *Cupīdus, a, um* ; DESIROUS, EAGERLY DESIROUS, — often with the idea of haste and impatience.

3. *Avidus, a, um* ; DESIROUS, EARNESTLY DESIROUS, VERY DESIROUS, GREEDY, — often involving the idea of an excessive or selfish desire.

4. *Studiōsus, a, um* ; STUDIOUS, DEVOTED TO, STUDENT OF, PURSUING, — involving zeal in the pursuit of a study, or in the support of a person or cause.

## 223. VOCABULARY.

Affair, thing, <i>res, rei, f.</i>	Revolution, <i>res novae, f. pl.</i> ; lit. <i>new things,</i>
Avaricious, <i>avārus, a, um.</i>	Science, learning, <i>doctrina, ae, f.</i>
For, <i>enim, conj.</i> G. 587, V. 3.	Skilful in, <i>peritus, a, um.</i>
Greedy, very desirous, <i>avidus, a, um.</i>	Student of, <i>studiōsus, a, um.</i>
Literature, letters, <i>litterae, arum, f. pl.</i>	Three days, <i>triduum, i, n.</i>
Military, <i>militāris, e</i> ; military affairs, <i>res militāris, sing.</i>	Unmindful, <i>immēmor, ōris,</i>
	Zeal, <i>studium, ii, n.</i>

## 224. EXERCISE.

1. We will now make a journey into the territory of the Belgians. 2. We have persuaded the soldiers to make a journey of three days through the territory of the Helvetians. 3. The Belgians were very skilful in military affairs. 4. They were *never* unmindful of their ancient valor, and were always desirous of a revolution. 5. But at this time they had more zeal than wisdom ; for they were conquered by the Romans in *many* battles. 6. The

soldiers are very desirous of victory and glory. 7. The avaricious are ever greedy for *money*. 8. We are students of literature.

## LESSON XLVIII.

## GENITIVE WITH VERBS.

[2, 26.]

## 225. LESSON FROM THE GRAMMAR.

## I. Predicate Genitive. 401.

1. Predicate Genitive and Predicate Nominative. 401, 1.
2. Predicate Genitive and Predicate Adjective. 401, 2.
3. Varieties of Predicate Genitive. 402.
4. Verbs with Predicate Genitive. 403.
5. Other Constructions for the Genitive. 404.

## II. Genitive of Place. 421, II.

## III. Genitive with certain Verbs. 406, 409.

1. Other Constructions. 407.
2. *Refert* and *Intērest*. 408.

## IV. Accusative and Genitive. 410.

## 226. MODELS.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| I. Murena was a man of much industry.                | I. <i>Murēna multae industriae fuit.</i>        |
| II. The field is now of more value than it then was. | II. <i>Ager nunc pluris est quam tunc fuit.</i> |
| III. It is your duty to understand.                  | III. <i>Tuum est intelligere.</i>               |



- |  |  |
|--|--|
| IV. It is the duty of an<br>orator to speak. | IV. <i>Oratōris officium est<br/>dicere.</i> |
| V. You were in the mean<br>time at Rome.     | V. <i>Tu interea Romae<br/>fuisti.</i>       |
| VI. To do right is the in-<br>terest of all. | VI. <i>Intērest omnium<br/>recte facere.</i> |
| VII. It greatly interests me.                | VII. <i>Magni intērest mea.</i>              |
| VIII. I repent of my error.                  | VIII. <i>Me errōris mei poe-<br/>nitet.</i>  |

## 227. REMARKS.

1. MODEL I. — WAS A MAN OF, Latin idiom, *was of*, MAN omitted in rendering into Latin. G. 402, III.

2. MODEL II. — IS OF MORE VALUE, *pluris est*, lit. *is of more*. G. 402, III. 1.

3. MODEL III. — IT IS YOUR DUTY TO UNDERSTAND, Latin idiom, *to understand is yours*. *Tuum*, not *tui*, must be used. G. 404, 1.

4. MODEL IV. — IT IS THE DUTY OF AN ORATOR, *oratōris est*, or *oratōris officium est*. G. 404, 2.

5. MODEL V. — AT ROME, *Romae*. G. 423, II.

6. MODEL VII. — GREATLY, *magni*, lit. *of much, of great*. G. 408, 3.

7. IT INTERESTS ME, *intērest mea*, not *mei*. G. 408, 1, 2).

8. MODEL VIII. — I REPENT OF MY ERROR, Latin idiom, *it repents me of my error*.

## 228. VOCABULARY.

Be ashamed, <i>pudet, puduit</i> or <i>pud- tum est</i> , impers. I am ashamed, <i>me pudet</i> . G. 299.	Pity, <i>misēret, miseritum est</i> , impers. I pity, <i>me misēret</i> . G. 299.
Bitterly, <i>acerbe</i> , adv.	Repent, <i>poenitet, poenituit</i> , impers. I repent, <i>me poenitet</i> . G. 299.
	Treachery, <i>proditio, ōnis</i> , f.

**229. EXERCISE.**

1. The Romans did not forget the ancient valor of the Helvetians. 2. The Gauls were very brave. 3. The Belgians were of *great* valor. 4. It is characteristic of *true* valor to encounter all dangers in behalf of the republic. 5. It is the interest of all to obey the laws. 6. It is important to the glory of the state to consult for the safety of all the citizens. 7. The Germans were not ashamed of their valor. 8. The Helvetians bitterly repented of their conspiracy. 9. Do you not pity them? 10. We do not accuse *you* of conspiracy. 11. This soldier has already been accused of treachery.

**LESSON XLIX.**

ABLATIVE.

[2, 35.]

**230. LESSON FROM THE GRAMMAR.**

- I. Ablative of Cause, Manner, Means. 414.
  1. Various Expressions for Cause. 414, 2, 2) and 3).
  2. Means and Agent distinguished. 414, 4 and 5.
- II. Ablative of Price. 416.
- III. Ablative with Comparatives. 417.
  1. Comparatives with *Quam*. 417, 1.
  2. Ablative, when admissible. 417, 2.
  3. Construction with *Plus* and *Minus*. 417, 3.

## 231. MODELS.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| I. An art is praised because of its usefulness.       | I. <i>Ars utilitāte laudatur.</i>                              |
| II. <i>By my right</i> I ask of you this favor.       | II. <i>Meo jure te hoc beneficium rogo.</i>                    |
| III. Terentia was delighted with <i>your letter</i> . | III. <i>Terentia delectāta est tuis littēris.</i>              |
| IV. Friendship is to be sought for its own sake.      | IV. <i>Amicitia est propter se expetenda.</i>                  |
| V. Cato was praised by all.                           | V. <i>Cato ab omnibus laudatus est.</i>                        |
| VI. It was done through the agency of Fabricius.      | VI. <i>Per Fabricium factum est.</i>                           |
| VII. He purchased the senatorial rank with money.     | VII. <i>Ordinem senatorium pretio mercatus est.</i>            |
| VIII. What is more desirable than wisdom?             | VIII. <i>Quid est optabilius sapientiā, or quam sapientiā.</i> |
| IX. He lived with you more than a year.               | IX. <i>Tecum plus annum vixit.</i>                             |

## 232. REMARKS.

1. MODEL I. — BECAUSE OF ITS USEFULNESS, *utilitāte*, Abl. of Cause. Rule XXI.

2. MODEL II. — I ASK OF YOU, *te rogo*. Rule VII.

3. MODEL III. — WITH YOUR LETTER, *tuis littēris*, or *tua epistōla*. Rule XXI. See also Synonymes, 200.

4. MODEL IV. — FOR ITS OWN SAKE = on account of itself, *propter*

*sé.* These words, it will be observed, stand between *est* and *expetenda*. Modifiers are not unfrequently thus placed between the two parts in the compound forms of verbs.

5. MODEL VI. — THROUGH THE AGENCY OF FABRICIUS, *per Fabricium*, lit. *through Fabricius*. G. 414, 5, 1).

6. MODEL IX. — WITH YOU, *tecum*. G. 434, 5.

7. MORE THAN A YEAR, *plus annum*, not *plus anno*. G. 417, 3.

### 233. SYNONYMES.

Celebrated, distinguished, illustrious, noble; *celèber, clarus, illustris, nobilis*.

1. *Celèber, bris, bre*; CELEBRATED, MUCH FREQUENTED, — applied mostly to places.

2. *Clarus, a, um*; DISTINGUISHED, CONSPICUOUS, CELEBRATED, — especially for brilliant achievements.

3. *Illustris, e*; ILLUSTRIOUS, RENOWNED, — a stronger term than *clarus*, applied especially to those who are distinguished for rank and worth.

4. *Nobilis, e*; WELL KNOWN, FAMOUS, NOBLE, — with special reference to high birth and ancestry.

### 234. VOCABULARY.

Aid, *auxilium, ii, n.*

Antioch, *Antiochia, ae, f.*

Celebrated, *celèber, bris, bre.*

High, great (price), *magnus, a, um.*

Illustrious, *illustris, e.*

Lead on, *adduco, ère, duxi, ductum.*

Noble, *nobilis, e.*

Solon, *Solon* or *Solo, ònis, m.*

Themistocles, *Themistòcles, is, m.*

Thousand, *mille*, indecl. adj.; pl.

*millia, ium, n. subst.* G. 178.

### 235. EXERCISE.

1. The soldiers were led on by the hope of a reward.
2. The Aeduians were sent with all their forces as aid to

Caesar. 3. Why did they not come with cavalry? 4. More than five thousand came *in one day*. 5. Who was there at Rome more distinguished than Cicero? 6. Antioch was formerly a celebrated city. 7. The name of Themistocles is more illustrious than that of Solon. 8. The Athenians sent three most noble philosophers to Rome. 9. He has purchased a house at a high price. 10. The safety of the *country* is dear to *me*.

## LESSON L.

### ABLATIVE — CONTINUED.

[3, 8.]

### 236. LESSON FROM THE GRAMMAR.

- I. Ablative of Difference. 418.
- II. Ablative in Special Constructions. 419.

### 237. MODELS.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| I. Longer by <i>one day</i> .                             | I. <i>Uno die longior.</i>                     |
| II. The wise man makes<br>the best use of reason.         | II. <i>Sapiens ratione optime utitur.</i>      |
| III. I am <i>intimate</i> with Trebonius.                 | III. <i>Trebonio utor familiariter.</i>        |
| IV. Nature is content with<br>little.                     | IV. <i>Natura parvo contenta est.</i>          |
| V. What need have you of<br>our aid?                      | V. <i>Quid tibi opera nostra opus est?</i>     |
| VI. No one trusts in the<br>stability of <i>fortune</i> . | VI. <i>Nemo fortunae stabilitate confidit.</i> |
| VII. I trust in virtue.                                   | VII. <i>Virtuti confido.</i>                   |

## 238. REMARKS.

1. MODEL II. — MAKES THE BEST USE OF REASON, Latin idiom, *uses reason best*.
2. MODEL III. — I AM INTIMATE WITH, *utor familiariter*.
3. MODEL V. — WHAT NEED HAVE YOU, Latin idiom, *as to what is there need to you*, — *quid tibi opus est*. *Quid*, see G. 380, 2. OF OUR AID, *opēra nostra*, Abl. G. 419, 3.
4. MODEL VII. — I TRUST IN VIRTUE, *virtūti* or *virtute confido*. With the Dative the idea of *trust* is prominent, I trust in virtue, i. e. trust it, trust to it; while with the Abl., the idea of *means* is prominent, I trust in virtue, i. e. am confident because of or by means of virtue.

## 239. SYNONYMES.

I. To need, to be without, to be free from; *egeo*, *indigeo*, *careo*, *vaco*.

1. *Egeo*, *ēre*, *ui* — ; TO NEED, TO BE DESTITUTE OF, — to be without something which one needs.

2. *Indigeo*, *ēre*, *ui* — ; TO NEED, TO FEEL NEED, — involving a deep *sense* of need, while *egeo* refers rather to the need itself.

3. *Careo*, *ēre*, *ui*, *itum* ; TO BE WITHOUT, — with little reference to the character of the object as desirable or undesirable.

4. *Vaco*, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātum* ; TO BE FREE FROM, TO BE WITHOUT, — especially to be without that which is undesirable.

II. Man, hero ; *homo*, *vir*.

1. *Homo*, *homīnis*, m. and f. ; MAN, — a member of the human family, man or woman.

2. *Vir*, *viri*, m. ; HERO, TRUE MAN, — as a term of respect.

## 240. VOCABULARY.

Advice, counsel, <i>consilium</i> , <i>ii</i> , n.	Familiarly, <i>familiariter</i> , adv.
Affection, love, <i>amor</i> , <i>ōris</i> , m.	Fault, <i>culpa</i> , <i>ae</i> , f.
Be destitute of, need, <i>egeo</i> , <i>ēre</i> , <i>ui</i> ; <i>indigeo</i> , <i>ēre</i> , <i>ui</i> .	Feel the need of, <i>indigeo</i> , <i>ēre</i> , <i>ui</i> .
Be free from, be without, <i>vaco</i> , <i>āre</i> , <i>āvi</i> , <i>ātum</i> ; <i>careo</i> , <i>ēre</i> , <i>ui</i> , <i>itum</i> ; <i>egeo</i> , <i>ēre</i> , <i>ui</i> .	Fidelity, faith, <i>fides</i> , <i>ei</i> , f.
Be intimate with, <i>familiariter</i> <i>utor</i> , <i>i</i> , <i>usus</i> <i>sum</i> .	Highest, of the highest degree, <i>summus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> , sup. of <i>supē-</i> <i>rus</i> .
Be needful (there needs, is need of), <i>opus</i> <i>est</i> , <i>fuit</i> .	Kindness, <i>benignitas</i> , <i>ātis</i> , f.
Best, in the best manner, <i>optime</i> , adv.	Nothing, <i>nihil</i> , n. indecl.
Enjoyment, <i>delectatio</i> , <i>ōnis</i> , f.	Pain, <i>dolor</i> , <i>ōris</i> , m.
	Use, make use of, <i>utor</i> , <i>i</i> , <i>usus</i> <i>sum</i> , dep.
	Very, <i>valde</i> , adv.

## 241. EXERCISE.

1. Laelius was for many years very intimate with Scipio. 2. He was at that time both without pain and without enjoyment. 3. We are *now* destitute of (need) many things. 4. I feel the need of your advice. 5. Now your counsels, your affection, and your fidelity are needful to us. 6. There was no need of so many words. 7. Let us make the best use of our time. 8. The *Roman* soldiers were always worthy of the highest praise. 9. Nothing is more worthy of a *great* and *distinguished* man than kindness. 10. What is there in man better than virtue? 11. The safety of the *country* is much dearer to you than life.

## LESSON LI.

### ABLATIVE — CONTINUED.

[3, 13.]

### 242. LESSON FROM THE GRAMMAR.

- I. Ablative of Place. 421-424.
  1. Places not Towns. 422.
  2. Names of Towns. 423.
  3. Like Names of Towns. 424.
- II. Ablative of Source and Separation. 425; 425, 3.
- III. Construction of Names of Places.
  1. The Place in which. 421, I. and II.
  2. The Place from which. 421, I. and II.
  3. The Place to which. 379; 379, 4.

### 243. MODELS.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| I. In what city do we live?                  | I. <i>In qua urbe vivimus?</i>             |
| II. He died at Babylon.                      | II. <i>Babylōne mortuus est.</i>           |
| III. I withdrew from the forum.              | III. <i>De foro discessi.</i>              |
| IV. Aeschines withdrew from Athens.          | IV. <i>Aeschines cessit Athēnis.</i>       |
| V. He fled from home.                        | V. <i>Domo profūgit.</i>                   |
| VI. You have freed your country from perils. | VI. <i>Periculis patriam liberavistis.</i> |
| VII. He came into the province.              | VII. <i>In provinciam advēnit.</i>         |
| VIII. I came to Capua.                       | VIII. <i>Capuam veni.</i>                  |



## 244. REMARKS.

1. Why is the preposition used in models I. III. VII., and omitted in all the others? G. 421; 424; 425, 3; 379; 379, 4.

2. MODEL IV. — Emphasis places *Athēnis* at the end of the sentence.

## 245. SYNONYMES.

Country; *patria, ager, rus*.

1. *Patria, ae, f.*; NATIVE COUNTRY, — the country of one's birth.

2. *Ager, agri, m.*; COUNTRY, — as consisting of fields, THE OPEN COUNTRY; — in this sense generally plural.

3. *Rus, ruris, n.*; THE COUNTRY, — as distinguished from the city.

## 246. VOCABULARY.

Capable, *capax, ācis*.

Country, *rus, ruris, n.*; *patria, ae, f.*; *ager, agri, m.*

Fear, *metus, us, m.*

Few, *pauci, ae, a, pl.*

Forced marches, *magna itinēra, n. pl.*; lit. *great marches*.

Go, *eo, ire, ivi, itum*.

Hasten, *contendō, ēre, tendi, tentum*.

Land, *terra, ae, f.*

Mind, the mental faculty, *mens, mentis, f.*

Obtain, *potior, tri, itus sum, dep.* G. 419, I.

Remain, *maneo, ēre, mansi, mansum*.

Sea, *mare, is, n.*; on sea and land, *terra marique*.

Servitude, *servitus, utis, f.*

Sovereignty, *imperium, ii, n.*

## 247. EXERCISE.

1. We lived in Geneva more than three months. 2. From Geneva we hastened with forced marches into Italy.

3. Now let us go from the city into the country. 4. He went from home a few days ago, and will remain in the country two months. 5. We made a journey of three days through the country. 6. The *brave* soldiers have encountered many dangers in behalf of their country. 7. War must be waged against the Carthaginians on sea and land. 8. It was the intention of the Helvetians to obtain the sovereignty of all Gaul. 9. Will you not free this city from the fear of servitude? 10. To man God has given a mind capable of all virtues.

## LESSON LII.

### ABLATIVE — CONTINUED.

[3, 20.]

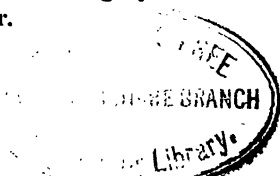
### 248. LESSON FROM THE GRAMMAR.

- I. Ablative of Time. 426.
  - 1. Time within which. 426, 2.
  - 2. Time since an event, or between two events. 427, 427, 1-4.
- II. Ablative of Characteristic. 428.
  - 1. Genitive and Ablative distinguished. 428, 4; 396, IV.
- III. Ablative of Specification. 429.

### 249. MODELS.

I. Plato died in his eighty-first year.

I. *Plato uno et octogesimo anno mortuus est.*



- |   |  |
|---|--|
| II. I have leisure at this time for philosophy. | II. <i>Hoc tempore philosophiae vaco.</i>          |
| III. He smiled once in his life.                | III. <i>Semel in vita risit.</i>                   |
| IV. Homer lived many years before Romulus.      | IV. <i>Homērus annis multis fuit ante Romūlum.</i> |
| V. He was slain some months after.              | V. <i>Aliquot post menses occisus est.</i>         |
| VI. You are of a cheerful spirit.               | VI. <i>Tu hilāri animo es.</i>                     |

## 250. REMARKS.

1. MODEL I. — HIS — omitted in rendering.
2. MODEL III. — IN HIS LIFE, *in vita*. Why is the preposition *in* used? G. 426, 2.
3. MODEL IV. — HOMER LIVED MANY YEARS BEFORE ROMULUS, Latin idiom, *Homer was before Romulus by many years*. *Annis*, Abl. of Difference. Rule XXIV. *Ante Romūlum* at the end of the sentence because emphatic.
4. MODEL V. — SOME MONTHS AFTER, Latin idiom, *after some months*. For the order of the words, see G. 427, 2.
5. MODEL VI. — OF A CHEERFUL SPIRIT, OR WITH A CHEERFUL SPIRIT, *hilāri animo*, Abl. of Characteristic. Rule XXIX.

## 251. VOCABULARY.

Afterwards, <i>post</i> , adv.	Fiftieth, <i>quingagesimus</i> , a, um.
Equal, <i>par</i> , <i>paris</i> .	First day of the month, <i>calendae</i> ,
Fifth day of the month, <i>nonae</i> ,	<i>arum</i> , f. pl.
<i>arum</i> , f. pl. For exception see	Fourth, <i>quartus</i> , a, um.
G. 708, I. 2.	Greatly, <i>magnopere</i> , adv.

Ides, <i>idus</i> , <i>iduum</i> , f. pl. G. 708,	Refinement, <i>humanitas</i> , <i>ātis</i> , f.
I. 3.	Return, come back, <i>revertō</i> or <i>re-</i>
June, of June, <i>Junius</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> . G.	<i>vertor</i> , <i>ēre</i> or <i>i</i> , <i>reverti</i> , <i>re-</i>
708, III. 2.	<i>versum</i> . See G. 273, III.,
March, of March, <i>Martius</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .	<i>verto</i> .
May, of May, <i>Maius</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .	Sixth, <i>sextus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .
Punic, <i>Punicus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .	Sixtieth, <i>sexagesimus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .
Put to death, <i>occido</i> , <i>ēre</i> , <i>cidi</i> , <i>ci-</i>	Such, so great, <i>tantus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .
<i>sum</i> .	Third, <i>tertius</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .
Pythagoras, <i>Pythagōras</i> , <i>ae</i> , <i>m</i> .	

## 252. EXERCISE.

1. Pythagoras was in Italy at the same time in which Lucius Junius Brutus liberated his country. 2. Publius Scipio took Carthage in the third Punic war. 3. The ambassadors returned to Rome on the first day of May. 4. I received your letter *on the fifth day* of June. 5. Caesar was put to death in his fifty-sixth year, on the ides of March. 6. *Two years afterwards* Cicero was put to death, in his sixty-fourth year. 7. The Belgians were equal to the Germans in valor. 8. They were surpassed by the *Romans* both in valor and in refinement. 9. The Romans surpassed the Greeks in the arts of *war*. 10. The Greeks surpassed the Romans in the arts of *peace*. 11. Herodotus is a man of such eloquence that he greatly delights us.

## LESSON LIII.

## ABLATIVE — CONTINUED.

[3, 29.]

## 253. LESSON FROM THE GRAMMAR.

- I. Ablative Absolute. 431.
- II. Cases with Prepositions. 432.
  - 1. Accusative. 433.
  - 2. Ablative. 434.
  - 3. Accusative or Ablative. 435.

## 254. MODELS.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>I. When many opinions had already been expressed, I was asked my opinion.</p> | <p>I. <i>Multis sententiis jam dictis, rogatus sum sententiam.</i></p> |
| <p>II. Many orators flourished in the time of Cato.</p>                          | <p>II. <i>Vivo Catōne multi oratōres floruerunt.</i></p>               |
| <p>III. Socrates brought philosophy down to common life.</p>                     | <p>III. <i>Socrātes philosophiam ad vitam communem adduxit.</i></p>    |
| <p>IV. He wrote the book with great care.</p>                                    | <p>IV. <i>Magna cum cura librum scripsit.</i></p>                      |
| <p>V. He has retired from office.</p>  | <p>V. <i>Magistrātu abiit.</i></p>                                     |
| <p>VI. What are you to do with this man?</p>                                     | <p>VI. <i>Quid hoc homīne facias?</i></p>                              |
| <p>VII. He fled into Asia.</p>   | <p>VII. <i>In Asiam profugit.</i></p>                                  |
| <p>VIII. In this island is a fountain of sweet water.</p>                        | <p>VIII. <i>In hac insula est fons aquae dulcis.</i></p>               |

## 255. REMARKS.

1. MODEL I. — WHEN MANY OPINIONS HAD BEEN EXPRESSED, Latin idiom, *many opinions having been spoken. Sententiam.* Rule VII.

2. MODEL II. — IN THE TIME OF CATO, *vivo Catōne*, lit. *Cato alive.* Rule XXXI. Observe the position of these words at the beginning of the sentence. G. 594, I.

3. MODEL VI. — WITH THIS MAN, *hoc homīne.* G. 434, 2. *Facias,* G. 486, II.

## 256. SYNONYMES.

Battle, engagement, conflict; *pugna, proelium.*

1. *Pugna, æ, f.*; BATTLE, ENGAGEMENT, FIGHT, STRIFE, — the generic term for a conflict of any kind, whether between individuals or armies, whether with the fist, with words, or with arms.

2. *Proelium, ii, n.*; BATTLE, ENGAGEMENT, — a conflict in a military sense.

## 257. VOCABULARY.

Aquitanians, <i>Aquitāni, ōrum, m.</i>	How great, <i>quantus, a, um.</i>
Arrive, <i>pervenio, ire, veni, ventum.</i>	Living, alive, <i>vivus, a, um.</i>
Become, <i>fiō, fieri, factus sum.</i> G. 294.	Reduce to a state of peace, <i>paco, āre, āvi, ātum.</i>
Betake one's self, <i>se recipere; recipio, ěre, cēpi, ceptum.</i>	Result, <i>exitus, us, m.</i>
Cassius, <i>Cassius, ii, m.</i>	Rout, <i>pello, ěre, pepūli, pulsum.</i>
Eager, <i>alacer, cris, cre.</i>	Strife, <i>pugna, æ, f.</i>
Fight, to fight, <i>pugno, āre, āvi, ātum.</i> To fight (lit. make) a battle, <i>proelium (pugnam)</i>	Successful, <i>secundus, a, um.</i>
<i>facio, ěre, feci, factum.</i>	Vicinity, in the vicinity of, <i>ad,</i> prep. with acc.
	Within, <i>intra,</i> prep. with acc.
	Yoke, <i>jugum, i, n.</i>

**258. EXERCISE.**

1. In the consulship of Lucius Cassius the Helvetians routed the Roman army and sent it under the yoke. 2. Within five days we shall arrive in the vicinity of Geneva. 3. Having routed the army of the enemy, the Aquitanians betook themselves to the town. 4. *Our* soldiers, having fortified their camp, became more eager to fight. 5. Caesar, having reduced all Gaul to a state of peace, led his army into winter quarters. 6. How great is the strife of orators! 7. Caesar fought many successful battles. 8. The result of this battle is uncertain. 9. These wars were waged against the Gauls in the time of Cicero.

**LESSON LIV.****ADJECTIVES.**[1, 4.]<sup>1</sup>**259. LESSON FROM THE GRAMMAR.**

- I. Agreement of Adjectives. 438; 438, 1-8.  
1. With Clause. 438, 3.  
2. Construction according to Sense. 438, 6.  
3. With two or more Nouns. 439.

- II. Use of Adjectives. 440.  
1. With the Force of Nouns. 441.

---

<sup>1</sup> The enclosed numerals standing at the beginning of the following lessons refer to Cicero's Orations against Catiline. Thus [1, 4] shows that this lesson is to be learned after the pupil has read the first four Chapters of the first Oration against Catiline.

2. Equivalent to Clauses. 442.
3. Instead of Adverbs. 443.
4. Comparison of Adjectives. 444.

## 260. MODELS.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| I. An <i>upright</i> life is a <i>happy</i> life.           | I. <i>Honesta vita beāta vita est.</i>               |
| II. It is true that there is friendship among the good.     | II. <i>Verum est amicitiam inter bonos esse.</i>     |
| III. Castor and Pollux were seen.                           | III. <i>Castor et Pollux visi sunt.</i>              |
| IV. Honors and victories are accidental.                    | IV. <i>Honōres et victoriae fortuita sunt.</i>       |
| V. I loved Hortensius when he was alive.                    | V. <i>Hortensium vivum amāvi.</i>                    |
| VI. Roscius was frequently at Rome.                         | VI. <i>Roscius erat Romae frequens.</i>              |
| VII. Nothing is more beautiful than virtue.                 | VII. <i>Nihil est virtūte formosius.</i>             |
| VIII. Aristides was without exception the most just of all. | VIII. <i>Aristides unus omnium justissimus fuit.</i> |

## 261. REMARKS.

1. MODEL II. — *Verum* agrees with the infinitive clause, *amicitiam — esse*. G. 438, 3; 35, III. AMONG, BETWEEN THE GOOD, *inter bonos*. *Bonos* used substantively, *the good*. G. 441.

2. MODEL IV. — ARE ACCIDENTAL, i. e. accidental things, *fortuita sunt*. G. 439, 2, 3).

3. MODEL V. — I LOVED HORTENSIVS WHEN HE WAS ALIVE, OR *when alive*, Latin idiom, *I loved Hortensius alive*.



4. MODEL VI. — ROSCIUS WAS FREQUENTLY AT ROME, Latin idiom, *Roscius was frequent at Rome.* G. 443.

5. MODEL VIII. — WITHOUT EXCEPTION THE MOST JUST OF ALL, *unus omnium justissimus*, lit. *alone of all the most just, the most just one of all.* G. 444, 3.

## 262. VOCABULARY.

Assemble, <i>convēnio, ire, vēni, ventum.</i>	Jupiter, <i>Jupiter, Jovis</i> , m.
Capture, <i>cipio, ēre, cepi, captum.</i>	Openly, <i>palam</i> , adv.
Certain, <i>certus, a, um.</i>	Stator, <i>Stator, ōris</i> , m.
Frequently, <i>frequens, entis</i> , adj.	Treason, <i>proditio, ōnis</i> , f.
G. 443.	Wicked, <i>scelerātus, a, um.</i>
Full, in full numbers, <i>frequens, entis.</i>	Without exception, alone, <i>unus, a, um.</i> G. 176, 1.

## 263. EXERCISE.

1. We will now read the orations of Cicero the celebrated orator. 2. Cicero was consul in the same year in which Catiline formed his wicked conspiracy. 3. There were many orators in Rome at that time, but Cicero was without exception the most eloquent of all. 4. Catiline had frequently heard him in the senate. 5. The senate assembled in full numbers in the temple of Jupiter Stator. 6. Cicero was the first who openly accused Catiline of treason. 7. It is certain that a conspiracy was formed. 8. Many thousands of the enemy were captured in the first Punic war. 9. Scipio and Laelius were often praised by Cicero.

## LESSON LV.

## PRONOUNS.

[1, 7.]

## 264. LESSON FROM THE GRAMMAR.

- I. Agreement of Pronouns. 445.
1. Agreement of Pronoun used as Adjective. 445, 1.
  2. Agreement with Personal Pronoun. 445, 2.
  3. With two Antecedents. 445, 3.
  4. With Predicate Noun or Appositive. 445, 4.
  5. Construction according to Sense. 445, 5.
  6. Antecedent omitted. 445, 6.
  7. Clause as Antecedent. 445, 7.
- II. Personal and Possessive Pronouns. 446, 447.
1. Nominative of Personal Pronouns omitted. 446.
  2. Possessive Pronouns omitted. 447.
  3. Reflexive Use of Pronouns. 448, 449.

## 265. MODELS.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| I. <i>Every</i> virtue attracts us to itself.                      | I. <i>Omnis virtus nos ad se attrahit.</i>                |
| II. From your letter I have received <i>incredible</i> pleasure.   | II. <i>Ex litteris tuis cepi incredibilem voluptatem.</i> |
| III. They will live a <i>more secure</i> life under my protection. | III. <i>Tutiorem vitam meo praesidio vivent.</i>          |
| IV. You are the one who commended me.                              | IV. <i>Tu es is qui me ornasti.</i>                       |
| V. The produce and fruits which the earth yields.                  | V. <i>Fruges atque fructus quos terra gignit.</i>         |

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| VI. They reject glory,<br>which is the fruit of<br>virtue. | VI. <i>Gloriam qui est<br/>fructus virtutis re-<br/>pudiant.</i> |
| VII. There are some who<br>think.                          | VII. <i>Sunt qui censeant.</i>                                   |
| VIII. Our country delights<br>us, as it ought.             | VIII. <i>Nos, id quod debet,<br/>patria delectat.</i>            |
| IX. I console myself.                                      | IX. <i>Me consolor.</i>  |

## 266. REMARKS.

1. MODEL III. — UNDER MY PROTECTION, *meo praesidio*, lit. *by means of*, or *because of*, my protection. Rule XXI. *Vitam*, G. 371, 1, 3).

2. MODEL IV. — THE ONE WHO, *is qui*, not *unus qui*.

3. MODEL V. — WHICH, *quos*, masculine. G. 445, 3.

4. MODEL VI. — *Qui* agrees with *fructus*, rather than with *gloriam*. G. 445, 4.

5. MODEL VII. — THERE ARE SOME, *sunt*. G. 445, 6. *Censeant*, for the Subjunctive, see G. 501, 1.

6. MODEL VIII. — AS IT OUGHT, Latin idiom, *that which it owes*, *ought*, — *id quod debet*. G. 445, 7. Emphasis places *nos* at the beginning of the sentence.

## 267. VOCABULARY.

As, relat., <i>qui, quae, quod</i> . As it ought, <i>id quod debet</i> . G. 445, 7.	Depart from, <i>exeo, ire, ii, itum</i> . Devote one's self to, <i>studeo, ere,</i> <i>ui</i> , dat. G. 385.
Ascertain, <i>cognosco, ere, novi, ni-</i> <i>tum</i> .	Divine, <i>divinus, a, um</i> . Gift, <i>donum, i, n</i> .
Condemn, <i>condemno, are, avi,</i> <i>atum</i> .	Oppose, <i>obsisto, ere, stiti, stitum</i> . G. 386.
Defend, <i>defendo, ere, fendi, fen-</i> <i>sum</i> .	Remissness, <i>nequitia, ae, f</i> . Sometimes, <i>interdum</i> , adv.

Vigilant, *vigilans, antis*.  
 You, thou, *tu, tui*.

| Your, thy, companions, friends,  
 &c., *tui, orum*. G. 441, 1.

### 268. EXERCISE.

1. I have said that Cicero accused Catiline of treason.  
 2. Did you not condemn yourself for remissness? 3. I have often condemned myself for remissness. 4. Cicero said that he condemned the consuls for remissness. 5. You, Catiline, and all your companions, ought to depart from the city. 6. You and I, who oppose this conspiracy, ought to be vigilant. 7. There are some who fear Catiline. 8. We will *defend*, as we ought, the safety of the Roman people. 9. *Let us send* the cavalry to ascertain where the *enemy* are. 10. Cicero devoted himself to eloquence, which is sometimes called a *divine gift*.

## LESSON LVI.

### PRONOUNS — CONTINUED.

[1, 10.]

### 269. LESSON FROM THE GRAMMAR.

- I. Demonstrative Pronouns. 450–452.
- II. Relative Pronouns. 453.
  - 1. Relative Clause = Ablative with *Pro*. 453, 4.
  - 2. Relative with Adjective. 453, 5.
- III. Interrogative Pronouns. 454.
- IV. Indefinite Pronouns. 455–459.

## 270. MODELS.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| I. One thing I will explain, and that too a most important one. | I. <i>Unam rem explicābo, eamque maximam.</i>         |
| II. Nothing is useful which is not also honorable.              | II. <i>Nihil est utile, quod non idem honestum.</i>   |
| III. We are such as we ought to be.                             | III. <i>Fi sumus, qui esse debemus.</i>               |
| IV. I hope you are well, such is your prudence.                 | IV. <i>Spero, quae tua prudentia est, te valere.</i>  |
| V. The most beautiful vessels which he had seen.                | V. <i>Vasa, quae pulcherrima viderat.</i>             |
| VI. What kind of a man was he?                                  | VI. <i>Qui vir fuit?</i>                              |
| VII. One party contends, the other fears.                       | VII. <i>Alteri dimicant, alteri timent.</i>           |
| VIII. One thing seems best to some, another to others.          | VIII. <i>Aliud aliis videtur optimum.</i>             |
| IX. The best men ever render the greatest service to posterity. | IX. <i>Optimus quisque maxime posteritati servit.</i> |

## 271. REMARKS.

1. MODEL I. — AND THAT TOO A MOST IMPORTANT ONE, Latin idiom, and that the greatest, — *eamque maximam*. G. 451, 2.
2. MODEL II. — WHICH ALSO, *quod idem*, lit. *which the same*.
3. MODEL IV. — SUCH IS YOUR PRUDENCE, Latin idiom, *which is your prudence*, — *te valere* being the antecedent of *quae*. What other forms may be used? G. 453, 4.

4. MODEL V. — THE MOST BEAUTIFUL VESSELS WHICH, Latin idiom, *the vessels, which the most beautiful.* G. 453, 5.

5. MODEL VIII. — ONE THING SEEMS BEST TO SOME, ANOTHER TO OTHERS, Latin idiom, *another thing seems best to others.*

6. MODEL IX. — THE BEST MEN EVER, Latin idiom, *every best man.* RENDER THE GREATEST SERVICE, *maxime servit*, lit. *sertes most or especially.*

## 272. SYNONYMES.

Dinner, feast, entertainment; *coena, epulae, convivium.*

1. *Coena*, ae, f.; DINNER, — as the principal family meal.

2. *Epulae*, ārum, f. pl.; FEAST, ENTERTAINMENT, — with special reference to its *sumptuous* character.

3. *Convivium*, ii, n.; lit. *a living together (con, vivo)*; FEAST, ENTERTAINMENT, — with special reference to its *social* character.

## 273. VOCABULARY.

Audacity, <i>audacia</i> , ae, f.	<i>sextum idus Novembres.</i> G.
Best, <i>optimus</i> , a, um.	708.
Choice, <i>conquistus</i> , a, um.	Entertainment, <i>convivium</i> , ii, n.
Conversation, <i>sermo</i> , ōnis, m.	Feast, viands, <i>epulae</i> , ārum, f. pl.
Daily, of increase or decrease, <i>in dies</i> ; <i>in dies singulos.</i> See Syn. 399.	Increase, intrans., <i>cresco</i> , ēre, crevi, cretum.
Deliver (an oration), <i>habeo</i> , ēre, vi, itum; lit. <i>to have.</i>	Load, pile up, <i>exstruo</i> , ēre, struxi, structum.
Each, one each, <i>singuli</i> , ae, a, distrib. num.	Madness, <i>furor</i> , ōris, m.
Eighth of November, <i>ante diem</i>	On account of, <i>propter</i> , prep. with acc.

Pleasure, enjoyment, <i>delectatio</i> , <i>onis</i> , f.	Such, sometimes rendered by <i>qui</i> , <i>quae</i> , <i>quod</i> , relat. pron. G. 453, 4.
Presence, in the presence of, <i>apud</i> , prep. with acc.	Sumptuous, <i>sumptuosus</i> , a, um.
Put to death, <i>interficio</i> , <i>ere</i> , <i>feci</i> , <i>fectum</i> .	Table, <i>mensa</i> , ae, f.
Squander, <i>profundo</i> , <i>ere</i> , <i>fudi</i> , <i>fusum</i> .	Unbridled, <i>effrenatus</i> , a, um.

## 274. EXERCISE.

1. The oration which we are now reading was delivered in the temple of Jupiter Stator. 2. It was delivered by Cicero on the 8th of November, *in the presence of the senate*. 3. The unbridled audacity of Catiline was *at that time* increasing daily. 4. Catiline, such was his unbridled madness, endeavored to put Cicero to death. 5. I will give you the best books which I have. 6. The judge has invited us to dinner. 7. There are some who squander their money upon sumptuous feasts. 8. The tables are loaded with the *choicest* viands. 9. Many are delighted with entertainments on account of their enjoyment of conversation.

## LESSON LVII.

VERBS — AGREEMENT, VOICE, TENSE. INDICATIVE  
MOOD.  
[1, 13.]

## 275. LESSON FROM THE GRAMMAR.

- I. Agreement of Verbs. 460-463.  
II. Use of Voices. 464, 465.

III. Tenses of the Indicative. 466-473.

IV. Use of the Indicative. 474.

### 276. MODELS.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| I. You assume the name of virtue.                                     | I. <i>Nomen virtutis usurpas.</i>                             |
| II. All things were made by God.                                      | II. <i>A Deo omnia facta sunt.</i>                            |
| III. I will explain as I shall be able those things which you desire. | III. <i>Ea quae vis, ut potero, explicabo.</i>                |
| IV. Mithridates has already reigned upwards of twenty-two years.      | IV. <i>Mithridates annum jam tertium et vicesimum regnat.</i> |
| V. It would be tedious to enumerate the uses.                         | V. <i>Longum est persēqui utilitates.</i>                     |

### 277. REMARKS.

1. MODEL II. — ALL THINGS, *omnia*. *Res* is not necessary, as there is no ambiguity. Emphasis determines the position of *a Deo*.

2. MODEL IV. — HAS REIGNED UPWARDS OF TWENTY-TWO YEARS, *annum tertium et vicesimum regnat*, lit. *is reigning the twenty-third year*, or *plus viginti duo annos regnavit*.

3. MODEL V. — IT WOULD BE TEDIOUS, Latin idiom, *it is long*, a long task, *longum est*.

### 278. VOCABULARY.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| Against, <i>in</i> , prep. with acc.                           | Entertain the same sentiments,              |
| Better, <i>melior</i> , <i>ius</i> , compar. of <i>bonus</i> . | <i>eādem sentio, ire, sensi, sensum.</i>    |
| Can, could, <i>possum, posse, potui</i> .                      | Founding of the city, <i>urbs condita</i> . |
| Decree, <i>consultum</i> , <i>i</i> , n.                       | G. 580.                                     |



In accordance with, <i>e, ex</i> , prep.	Rightly, <i>recte</i> , adv.
with abl., lit. <i>from</i> .	Six hundredth, <i>sexcentesimo</i> , <i>a, um</i> .
Inactivity, <i>inertia</i> , <i>ae, f</i> .	Tedious, long, <i>longus</i> , <i>a, um</i> .
Keep, <i>seruo</i> , <i>āre, āvi, ātum</i> .	Thing, <i>res, rei, f</i> .
Ninetieth, <i>nonagesimus</i> , <i>a, um</i> .	Think, feel, perceive, <i>sentio, ire, sensi, sensum</i> .
Now = already, <i>jam</i> , adv.	
Promise, <i>promissum</i> , <i>i, n</i> .	

## 279. EXERCISE.

1. It would be better not to keep those promises. 2. It would be tedious to speak of these things. 3. The city should have been liberated from fear. 4. Can we rightly accuse Cicero of inactivity and remissness? 5. Could he not, in accordance with the decree of the senate, have ordered Catiline to be put to death? 6. Did he not wish to do this? 7. So many entertained the same sentiments as Catiline, that he did not judge this the best thing to do. 8. We have *now* read the first oration of *Cicero* against Catiline. 9. In what year was it delivered? 10. *It was delivered* in the six hundred and ninety-first year from the founding of the city.

## LESSON LVIII.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

[2, 4.]

## 280. LESSON FROM THE GRAMMAR.

## I. Tenses of the Subjunctive. 476-479.

1. Sequence of Tenses. 480; 481.

2. Exceptions in Sequence. 482.

- II. The Potential Subjunctive. 485; 486, 1-7.  
 III. The Subjunctive of Desire. 487; 488, 1-5.  
 IV. The Subjunctive of Purpose or Result. 489.

## 281. MODELS.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| I. They strive to conquer.  | I. <i>Nituntur ut vincant.</i>                             |
| II. May I be able to accomplish my endeavors.                               | II. <i>Utinam conāta effċere possim.</i>                   |
| III. Would that I had been able to accomplish my endeavors.                 | III. <i>Utinam conāta effċere potuissem.</i>               |
| IV. Let us avoid pride, haughtiness, and arrogance.                         | IV. <i>Superbiam, fastidium, arrogantiamque fugiāmus.</i>  |
| V. Who would seek glory as he would shun infamy?                            | V. <i>Quis gloriam tam expċtat quam infamiam fugiat?</i>   |
| VI. I collect all things, that I may write something <i>new to you</i> .    | VI. <i>Omnia colligo, ut novi scribam aliquid ad te.</i>   |
| VII. The house was so furnished that it was an <i>ornament</i> to the city. | VII. <i>Domus sic ornāta fuit ut urbi esset ornamento.</i> |

## 282. REMARKS.

1. MODEL I. — THEY STRIVE TO CONQUER, Latin idiom, *they strive that they may conquer*.
2. MODEL II. — MAY I BE ABLE, *possim*, or *utinam possim*.
3. MODEL III. — WOULD THAT I HAD BEEN ABLE, *utinam potuissem*.
4. MODEL V. — WOULD SEEK, WOULD SHUN, *expċtat, fugiat*, Potential Subjunctives.

5. MODEL VI.—SOMETHING NEW, *novi aliquid*, lit. *something of new*. G. 441, 2; 396, III. 2, 3). *Novi*, being emphatic, is at the beginning of the clause.

6. MODEL VII.—WAS AN ORNAMENT, *esset ornamento*. For the mood and tense of *esset*, see G. 489; 494; 481, II. 1. For the case of *ornamento*, see G. 390.

### 283. SYNONYMES.

Rest, repose, tranquillity; *quies, requies, tranquillitas*.

1. *Quies, quietis*, f.; REST, REPOSE, — in itself considered.

2. *Requies, etis*, f.; REST, REPOSE, — as a means of refreshing and invigorating the exhausted powers, whether of body or of mind.

3. *Tranquillitas, atis*, f.; TRANQUILLITY, CALMNESS, REPOSE, — involving freedom from care and anxiety.

### 284. VOCABULARY.

Affair, business, <i>negotium</i> , ii, n.	Public, <i>publicus</i> , a, um.
Civil, domestic, <i>domesticus</i> , a, um.	Repose, <i>tranquillitas, atis</i> , f.
Dare, <i>audeo, ēre, ausus sum</i> . G. 272, 3.	Rest, <i>quies, etis</i> , f.; <i>requies, etis</i> , f.
Even, <i>etiam</i> , adv.	Seek, <i>quaero, ēre, quaesivi, quaestum</i> .
Highest welfare of the state, <i>summa res publica</i> .	Strive, <i>nitor, niti, nisus</i> and <i>nixus sum</i> , dep.
Like, <i>similis</i> , e. G. 391, 2, 4), (2).	Vigilantly, sharply, <i>acriter</i> , adv.
Long for, <i>expeto, ēre, petivi, pettum</i> .	Watch, <i>vigilo, āre, āvi, ātum</i> .
Neglect, <i>negligo, ēre, lexi, lectum</i> .	Weary, <i>defatigo, āre, āvi, ātum</i> .
O that! <i>utinam</i> , interj.	Withdraw, <i>se removēre; removēo, ēre, mōvi, mōtum</i> .

### 285. EXERCISE.

1. There were in Rome so many like Catiline that they even dared to defend him. 2. O that we may be able to

conquer the leader *of this civil war!* 3. Would that I had received your letter. 4. Cicero the consul strove to defend the name and safety of the Roman people. 5. Let us strive to defend the republic. 6. Cicero, when consul, watched so vigilantly for the safety of the republic, that he has often been called the father of his country. 7. Many long for repose. 8. Many, longing for repose, withdraw from public affairs. 9. Rest does not always delight us. 10. Your wearied mind now seeks rest. 11. Who would neglect the highest welfare of the state?

## LESSON LIX.

## SUBJUNCTIVE OF PURPOSE OR RESULT — CONTINUED.

[2, 8.]

## 286. LESSON FROM THE GRAMMAR.

- I. Subjunctive of Purpose with *Ut* and *Ne*. 490.
  1. Pure Purpose. 491.
  2. Mixed Purpose. 492; 492, 1-4.
  3. Peculiarities. 493; 493, 1-4.
- II. Subjunctive of Result with *Ut* and *Ut Non*. 490.
  1. Pure Result. 494.
  2. Mixed Result. 495; 495, 1-3.
  3. Peculiarities. 496; 496, 1-3.
- III. Subjunctive with *Quo*, *Quin*, *Quominus*. 497-499; 498, 1-3.

## 287. MODELS.

I. It is necessary to eat  
that you may live.

I. *Esse oportet ut vivas.*

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| II. I ask you to aid him.   | II. <i>Te rogo ut eum juves.</i>   |
| III. I fear that you will not endure the labors.                                | III. <i>Timeo ut labōres sustineas.</i>                                  |
| IV. It is necessary that virtue should attract you.                             | IV. <i>Te oportet virtus trahat.</i>                                     |
| V. <i>There is</i> no one present who does not see.                             | V. <i>Adest nemo, quin videat.</i>                                       |
| VI. I cannot but send a letter.   | VI. <i>Facere non possum, quin littēras mittam.</i>                      |
| VII. <i>Death does not deter</i> a wise man from deliberating for the republic. | VII. <i>Non deterret sapientem mors, quominus rei publicae consūlat.</i> |

## 288. REMARKS.

1. MODEL I. — TO EAT, *esse*, from *edo*, G. 291, subject of *oportet*.
2. MODEL III. — THAT YOU WILL NOT ENDURE, *ut sustineas*. G. 492, 4.
3. MODEL IV. — *Trahat*: for the mood and for the omission of *ut*, see G. 495; 496, 1.
4. MODEL V. — WHO DOES NOT SEE, *quin videat*, but that he sees. G. 498, 2.
5. MODEL VI. — I CANNOT BUT SEND, Latin idiom, *I am not able to do but that I may send*.
6. MODEL VII. — FROM DELIBERATING, Latin idiom, *by which the less he may deliberate*. Emphasis places *mors* at the end of its clause.

## 289. VOCABULARY.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| Arms, <i>arma</i> , <i>ōrum</i> , n. pl. G. 131, | Attend to, to serve, <i>servio</i> , <i>ire</i> , <i>ivi</i> , |
| 1, 4).   | <i>itum</i> . G. 385.  |

Behooves, it behooves, <i>oportet</i> , <i>oportuit</i> . G. 299.	Implore, <i>oro</i> , <i>āre</i> , <i>āvi</i> , <i>ātum</i> .
Deter, <i>deterreo</i> , <i>ēre</i> , <i>ui</i> , <i>itum</i> .	Not only — but also, <i>non modo — sed etiam</i> .
Diligently, <i>diligenter</i> , adv.	Poet, <i>poēta</i> , <i>ae</i> , m.
Fear, to fear, <i>timeo</i> , <i>ēre</i> , <i>ui</i> , <i>itum</i> .	Profit, to profit, <i>conducō</i> , <i>ēre</i> , <i>duxi</i> , <i>ductum</i> ; in this sense only in Third Pers. G. 385.
For = to secure, <i>ad</i> , prep. with acc.	Punishment, penalty, <i>poena</i> , <i>ae</i> , f.
Forefathers, <i>majōres</i> , <i>um</i> , m. pl.	Rule, <i>impēro</i> , <i>āre</i> , <i>āvi</i> , <i>ātum</i> .
Free, <i>liber</i> , <i>ēra</i> , <i>erum</i> .	Studiously, <i>studiōse</i> , adv.
From, after verbs of hindering, <i>quominus</i> , conj.	Take, take up, <i>capio</i> , <i>ēre</i> , <i>cepi</i> , <i>captum</i> .
Greater, <i>major</i> , <i>us</i> , comparative of <i>magnus</i> . G. 165.	Take care, to take care, <i>caveo</i> , <i>ēre</i> , <i>cavi</i> , <i>cautum</i> .
Health, <i>valetudo</i> , <i>inis</i> , f.	Than, <i>quam</i> , conj.
Homer, <i>Homērus</i> , <i>i</i> , m.	

## 290. EXERCISE.

1. Our forefathers took up arms that they might be free. 2. The *Romans* took up arms not only that they might be free, but also that they might rule. 3. Cicero exhorts us to read studiously his orations. 4. Care must be taken that the punishment may not be greater than the fault. 5. I implore you to attend to your health most diligently. 6. We cannot doubt that virtue especially profits the state. 7. We cannot doubt that there were *poets* before Homer. 8. I fear that these dangers may increase. 9. It behooves us all to watch for the safety of the republic. 10. Nothing deterred Cicero from defending the republic.

## LESSON LX.

RELATIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE OR RESULT.  
[2, 13.]

## 291. LESSON FROM THE GRAMMAR.

- I. Relative Clauses of Purpose. 500 ; 500, 1.
- II. Relative Clauses of Result. 500 ; 500, 2.
- III. Special Constructions in Relative Clauses. 501.
  - 1. After Indefinite Antecedents. 501, I.
  - 2. After *Unus, Solus*, and the like. 501, II.
  - 3. After *Dignus, Indignus, Idoneus, Aptus*. 501, III.

## 292. MODELS.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| I. I sent one to state this.   | I. <i>Misi qui hoc dicēret.</i>                                   |
| II. I am not such a one as<br>to use these things.                   | II. <i>Non is sum qui his<br/>utar.</i>                           |
| III. I see nothing else which<br>we can do.                          | III. <i>Nihil aliud video,<br/>quod agere possi-<br/>mus.</i>     |
| IV. There are some who<br>are feared.                                | IV. <i>Sunt qui timeantur.</i>                                    |
| V. <i>True</i> wisdom is the only<br>thing which dispels<br>sadness. | V. <i>Vera sapientia est una,<br/>quae moestitiam<br/>pellat.</i> |
| VI. The fables are worthy to<br>be read.                             | VI. <i>Fabulae dignae sunt<br/>quae legantur.</i>                 |

## 293. REMARKS.

- 1. MODEL I. — ONE TO STATE THIS, Latin idiom, *who should state this*.

2. MODEL II. — AS TO USE, *qui utar*, lit. *who may use*.

3. MODEL III. — WHICH WE CAN DO, *quod agere possimus*, lit. *which we may be able to do*.

4. MODEL V. — THE ONLY THING, *una*, agreeing with *sapientia*.

5. MODEL VI. — WORTHY TO BE READ, *dignae quae legantur*, lit. *worthy which may be read*.

## 294. SYNONYMES.

Joy, gladness, joyousness; *gaudium*, *laetitia*, *hilaritas*.

1. *Gaudium*, *ii*, n.; JOY, THE EMOTION OF JOY, — in itself considered.

2. *Laetitia*, *ae*, f.; GLADNESS, JOY, — as shown in the countenance or in action.

3. *Hilaritas*, *atis*, f.; JOYOUSNESS, CHEERFUL, HAPPY DISPOSITION, — not a momentary feeling, but a characteristic of the temperament.

## 295. VOCABULARY.

Be elated, <i>effëror</i> , <i>effërrî</i> , <i>elätus</i> <i>sum</i> ; pass. of <i>effëro</i> .	Greatest, <i>maxîmus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> . G. 165.
Cheerfulness, <i>hilaritas</i> , <i>atis</i> , f.	Lose, <i>amitto</i> , <i>ëre</i> , <i>mîsi</i> , <i>missum</i> .
Deny, <i>nego</i> , <i>äre</i> , <i>ävi</i> , <i>ätum</i> .	On the part of, often rendered by the <i>Genitive</i> .
Excessive, <i>nîmius</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .	Perpetual, <i>perpetuus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .
Faesulae, <i>Faësülae</i> , <i>ärum</i> , f. pl.	Rejoicing, <i>laetitia</i> , <i>ae</i> , f.
Fill, <i>compleo</i> , <i>ëre</i> , <i>ëvi</i> , <i>ëtum</i> .	Sad, <i>tristis</i> , <i>e</i> .
Forever, <i>in perpetuum</i> .	Whole, <i>cunctus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .

## 296. EXERCISE.

1. *Many* states sent ambassadors to Rome to establish peace and friendship with the Roman people. 2. There



were some, both *in Rome* and *at Faesulae*, who denied that Catiline was forming a conspiracy against the republic. 3. Let us not lose our cheerfulness. 4. I fear you will lose your cheerfulness forever. 5. There were some in the temple of Jupiter Stator who were filled with the greatest joy. 6. *In so great rejoicing* on the part of the whole state, you alone are sad. 7. We cannot doubt that the king was elated with excessive joy. 8. The orations of *Cicero* are worthy to be read by all.

## LESSON LXI.

### SUBJUNCTIVE OF CONDITION.

[3, 4.]

#### 297. LESSON FROM THE GRAMMAR.

- I. Rule for the Subjunctive of Condition. 503.
  1. Condition Supplied. 503, 2.
  2. Force of Tenses. 504.
  3. *Dum, modo, dummodo*. 505.
  4. *Ac si, ut si, quasi*, etc. 506.
- II. Conditions with *Si, Nisi, Ni, Sin*. 507-510.
  1. Mixed Forms. 511.
  2. Subjunctive and Indicative. 512.

#### 298. MODELS.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>I. Mental powers <i>remain</i>,<br/>if only <i>industry</i> re-<br/>mains.</p> | <p>I. <i>Manent ingenia, mo-<br/>do permaneat in-<br/>dustria.</i></p> |
| <p>II. If I should deny it, I<br/>should speak falsely.</p>                       | <p>II. <i>Si negem, mentiar.</i></p>                                   |

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>III. You <i>cannot</i> retain your <i>manhood</i>, if you arrange all things with reference to pleasure.</p> <p>IV. No one without hope would expose himself <i>to death</i>.</p> <p>V. As if they should appropriate others' possessions to their own use.</p> <p>VI. If it was not lawful, it was not necessary.</p> <p>VII. You would do wrong, if you should not give warning.</p> <p>VIII. Eloquence would not be praised, if it accomplished nothing.</p> <p>IX. If we shun folly, let us pursue wisdom.</p> <p>X. They would have abandoned their fields, had he not sent a letter.</p> | <p>III. <i>Non potestis, voluptate omnia dirigentes, retinere virtutem.</i></p> <p>IV. <i>Nemo sine spe se offerret ad mortem.</i></p> <p>V. <i>Ut si in suam rem aliena convertant.</i></p> <p>VI. <i>Si non licebat, non necesse erat.</i></p> <p>VII. <i>Improbe feceris, nisi monueris.</i></p> <p>VIII. <i>Eloquentia non laudaretur, si nihil efficeret.</i></p> <p>IX. <i>Si stultitiam fugimus, sapientiam sequamur.</i></p> <p>X. <i>Relicturi agros erant, nisi litteras misisset.</i></p> |
|---|--|

## 299. REMARKS.

1. MODEL III. — IF YOU ARRANGE ALL THINGS WITH REFERENCE TO PLEASURE, *voluptate omnia dirigentes*, lit. *arranging all things by pleasure*. G. 503, 2.

2. MODEL IV. — Observe the position of *ad mortem*.

3. MODEL V. — TO THEIR OWN USE, *in suam rem*, lit. *into their own affair*.

4. MODEL IX. — LET US PURSUE, *sequāmur*. G. 487.

5. MODEL X. — THEY WOULD HAVE ABANDONED, *relicturi erant*, lit. *were about to abandon*. G. 512, 2, 2).

### 300. VOCABULARY.

Be willing, to wish, <i>volo, velle, volui</i> .	If only, <i>dummodo</i> , conj.
Conscript Fathers, <i>Patres Conscripti</i> , m. pl.	Leisure, at leisure, <i>otiosus, a, um</i> .
Depart, set out, <i>proficiscor, i, fec-tus sum</i> , dep.	Provide for, <i>provideo, ere, vidi, visum</i> , with dat.
Exile, <i>exsilium, ii, n</i> .	Suppress, <i>comprimo, ere, pressi, pressum</i> .
Gladly, <i>laete</i> , adv.	Tell, <i>dico, ere, dixi, dictum</i> .
Inaction, <i>inertia, ae, f</i> .	Unless, <i>nisi</i> , conj.

### 301. EXERCISE.

1. What would you have said, if Cato had been ordered to go into exile? 2. If you were willing to hear me, I would tell you. 3. I would gladly hear you, if only I were at leisure. 4. Unless you suppress this conspiracy, Conscript Fathers, you will be condemned for inaction. 5. If you (pl.) will watch for the safety of the republic, you will be praised by all the citizens. 6. If Cicero had not provided for the state, he would have been condemned by all. 7. If Catiline would only depart from the city, we should all be liberated from fear. 8. O that he had not formed this conspiracy against the republic!

## LESSON LXII.

## SUBJUNCTIVE OF CONCESSION.

[3, 7.]

## 302. LESSON FROM THE GRAMMAR.

- I. Rule for the Subjunctive of Concession. 515.
- II. Classes of Concessive Clauses. 516.
1. With *Quamquam*. 516, I.
  2. With *Licet*, *Quamvis*, *Quantumvis*, etc. 516, II.
  3. With the Compounds of *Si*. 516, III.

## 303. MODELS.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| I. Though he may deride,<br>reason will yet avail<br><i>more</i> .                             | I. <i>Licet irrideat, plus<br/>tamen ratio valebit.</i>                      |
| II. Though they understand,<br>they never speak.   | II. <i>Quamquam intelli-<br/>gunt, tamen nun-<br/>quam dicunt.</i>           |
| III. <i>Acquit</i> Verres, though<br>he confesses that he<br>has accepted moneys.              | III. <i>Absolvite Verrem, qui<br/>se fateatur pecunias<br/>cepisse.</i>      |
| IV. Though <i>pain</i> may not be<br>the greatest evil, it is<br>certainly an evil.            | IV. <i>Ne sit summum ma-<br/>lum dolor, malum<br/>certe est.</i>             |
| V. Though <i>glory</i> may not<br>possess anything in it-<br>self, yet it follows vir-<br>tue. | V. <i>Etsi nihil habeat in se<br/>gloria, tamen virtū-<br/>tem sequitur.</i> |

## 304. REMARKS.

1. MODEL III. — THOUGH HE CONFESSES, *qui fateatur*, lit. *who may confess*. G. 515, II. The verb on which an infinitive clause depends is often inserted in that clause directly after the subject, as *fateatur* after *se*. See Part Third, 601.

2. MODEL IV. — *Ne sit*. G. 516, II. 1. Observe also the order of words, as affected by emphasis.

3. MODEL V. — Emphasis places *gloria* at the end of the clause.

## 305. SYNONYMES.

Fear, alarm; *metus*, *timor*, *formido*.

1. *Metus*, *us*, m.; FEAR, A RATIONAL FEAR, — arising from real danger.

2. *Timor*, *ōris*, m.; FEAR, — a fear arising either from timidity or from imminent danger, and accordingly less under the control of reason than *metus*.

3. *Formido*, *inis*, f.; ALARM, DREAD, CONSTERNATION, — a great and overwhelming fear.

## 306. VOCABULARY.

Aid, means, <i>opes</i> , <i>opum</i> , f. pl.	G. Emolument, <i>emolumentum</i> , <i>i</i> , n.
133, 1.	Even if, <i>etiāmsi</i> , conj.
Although, <i>quamquam</i> , <i>licet</i> , <i>quāvis</i> , etc.	G. 516. Fear, <i>timor</i> , <i>ōris</i> , m.; <i>metus</i> , <i>us</i> , m.
Banish, throw off, <i>abjicio</i> , <i>ēre</i> , <i>jēci</i> , <i>jectum</i> .	Follow, <i>consequor</i> , <i>i</i> , <i>secutus sum</i> , dep.
Conceal, <i>occulto</i> , <i>āre</i> , <i>āvi</i> , <i>ātum</i> .	Honorable, <i>honestus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .
Consternation, <i>formido</i> , <i>inis</i> , f.	Right, <i>rectus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .
Disgraceful, <i>turpis</i> , <i>e</i> .	Sudden, <i>subitus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .
	Way, manner, <i>modus</i> , <i>i</i> , m.

## 307. EXERCISE.

1. The *best* men do what is right, even if they see that no emolument will follow. 2. Although they fear him, they deny it. 3. Even if they feared him, they would deny it. 4. That which is disgraceful, although it may be concealed, can in no way be honorable. 5. *With your aid*, even if we were timid, we would banish all fear. 6. Let not fear deter us from watching for the safety of the republic. 7. Let us liberate the state both from danger and from fear. 8. Let not this *sudden* consternation deter us from doing what is right.

## LESSON LXIII.

## SUBJUNCTIVE OF CAUSE AND TIME.

[3, 11.]

## 308. LESSON FROM THE GRAMMAR.

- I. Rule for the Subjunctive of Cause. 517.
  - 1. Clauses with *Quum*. 518.
  - 2. Relative Clauses denoting Cause. 519.
  - 3. Clauses with *Quod*, *Quia*, *Quoniam*, *Quando*. 520.
- II. Rule for the Subjunctive of Time with Cause. 521.
  - 1. Clauses with *Dum*, *Donec*, *Quoad*. 522.
  - 2. Clauses with *Antequam* and *Priusquam*. 523.

## 309. MODELS.

I. Since these things are  
so, proceed.

I. *Quae quum ita sint,*  
*perge.*

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| II. O the <i>power</i> of truth,<br>since it defends it-<br>self!                       | II. <i>O vis veritātis, quae<br/>se defendat!</i>                                 |
| III. I heard Zeno when I<br>was at Athens.  | III. <i>Zenōnem, quum A-<br/>thēnis essem, au-<br/>diēbam.</i>                    |
| IV. Since I have spoken<br>of the kind of war, I<br>will now speak of its<br>magnitude. | IV. <i>Quoniam de genēre<br/>belli dixi, nunc de<br/>magnitudīne di-<br/>cam.</i> |
| V. No one shuns pleasure<br>itself because it is<br>pleasure.                           | V. <i>Nemo ipsam volup-<br/>tātem, quia volup-<br/>tas sit, fugit.</i>            |
| VI. You will keep them<br>till I see you.   | VI. <i>Ea continēbis quoad<br/>te videam.</i>                                     |
| VII. While the laws were<br>in force.   | VII. <i>Dum leges vigēbant.</i>   |
| VIII. They are present be-<br>fore it is light.   | VIII. <i>Priusquam lucet,<br/>adsunt.</i>   |
| IX. Before he comes, he<br>will send a letter.  | IX. <i>Antēquam veniat,<br/>litteras mittet.</i>                                  |

### 310. REMARKS.

1. MODEL I. — *Quae quum.* G. 602, III. 1.
2. MODEL II. — SINCE IT DEFENDS, *quae defendat*, lit. *which may defend.* G. 519.
3. MODEL III. — WHEN I WAS, *quum essem.* G. 518, II. 1.
4. MODEL IV. — OF ITS MAGNITUDE, *de magnitudīne*, concerning the magnitude. The possessive *its* should not be rendered.
5. MODEL IX. — BEFORE HE COMES, *antēquam veniat.* G. 521, 1.

## 311. VOCABULARY.

Be in force, <i>vigeo, ēre, ui.</i>	Scarcely, scarcely yet, <i>vixdum,</i>
Curtius, <i>Curtius, ii, m.</i>	adv.
Decree, <i>consultum, i, n.</i> ; a decree	Since, as, <i>quum, conj.</i>
of the senate, <i>senātus consul-</i>	Strong, ample, <i>amplus, a, um</i> ; in
<i>tum.</i>	the strongest terms, <i>amplis-</i>
Drive, cast out, <i>ejicio, ēre, jēci,</i>	<i>simis verbis.</i>
<i>jectum.</i>	Thank, <i>gratias ago, ēre, egi, ac-</i>
Hate, <i>odi, odisse. G. 297, I.</i>	<i>tum.</i>
Lycurgus, <i>Lycurgus, i, m.</i>	Thanks, <i>gratiae, ārum, f. pl. G.</i>
Record, <i>perscribo, ēre, scripsi,</i>	132.
<i>scriptum.</i>	While, <i>dum, conj.</i>

## 312. EXERCISE.

1. I had scarcely read your letter when Curtius came to me. 2. They often heard *Cicero*, when they were in Rome. 3. Many hate the consul because he has driven Catiline into exile. 4. I praise the consul because he has driven this man into exile. 5. The senate thanked Cicero in the strongest terms, because he had liberated the republic from the greatest dangers. 6. Since these things are so, let us defend the consul. 7. The Lacedaemonians were brave while the laws of Lycurgus were in force. 8. Let us wait until this decree of the senate is recorded.



## LESSON LXIV.

## SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

[4, 2.]

## 313. LESSON FROM THE GRAMMAR.

- I. Rule for the Subjunctive in Indirect Questions. 525.  
 II. Single and Double Questions. 526.

## 314. MODELS.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| I. I understood what the law meant.   | I. <i>Intellexi quid sibi lex vellet.</i>   |
| II. It is uncertain <i>how long</i> the life of each one of us will be.                 | II. <i>Incertum est, quam longa nostrum cujusque vita futura sit.</i>                         |
| III. It is asked whether virtue is sought for its own worth, or for certain advantages. | III. <i>Quaeritur, virtus summe propter dignitatem, an propter fructus aliquos expetatur.</i> |
| IV. It is asked whether virtue can be produced by nature or by education.               | IV. <i>Quaeritur natura an doctrina possit effici virtus.</i>                                 |
| V. Let us inquire whether or not there was need of a fleet.                             | V. <i>Opus fuerit classe necne quaeramus.</i>   |

## 315. REMARKS.

1. MODEL I. — MEANT, *sibi vellet*, lit. *wished for itself*. For mood and tense, see G. 525; 481, II. The order *quid sibi lex* is more euphonious than *quid lex sibi*.

2. MODEL III. — WHETHER — OR, *ne* — *an*. But in models IV. and V. the particle is omitted in the first member. G. 526, II.

3. MODEL IV. — Emphasis places *virtus* at the end of the sentence.

4. MODEL V. — LET US INQUIRE, *quaerāmus*. G. 487. OR NOT, *necne*, G. 526, II. 2, 1). OF A FLEET, *classe*, G. 419, V.

### 316. VOCABULARY.

Command, <i>impēro, āre, āvi, ātum</i> .	Presume, believe, <i>credo, ēre, dīdi, dītum</i> .
Depart, go, <i>eo, ire, ivi, itum</i> .	
Difficult, <i>difficilis, e</i> .	Question, <i>quaestio, ōnis, f</i> .
Disagree, <i>dissentio, ire, sensi, sensum</i> .	Report, <i>rumor, ōris, m</i> .
False, <i>falsus, a, um</i> .	School, <i>schola, ae, f</i> .
Hesitate, <i>dubito, āre, āvi, ātum</i> .	Subject, thing, <i>res, rei, f</i> .
Important, great, <i>magnus, a, um</i> .	Think, <i>puto, āre, āvi, ātum</i> .
Inquire, <i>quaero, ēre, quaesivi</i> or <i>ii, quaesitum</i> .	Upon, concerning, <i>de</i> , prep. with abl.
Or not, <i>an non</i> ; <i>necne</i> . G. 526, II. 2, 1); 346, II. 2, 8).	Whether — not, <i>nonne</i> .
Preserve, <i>servo, āre, āvi, ātum</i> .	Whether — or, <i>utrum</i> — <i>an</i> .
	Wonder, <i>miror, āri, ātus sum, dep</i> .

### 317. EXERCISE.

1. Let us ask Catiline whether he hesitates to depart from the city. 2. Cicero asked him whether he hesitated to depart from the city at the command of the consul. 3. I wonder why philosophers disagree upon the most important subjects. 4. It is difficult to say whether this report is true or false. 5. They inquired of me whether I did not think that Cicero would preserve the republic. 6. Whether or not riches make us happy, is the question. 7. When you were in Athens, you *were* often, I presume, in the schools of the philosophers.

## LESSON LXV.

## SUBJUNCTIVE BY ATTRACTION. SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

[4, 6.]

## 318. LESSON FROM THE GRAMMAR.

- I. Subjunctive by Attraction. 527.  
 II. Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse. 529.

## 319. MODELS.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>I. I formed the plan, to depart before it was light.</p> <p>II. You were saying that you wished those things which I had done, to result prosperously.</p> | <p>I. <i>Cepi consilium ut antequam luceret exirem.</i></p> <p>II. <i>Dicēbas te velle, quae egissem feliciter evenire.</i></p> |
|---|---|

## 320. REMARKS.

1. MODEL I. — BEFORE IT WAS OR SHOULD BE LIGHT, *antequam luceret*, Subj. by Attraction because of its connection with *extrem*.

2. MODEL II. — THOSE THINGS WHICH I HAD DONE, *quae egissem*, antecedent omitted. G. 451, 1. *Egissem*, Subj. by Attraction.

## 321. SYNONYMES.

Safe, unharmed, secure ; *salvus, incolūmis, tutus*.

1. *Salvus, a, um* ; SAFE, PRESERVED, RESCUED FROM DANGER, — applicable both to persons and to things.

2. *Incolūmis, e* ; SAFE, UNHARMED, — especially applicable to persons. *Incolūmis* involves more than *salvus*. He who escapes *salvus*, escapes with his life, though not necessarily without injury ; but he who escapes *incolūmis*, escapes unhurt.

3. *Tutus, a, um* ; SECURE, FREE FROM DANGER.

### 322. VOCABULARY.

Believe, <i>credo, ěre, didi, ditum.</i>	Doubtful, <i>dubius, a, um.</i> There is
G. 385.	no doubt = it is not doubtful,
Children, <i>libĕri, ōrum, m. pl.</i> G.	<i>non dubium est.</i>
131, 1, 1).	Unharmcd, <i>incolūmis, e.</i>
Desire, <i>cupio, ěre, iui, itum.</i>	With, at the house of, <i>apud, prep.</i>
Dine, <i>coeno, āre, āvi, ātum.</i>	with acc.

### 323. EXERCISE.

1. He says that he was dining with the consul when he received your letter. 2. They say that he was reading your letter when the messenger came to him. 3. We have said that the Lacedaemonians were brave while the laws of Lycurgus were in force. 4. Did you not say that many hated Cicero because he had driven Catiline into exile? 5. I said that I praised the consul because he had driven this man into exile. 6. There is no doubt that there were many who did not believe Cicero while Catiline was in the city. 7. There is no one who does not desire that his children should be unharmed and happy. 8. The republic is at length safe. 9. There is no doubt that this city is secure.

## LESSON LXVI.

## INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

[4, 10.]

## 324. LESSON FROM THE GRAMMAR.

- I. Moods in the Oratio Obliqua. 530, 531.
- II. Tenses in the Oratio Obliqua. 532.
- III. Pronouns in the Oratio Obliqua. 533.

## 325. MODELS.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| I. Democritus says that there are <i>innumerable worlds</i> .                                      | I. <i>Democritus dicit innumera-<br/>biles esse<br/>mundos.</i>                                 |
| II. They say that Plato entertained the same opinion of the immortality of the soul as Pythagoras. | II. <i>Platōnem ferunt de<br/>animōrum aeterni-<br/>tate sensisse idem<br/>quod Pythagōram.</i> |
| III. Hippias boasted that there was nothing in any art which he did not know.                      | III. <i>Hippias gloriātus est<br/>nihil esse ulla in<br/>arte quod ipse nes-<br/>cīret.</i>     |

## 326. REMARKS.

1. MODEL II. — OF (on the subject of) THE IMMORTALITY OF THE SOUL (of souls), *de animōrum aeternitāte*. G. 602, II. 3. ENTER-TAINED THE SAME OPINION AS PYTHAGORAS, Latin idiom, *thought the same thing which Pythagoras* (thought). *Pythagōram*, subject of *sensisse* understood. G. 551, 5.

2. MODEL III. — WHICH HE DID NOT KNOW, *quod ipse nescīret*. For mood and tense of *nescīret*, see G. 531; 481, II. 1.

## 327. SYNONYMES.

Courage, fortitude; *virtus, fortitudo*.

1. *Virtus, ūtis, f.*; COURAGE, VALOR, ENERGY, — as shown in action.

2. *Fortitudo, inis, f.*; FORTITUDE, FIRMNESS, — as shown in resistance.

## 328. VOCABULARY.

Africa, *Africa, ae, f.*

Ask, inquire, *quaero, ěre, quaesivi, situm*; it is asked, *quaeritur, quaesitum est*.

Attract, *allicio, ěre, lexi, lectum*.

Compel, *cogo, ěre, coegi, coactum*.

Fortitude, *fortitudo, inis, f.*

Go from, *exeo, ěre, ii, itum*.

Here, *hic, adv.*

Mention, *commemoro, are, avi, atum*.

Second time, *it̃rum, adv.*

There, *illic, adv.*

Why, *quid*. G. 380, 2.

## 329. EXERCISE.

1. Why should *I* here mention the Roman senators?  
 2. He asked why he should there mention the Roman senators. 3. We have said that the orations of Cicero are worthy to be read by all. 4. It is *often* asked whether the letters of Cicero are worthy to be read a second time. 5. They say that Catiline would not have gone from the city unless he had feared the consul. 6. Your brother says that he will write to you when he comes to Rome. 7. Cicero says that Hannibal was compelled by the valor of Scipio to return into Africa. 8. There is no doubt that virtue attracts to itself the good and wise. 9. It is the part of fortitude to bear all things bravely.

## LESSON LXVII.

## IMPERATIVE.

[4, 11.]

## 330. LESSON FROM THE GRAMMAR.

- I. Tenses of the Imperative. 534.
- II. Use of the Imperative. 535-538.
  - 1. Circumlocutions. 535, 1.
  - 2. Imperative supplied. 535, 3; 487; 488, II.
  - 3. Imperative in Prohibitions. 538, 1 and 2.

## 331. MODELS.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| I. Devote yourselves to study.                                | I. <i>In studium incum-<br/>bĭte.</i>                |
| II. If I have committed any offence against you, pardon me.   | II. <i>Si quid in te peccāvi,<br/>ignosce.</i>       |
| III. You shall consider the subject.                          | III. <i>Rem penditōte.</i>                           |
| IV. The safety of the people shall be the <i>supreme</i> law. | IV. <i>Salus popŭli suprĕma<br/>lex esto.</i>        |
| V. Do not wish that which cannot be done.                     | V. <i>Nolĭte id velle quod<br/>fiĕri non potest.</i> |
| VI. Let them be happy.  | VI. <i>Sint beāti.</i>                               |
| VII. If anything shall happen, you will let me know it.       | VII. <i>Si quid accidĕrit,<br/>facies ut sciam.</i>  |

### 332. REMARKS.

1. MODEL V. — DO NOT WISH, *nolite velle*, lit. *be unwilling to wish*. G. 535, 1, 3).

2. MODEL VI. — LET THEM BE = may they be, *sint*. G. 487.

3. MODEL VII. — SHALL HAPPEN = shall have happened, i. e. before you let me know, *accidērit*, Fut. Perf. G. 473. YOU WILL LET ME KNOW, Latin idiom, *you will make (cause) that I may know*. G. 492, 1. *Facies*, Fut. Indic. for the Imperative. G. 535, 3, 2).

### 333. VOCABULARY.

Conspirators, <i>conjurāti</i> , <i>orum</i> , m. pl.	Nor, with imperatives, <i>neve</i> , adv. Oppose, <i>obsto</i> , <i>āre</i> , <i>stīti</i> , <i>stātum</i> . G. 386.
Devote one's self to, <i>incumbo</i> , <i>ēre</i> , <i>cubui</i> , <i>cubitum</i> , in with acc.	Peril, <i>pericūlum</i> , <i>i</i> , n.
Highest public welfare, <i>summa res</i> <i>publica</i> .	Personal, of one's self alone, gen. of <i>solus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> . G. 149.
Liberal, <i>liberālis</i> , <i>e</i> .	Philosophy, <i>philosophia</i> , <i>ae</i> , <i>f</i> .
Neglect, <i>negligo</i> , <i>ēre</i> , <i>lexi</i> , <i>lectum</i> .	Violate, <i>violo</i> , <i>āre</i> , <i>avi</i> , <i>atum</i> .

### 334. EXERCISE.

1. Let us devote ourselves to liberal studies. 2. Know, Conscript Fathers, that Catiline has formed a conspiracy against the republic. 3. Do not think that the consul will neglect the highest public welfare. 4. Do not doubt that this can be done. 5. Do not hesitate to do this. 6. Let me know what the *conspirators* are doing. 7. Let us not violate the laws, nor oppose the decrees of the senate. 8. Remember that Cicero preserved the republic at his own personal peril. 9. Do you not think that these books on philosophy are worthy to be read a second time?



## LESSON LXVIII.

INFINITIVE.<sup>1</sup>

## 335. LESSON FROM THE GRAMMAR.

- I. Tenses of the Infinitive. 540-544.
- II. Subject of the Infinitive. 545.
- III. Predicate after the Infinitive. 546.
  - 1. Predicate attracted. 547; 547, I. and II.
- IV. Infinitive as Subject. 549.
  - 1. Personal Construction for Impersonal. 549, 4.

## 336. MODELS.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| I. I hope that <i>our</i> friendship does not need witnesses. | I. <i>Spero nostram amicitiam non egere testibus.</i> |
| II. I desire both to be grateful and to be so regarded.       | II. <i>Volo et esse et haberi gratus.</i>             |
| III. No one can be <i>happy</i> without virtue.               | III. <i>Beātus esse sine virtute nemo potest.</i>     |
| IV. To defraud is base.                                       | IV. <i>Fraudāre turpe est.</i>                        |
| V. It is true that there is friendship among the good.        | V. <i>Verum est, amicitiam inter bonos esse.</i>      |
| VI. <i>True</i> praise is thought to be due to virtue alone.  | VI. <i>Vera laus debēri virtuti unī putātur.</i>      |

<sup>1</sup> The remaining Exercises in this work, although based entirely upon Ciceronian models, may accompany the reading of any Latin author.

VII. Demosthenes is said to  
have heard *Plato*.

VII. *Platōnem audivisse*  
*Demosthēnes dicī-*  
*tur.*

### 337. REMARKS.

1. MODEL I. — DOES NOT NEED, *non egere*. After verbs of *hoping*, the Infinitive is generally in the Future tense; but it is in the Present when the action itself belongs to Present time.

2. MODEL II. — BOTH TO BE GRATEFUL AND TO BE SO REGARDED. Latin idiom, *both to be and to be regarded grateful*.

3. MODEL VII. — Emphasis places *Platōnem* at the beginning of the sentence; accordingly the subject is placed later in the sentence—here directly before its verb.

### 338. SYNONYMES.

In vain, to no purpose; *frustra, nequidquam*.

1. *Frustra*; IN VAIN, WITH DISAPPOINTMENT,—used with reference to the disappointment of the person rather than to the failure of the undertaking.

2. *Nequidquam*; IN VAIN, TO NO PURPOSE,—used with reference to the failure of the undertaking.

### 339. VOCABULARY.

Bring, bear, *fero, ferre, tuli, latum*.

Purpose, desire, *sententia, ae, f*.  
According to one's desire, *ex sententia*.

Rejoice, *gaudeo, ēre, gavisus sum*.  
G. 272, 3.

Sail, to sail, *navigo, āre, āvi, ātum*.

Voyage, to have a prosperous voyage, *ex sententia navigāre*, lit. *to sail according to one's opinion, or desire*.

**340. EXERCISE.**

1. Did you not say that philosophers often disagree?  
 2. I said that philosophers disagree upon the most important subjects. 3. They all say that virtue makes men happy. 4. It is certain that virtue can make us happy. 5. The consul is said to have written this book. 6. Do you not wish to be happy? 7. We wish to be not only happy, but also good and wise. 8. God does nothing in vain. 9. *We* do many things in vain. 10. They brought *us* aid to no purpose. 11. Cicero says that Cato was called *wise*. 12. It is permitted *us* to be wise. 13. They rejoice that the consul has had a prosperous voyage.

**LESSON LXIX.****INFINITIVE — CONTINUED.****341. LESSON FROM THE GRAMMAR.**

- I. Infinitive as Object. 550.  
 1. With Subject Accusative. 551; 551, I.—III.  
 2. Without Subject Accusative. 552; 552, 1 and 2.  
 II. Infinitive in Special Constructions. 553; 553, I. and II.

**342. MODELS.**

I. Let us consider that the  
 glory of *virtue* is eter-  
 nal.

I. *Cogitemus virtutis glo-*  
*riam esse sempiter-*  
*nam.*

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| II. No art can imitate the skill of nature.                    | II. <i>Nulla ars imitāri solertiam naturae potest.</i>      |
| III. That which is good can be made better by instruction.     | III. <i>Quae bona sunt, fieri meliōra possunt doctrīna.</i> |
| IV. We desire to avoid these things.                           | IV. <i>Haec vitāre cupimus.</i>                             |
| V. The first step towards wisdom is to know one's self.        | V. <i>Primus gradus ad sapientiam est se ipsum novisse.</i> |
| VI. The oracle that Athens would be victorious had been given. | VI. <i>Oracūlum datum erat victrīces Athēnas fore.</i>      |

## 343. REMARKS.

1. MODEL III. — THAT WHICH IS GOOD, i. e. whatever is good, *quae bona sunt*, lit. *what things are good*. The Latin uses the plural because the statement is general, and is not confined to a single object. The antecedent, which is the subject of *possunt*, is omitted. G. 451, 1. Emphasis places *doctrina* at the end of the sentence.

2. MODEL V. — TO KNOW ONE'S SELF, *se ipsum novisse*, Predicate after *est*. G. 553, I. *Novisse*, Perfect in form, but Present in sense. G. 297, I. 2.

3. MODEL VI. — THAT ATHENS WOULD BE VICTORIOUS, *victrīces Athēnas fore*, in apposition with *oracūlum*. G. 553, II.

## 344. SYNONYMES.

Opponent, enemy; *adversarius*, *hostis*, *inimicus*.

1. *Adversarius*, ii, m.; OPPONENT, ADVERSARY, — the generic word for an opponent of any kind, whether in war or in peace.

2. *Hostis, is, m.*; PUBLIC ENEMY; ENEMY, — in war.

3. *Inimicus, i, m.*; PERSONAL OR PRIVATE ENEMY, PERSONAL FOE.

### 345. VOCABULARY.

Arrive, come, <i>venio, ire, veni, ventum.</i>	Impose upon, <i>impōno, ěre, posui, positum.</i>
Be unwilling, <i>nolo, nolle, nolui.</i> G. 293.	Opponent, <i>adversarius, ii, m.</i>
By, through, <i>per</i> , prep. with acc.	Profess, <i>profiteor, ěri, fessus sum, dep.</i>
Exceedingly, <i>vehementer</i> , adv.	Refute, <i>refuto, ěre, āvi, ātum.</i>
Foe, <i>inimicus, i, m.</i>	Rumor, <i>rumor, ōris, m.</i>
Force, <i>vis, vis</i> , f. G. 88, III. 3.	Visit, <i>viso, ěre, i, um.</i>
	Young man, <i>adolescens, entis, m.</i>

### 346. EXERCISE.

1. There are some who profess to be wise. 2. No one is an orator who is unwilling to be like Demosthenes. 3. The young men wished to hear Demosthenes. 4. We all can be useful. 5. The tyrant is said to have imposed laws upon the state by force. 6. I desire to visit Rome and Athens. 7. I rejoice exceedingly that you have arrived safe in Italy, and that you have had a prosperous voyage. 8. There were some who favored the enemies of their country. 9. We call them not foes, but enemies. 10. Opponents must be refuted. 11. The rumor was, that the enemy had been conquered by Caesar. 12. I wonder at this, that you have not yet come to Rome.

## LESSON LXX.

## SUBJECT AND OBJECT CLAUSES.

## 347. LESSON FROM THE GRAMMAR.

- I. Four Forms distinguished. 554, I.-IV.
- II. Forms of Subject Clauses. 555, 556.
- III. Forms of Object Clauses. 557, 558.

## 348. MODELS.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| I. It is asked why they disagree.  | I. <i>Quaeritur cur dis-sentiant.</i>                                       |
| II. That you are of a cheerful spirit greatly delights me.               | II. <i>Te hilari animo esse valde me juvat.</i>                             |
| III. The result is, that every one is delighted.                         | III. <i>Fit ut quisque de-lectetur.</i>                                     |
| IV. It is a fault that they bestow too much study upon obscure subjects. | IV. <i>Vitium est quod nimis magnum studium in res obscuras conferrunt.</i> |
| V. I know not what is to be done.  | V. <i>Quid agendum sit nescio.</i>  |
| VI. I wonder that you write nothing to me.                               | VI. <i>Miror te ad me nihil scribere.</i>                                   |
| VII. The sun causes all things to bloom.                                 | VII. <i>Sol efficit ut omnia floreat.</i>                                   |

VIII. I grieved that I had  
lost the companion  
of my labor.

VIII. *Dolēbam quod con-*  
*sortem labōris*  
*amisēram.*

### 349. REMARKS.

1. It will be observed that, in the first four models, the indirect question, the infinitive clause, and the clauses with *ut* and *quod*, are all used as *subjects*, while in the other models the corresponding clauses are all used as *objects*.

2. MODEL III. — THE RESULT IS — it is effected, it comes to pass, *fit*. For mood in *delectetur*, see G. 495, 2.

3. MODEL VII. — CAUSES ALL THINGS TO BLOOM, Latin idiom, *effects that all things may bloom*.

### 350. VOCABULARY.

Absurd, *absurdus, a, um*.

Also; I, he, she, &c., also, *idem*,  
*eadem, idem*; lit. *the same*.

Apparel, *vestitus, us, m*.

As, after *tam, quam*, adv.

Be the slave of, *servio, ire, ivi*,  
*itum*. G. 385.

Civil, *civilis, e*.

Costly, *pretiosus, a, um*.

Happen, *fio, fieri, factus sum*. G.  
294.

Indeed, *enim*, conj.

Knowledge, *scientia, ae, f*.

Law, *jus, juris, n*.; civil law, *jus*  
*civile*.

Of greater value, *pluris*. G. 402,  
III. 1.

Show, *ostendo, ēre, i, tensum*.

So much, *tantopere*, adv.

Some — others, *alii — alii*. G. 459.

That, in that, *quod*, conj.

Whether, in double questions,  
*utrum*; *ne*, enclitic. G. 526,  
II.

### 351. EXERCISE.

1. You will inquire of us why we are so much delighted with the study of philosophy. 2. What, indeed, is so absurd as to be delighted with costly apparel? 3. Py-

thagoras says that some men are the slaves of glory, others of money. 4. He also says that philosophers are students of wisdom. 5. It is my duty to show what I think. 6. It is my duty both to show what I think and to defend what you have done. 7. The question is asked whether eloquence or a knowledge of the civil law is of the greater value. 8. He boasted that he had conquered the enemy in many battles. 9. It often happens that men are delighted with glory.

## LESSON LXXI.

## GERUNDS.

## 352. LESSON FROM THE GRAMMAR.

- I. Gerunds and Gerundives. 559-562.
- II. Genitive of Gerunds and Gerundives. 563.
- III. Dative of Gerunds and Gerundives. 564.
- IV. Accusative of Gerunds and Gerundives. 565.

## 353. MODELS.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>I. The power of <i>speech</i> enables us to teach others those things which we know.</p> | <p>I. <i>Eloquendi vis efficit ut ea quae scimus alios docere possimus.</i></p> |
| <p>II. <i>There have been formed</i> plans for destroying the city.</p>                     | <p>II. <i>Inita sunt consilia urbis delendae.</i></p>                           |
| <p>III. The season is suitable for gathering fruits.</p>                                    | <p>III. <i>Tempus demetendis fructibus accommodatum est.</i></p>                |



IV. The day will furnish something for meditation.

IV. *Dies aliquid ad cogitandum dabit.*

V. He assigned the citizens to *Gabinus* to put to death.

V. *Attribuit cives interficiendos Gabinio.*

### 354. REMARKS..

1. MODEL I. — THE POWER OF SPEECH, *eloquendi vis*, lit. the power of speaking. WE KNOW, *scimus*, not attracted into the Subjunctive. See G. 527, 2, 1).

2. MODEL II. — PLANS FOR DESTROYING THE CITY, *consilia urbis delendae*, lit. plans of the city to be destroyed. For *urbis delendae* we may use *urbem delendi*.

3. MODEL V. — TO PUT TO DEATH, OR TO BE PUT TO DEATH, *interficiendos*, agreeing with *cives*. See G. 565, 3.

### 355. SYNONYMES.

Mind, soul, intellect, talent; *animus, mens, ingenium*.

1. *Animus, i, m.*; MIND, SOUL, — especially as the seat of the emotions.

2. *Mens, mentis, f.*; THE INTELLECT, THE UNDERSTANDING, THE REASONING FACULTY.

3. *Ingenium, ii, n.*; TALENT, MENTAL ENDOWMENT.

### 356. VOCABULARY.

Abandon, *relinquo, ere, liqui, lic-  
tum.*

Accumulate, trans., *augeo, ere,*

• *auxi, auctum.*

Assign, *tribuo, ere, i, atum.*

Bestow upon, *impertio, ire, tui or  
ii, itum.*

Desire, *libido, inis, f.*

Endowed with, <i>praeditus, a, um.</i>	Rejoice, <i>laetor, āri, ātus sum.</i>
For, after <i>idoneus, ad</i> , prep. with acc.	Secure, cause, conciliate, <i>concilio,</i> <i>āre, āvi, ātum.</i>
Furnish, <i>orno, āre, āvi, ātum.</i>	Sense, <i>sensus, us, m.</i>
Government, <i>regnum, i, n.</i>	Strengthen, nourish, <i>alo, ēre, alui,</i> <i>altum.</i>
Labor, <i>labor, ōris, m.</i>	Suitable, <i>idoneus, a, um.</i>
Mind, soul, <i>animus, i, m.</i>	Talent, <i>ingenium, ii, n.</i>
Nature, <i>natura, ae, f.</i>	Torture, <i>crucio, āre, āvi, ātum.</i>
Object, thing, <i>res, rei, f.</i>	Understanding, <i>mens, mentis, f.</i>
Perceive, <i>percipio, ēre, cēpi, cep-</i> <i>tum.</i>	Very much, <i>plurimum, adv.</i>
Plunder, <i>diripio, ēre, ripui, rep-</i> <i>tum.</i>	Well, <i>bene, adv.</i>

## 357. EXERCISE.

1. Wisdom is the art of living well and happily. 2. I rejoice that you are desirous of securing peace among the citizens. 3. Avaricious men are tortured, not only by the desire of accumulating, but also by the fear of losing. 4. Cicero bestowed his labor upon the work of saving the republic. 5. Nature has furnished the mind with senses suitable for perceiving objects. 6. There were some who abandoned their country itself to be plundered. 7. What is better than a soul endowed with virtue? 8. Great talent, even if it is not strengthened by learning, often avails very much. 9. Cicero says that the government of the whole mind has been assigned to the understanding.

## LESSON LXXII.

## GERUNDS AND SUPINES.

## 358. LESSON FROM THE GRAMMAR.

- I. Ablative of Gerunds and Gerundives. 566.
- II. Supine in *um*. 567-569.
  - 1. Its place supplied. 569, 4.
- III. Supine in *u*. 570.
  - 1. Its place supplied. 570, 3.

## 359. MODELS.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| I. The mind is nourished by learning.                                 | I. <i>Mens discendo alitur.</i>                                   |
| II. No art is able by imitation to attain the skill of nature.        | II. <i>Nulla ars sollertiam naturae consequi potest imitando.</i> |
| III. They spend all their time in learning.                           | III. <i>Omne tempus in discendo consumunt.</i>                    |
| IV. I was then thinking of (concerning) sending the boys into Greece. | IV. <i>De puëris in Graeciam transportandis tum cogitabam.</i>    |
| V. Verres sends to ask for the vessels.                               | V. <i>Verres mittit rogatum vasa.</i>                             |
| VI. It seems difficult to say what the cause is.                      | VI. <i>Difficile dictu videtur quae causa sit.</i>                |

## 360. REMARKS.

1. MODEL III. — ALL THEIR TIME, *omne tempus*. The possessive is unnecessary.

2. MODEL IV. — OF (about, concerning) SENDING THE BOYS INTO GREECE, *de puëris in Graeciam transportandis*, lit. *concerning the boys to be transported into Greece*.

## 361. VOCABULARY.

Commit, commit to memory, <i>edisco</i> , <i>ēre, didici</i> .	Requite a favor, <i>gratiam refēro</i> , <i>ferre, tūli, lātum</i> .
Exercise, <i>exerceo</i> , <i>ēre, ui, itum</i> .	Salute, <i>salūto, āre, āvi, ātum</i> .
Gratitude, <i>gratia</i> , <i>ae, f</i> .	Spend, <i>consumo</i> , <i>ēre, sumpsi</i> , <i>sumptum</i> .
Hearer, <i>audiens, entis</i> , <i>m. and f</i> .	Understand, <i>cognosco</i> , <i>ēre, nōvi</i> , <i>nītum</i> .
Leisure, <i>otium</i> , <i>ii, n</i> .	Word for word, <i>ad verbum</i> ; lit. <i>to</i> <i>a word</i> .
Memory, <i>memoria</i> , <i>ae, f</i> .	
More, <i>magis</i> , <i>adv. G. 170</i> .	
Necessary, <i>necessarius</i> , <i>a, um</i> .	

## 362. EXERCISE.

1. We all have spent much time in reading. 2. Cicero spent much time in reading the orators and poets. 3. That day was spent in reading; there was no leisure for writing. 4. The orator spent his leisure in writing history. 5. Let the memory be exercised by committing word for word the orations of Cicero. 6. He is the best orator who by his speaking both informs and delights the minds of his hearers. 7. No duty is more necessary than that of requiting a favor. 8. The ambassadors have come to salute the king. 9. The orations of Cicero are easy to understand.

## LESSON LXXIII.

## PARTICIPLES.

## 363. LESSON FROM THE GRAMMAR.

- I. Tenses of Participles. 571-574.  
 II. Use of Participles. 575-581.

## 364. MODELS.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| I. <i>Every</i> evil is in the beginning easily suppressed.                      | I. <i>Omnem alium nascens facile opprimitur.</i>                   |
| II. The sun by its rising causes the day.  | II. <i>Sol oriens diem conficit.</i>                               |
| III. Aeschines, when condemned, betook himself to Rhodes.                        | III. <i>Aeschines damnatus se Rhodum contulit.</i>                 |
| IV. I should think unpopularity incurred by virtue, not unpopularity, but glory. | IV. <i>Invidiam virtute partam gloriam, non invidiam, putarem.</i> |
| V. The mind, though it does not see itself, discerns other things.               | V. <i>Animus se non videns alia cernit.</i>                        |
| VI. He assigned us to Cethæus to slaughter.                                      | VI. <i>Attribuit nos trucidandos Cethæo.</i>                       |
| VII. Homer lived before the founding of Rome.                                    | VII. <i>Homærus fuit ante Romam conditam.</i>                      |

## 365. REMARKS.

1. MODEL I. — IN THE BEGINNING, *nascens*, lit. *arising, beginning*.  
 2. MODEL II. — BY ITS RISING, *oriens*, lit. *rising*.

3. MODEL III. — WHEN CONDEMNED, *damnātus*, lit. *having been condemned*.

4. MODEL V. — THOUGH IT DOES NOT SEE, *non videns*, lit. *not seeing*.

5. MODEL VI. — TO SLAUGHTER, *trucidandos*, lit. *to be slaughtered*.

6. MODEL VII. — BEFORE THE FOUNDING OF ROME, *ante Romam conditam*, lit. *before Rome founded*.

### 366. VOCABULARY.

Be born, <i>nascor</i> , <i>i</i> , <i>natus sum</i> , dep.	letter. Also <i>epistōla a me</i> , etc.
Born for, <i>natus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> , <i>ad</i> with acc.	Myself, yourself, &c., intensive, <i>ipse</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .
Dated, <i>datus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> ; lit. <i>given</i> .	Reward, <i>praemium</i> , <i>ii</i> , <i>n</i> .
Deed, <i>factum</i> , <i>i</i> , <i>n</i> ; lit. <i>thing done</i> ; good deed, <i>rectefactum</i> ; lit. <i>thing rightly done</i> .	Save, <i>conseruo</i> , <i>āre</i> , <i>āvi</i> , <i>ātum</i> .
Eternal, <i>sempiternus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .	Seek, pursue, <i>sequor</i> , <i>i</i> , <i>secūtus sum</i> , dep.
Hand, <i>manus</i> , <i>us</i> , <i>f</i> .	So, <i>tam</i> , adv.; not so much — as, <i>non tam — quam</i> .
Hero, <i>vir</i> , <i>viri</i> , <i>m</i> .	Spend (of time), <i>ago</i> , <i>ēre</i> , <i>egi</i> , <i>actum</i> .
Influence, induce, <i>indūco</i> , <i>ēre</i> , <i>duxi</i> , <i>ductum</i> .	Think, <i>arbitror</i> , <i>āri</i> , <i>ātus sum</i> , dep.
Letter from me, you, &c., <i>epistōla mea</i> , <i>tua</i> , etc.; lit. <i>my</i> , &c.,	Truth, <i>verum</i> , <i>i</i> , <i>n</i> .

### 367. EXERCISE.

1. The recollection of a well-spent life is eternal. 2. This brave hero, born for glory, has saved the republic. 3. I have received from you two letters dated at Rome. 4. Let us believe them when they speak the truth. 5. I think that you have never before read a letter from me, unless written by my own hand. 6. *Wise* men do not seek the rewards of good deeds, so much as good deeds

themselves. 7. The Aeduans, having accomplished these things, began to favor Caesar. 8. The Belgians, influenced by the love of *glory*, and relying upon their valor, waged *many* wars with the Germans.

## LESSON LXXIV.

### PARTICLES.

#### 368. LESSON FROM THE GRAMMAR.

- I. Use of Adverbs. 582-585.
- II. Use of Prepositions. 586; 432-437.
- III. Use of Coördinate Conjunctions. 587.

#### 369. MODELS.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| I. Furius Philus spoke Latin extremely well.                 | I. <i>Furius Philus perbene Latine loquebatur.</i>     |
| II. I eagerly await your letter.                             | II. <i>Litteras tuas vehementer exspecto.</i>          |
| III. I will most carefully perform what I promise you.       | III. <i>Quae tibi promitto, diligentissime faciam.</i> |
| IV. I will write on this subject.                            | IV. <i>Hac super re scribam.</i>                       |
| V. These things have taken place within ten years.           | V. <i>Haec intra decem annos facta sunt.</i>           |
| VI. Understanding, reason, and counsel are found in old men. | VI. <i>Mens et ratio et consilium in senibus est.</i>  |

VII. Pardon me that I write  
to you so much and  
so often.

VII. *Mihi ignosce quod  
ad te scribo tam  
multa toties.*

### 370. REMARKS.

1. MODEL I. — LATIN, *Latine*, lit. *in Latin*.

2. MODEL II. — YOUR LETTER, *litteras tuas* or *epistolam tuam*. See Synonyms, 200.

3. MODEL VI. — ARE FOUND, *est*. In Latin the verb *sum* is much more freely used than the English verb *to be*. For the number of the verb *est*, see G. 463, I. For the use of *et* — *et*, see G. 587, I. 5.

4. MODEL VII. — SO MUCH AND SO OFTEN, *tam multa toties*, lit. *so many things so often*.

### 371. SYNONYMES.

Temple; *templum*, *fanum*, *aedes*.

1. *Templum*, *i*, n.; TEMPLE, — the generic word for temple with all its sacred environs, but applied especially to the temples of the principal gods.

2. *Fanum*, *i*, n.; TEMPLE, SANCTUARY, — regarded as a consecrated edifice — applied especially to the inferior gods.

3. *Aedes*, *is*, f.; TEMPLE, — regarded simply as an edifice.

### 372. VOCABULARY.

Above, *supra*, adv.

Anger, *iracundia*, *ae*, f.

Be wont, *soleo*, *ere*, *solitus sum*. G.  
272, 3.

Bear, *fero*, *ferre*, *tuli*, *latum*.

Build, make, *facio*, *ere*, *feci*, *factum*.

Excellently, *excellenter*, adv.

Honestly, *honeste*, adv.

Impudence, *impudentia*, *ae*, f.



Obstinacy, *pertinacia*, *ae*, *f*.

Pompey, *Pomptius*, *ii*, *m*.

Refute, *refello*, *ere*, *felli*.

Sacred, *sanctus*, *a*, *um*.

Temple, *templum*, *i*, *n*.; *aedes*, *is*,  
*f*.; *fanum*, *i*, *n*.

Without, *sine*, prep. with *abl*.

Worship, *venëror*, *ari*, *atus sum*,  
*dep*.

### 373. EXERCISE.

1. There is no doubt that the good and wise live well and happily. 2. To live well and happily is to live honestly and rightly. 3. The Romans bore this calamity bravely and wisely. 4. All these things were done bravely and excellently. 5. Let us always be prepared to refute without obstinacy, and to be refuted without anger. 6. Pompey, Scipio, and Caesar conquered the enemy in many battles. 7. I have said above, that the senate had assembled in the temple of Jupiter Stator. 8. *In this most sacred temple* the Romans were wont to worship Jupiter. 9. The Athenians built a temple to Impudence.

## LESSON LXXV.

### PARTICLES — CONTINUED.

### 374. LESSON FROM THE GRAMMAR.

- I. Subordinate Conjunctions. 588.  
II. Interjections. 589, 590.

### 375. MODELS.

I. I did this while it was  
lawful.

I. *Hoc feci, dum li-*  
*cuit.*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| II. It is as you desired.  | II. <i>Ut optasti, ita est.</i>                          |
| III. He is a <i>great</i> orator, if not the <i>greatest</i> .             | III. <i>Is magnus orātor est, si non maximus.</i>        |
| IV. I exhort you to read these books on philosophy.                        | IV. <i>Te hortor ut hos de philosophia libros legas.</i> |
| V. You had inquired whether I did not think that the truth had been found. | V. <i>Quaesiēras nonne putārem verum inventum esse.</i>  |
| VI. Lo, your letter!   | VI. <i>Ecce tuae littērae!</i>                           |
| VII. O, deceptive hopes!   | VII. <i>O spes fallāces!</i>                             |
| VIII. O, the very great power of error!                                    | VIII. <i>O vim maximam errōris!</i>                      |

## 376. REMARKS.

1. MODEL IV. — THESE BOOKS ON PHILOSOPHY, *hos de philosophia libros*. The rule for the place of the Genitive, G. 598, 3, is applicable to the Acc. or Abl. with a Preposition, when similarly used.

2. MODEL VI. — LO, YOUR LETTER! *ecce tuae littērae!* For the Nominative, *littērae*, see G. 367, 3; 381, 3.

## 377. SYNONYMES.

Wall; *murus, paries, moenia*.

1. *Murus*, *i*, m.; WALL, — the generic term for a wall of any kind.

2. *Paries*, *pariētis*, m.; THE WALL OF A HOUSE; THE WALL OF ANY BUILDING.

3. *Moenia*, *ium*, n. pl.; THE WALLS OF A CITY, CITY WALLS.

## 378. VOCABULARY.

As soon as, *quum primum*.

Because, *quia*, conj.

Cover, to clothe, adorn, *vestio*, *ire*,  
*ivi* or *ii*, *itum*.

First, *primum*, adv.

For = about, concerning, *de*, prep.  
with abl.

Inner, *interior*, *ius*. G. 166.

More, *plus*, *pluris*. G. 165, 1.

Paint, *pingo*, *ere*, *pinxi*, *pictum*.

Painting, *tabula picta*; lit. *painted*  
*tablet*.

Practical knowledge, experience,  
*usus*, *us*, m.

Surround, *cingo*, *ere*, *cinxi*, *cinctum*.

Tablet, *tabula*, *ae*, f.

The = that, emphatic, *ille*, *a*, *ud*.

Unhappy, *infelix*, *icis*.

Wall, *murus*, *i*, m.; *moenia*, *ium*,  
n. pl., G. 131, 1, 4); *paries*,  
*etis*, m. Walls of the city,  
city walls, *moenia*; walls of  
my, your, &c., own house, *mei*,  
etc., *parietes*; lit. *my walls*.

Wonderful, *mirus*, *a*, *um*.

## 379. EXERCISE.

1. Marcus Cato was called wise because he had a practical knowledge of many things. 2. I will write more, if I have more leisure. 3. As soon as I came to Rome, I wrote to your father. 4. I exhort you to read studiously, not only these orations, but also these books on philosophy. 5. *Within the walls of the city* we have nothing to fear. 6. *We* must defend the *city walls*. 7. Cicero feared for his life within the walls of his own house. 8. The enemy were surrounding this place with a wall. 9. O, *your wonderful* memory, Marcus! 10. O, that *unhappy* day on which Sulla was made consul! 11. The inner walls of the temple were covered *with paintings*.

## LESSON LXXVI.

## FORMS FOR EXPRESSING PURPOSE.

## 380. LESSON FROM THE GRAMMAR.

- I. The Subjunctive with a Conjunction — *ut, ne*, etc. 489.
- II. The Subjunctive with a Relative. 500.
- III. The Accusative (especially of the Gerund) with *ad*.<sup>1</sup>  
565, 3; 408, 4.
- IV. The Genitive with *Causa, Gratia*, etc. 395; 414, 2, 3).
- V. The Supine in *um*. 569.
- VI. The Participle. 578, V.

## 381. MODELS.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| I. I explained my opinion,<br>that I might ascertain<br>your judgment.            | I. <i>Explicāvi sententiam<br/>meam, tuum judici-<br/>um ut cognoscērem.</i> |
| II. Nature gave reason to<br>man that he might be<br>ruled by it.                 | II. <i>Natūra homīni ratiō-<br/>nem dedit, qua rege-<br/>rētur.</i>          |
| III. It has been set before me<br>for imitation.                                  | III. <i>Ad imitandum mihi<br/>propositum est.</i>                            |
| IV. We have written many<br>things to you for the<br>purpose of exhorting<br>you. | IV. <i>Multa ad te cohör-<br/>tandi gratia scripsī-<br/>mus.</i>             |

---

<sup>1</sup> The use of the Gerund in any other construction to express purpose, as in 563, 5, and 564, 2, should not be imitated by the learner.

V. We have come to remind you, not to importune you.

V. *Admonitum venimus te, non flagitatum.*

VI. Lentulus assigned the city to Cassius to burn.

VI. *Lentulus attribuit urbem inflammandam Cassio.*

### 382. REMARKS.

1. MODEL I. — YOUR JUDGMENT, *tuum iudicium*. Emphasis places these words at the beginning of the clause, even before *ut*. See G. 602, III. 1.

2. MODEL II. — THAT HE MIGHT BE RULED BY IT, *qua regeretur*, Relative clause expressing purpose, lit. *by which he might be ruled*.

3. MODEL IV. — FOR THE PURPOSE OF EXHORTING YOU, *cohortandi gratia*. *Te* is omitted because expressed just before. The Genitive precedes *gratia*.

4. MODEL V. — TO REMIND, *admonitum*, Supine. See G. 569. But *ut* with the Subjunctive might be used instead of the Supine.

### 383. VOCABULARY.

Achieve, perform, *ago, ēre, egi, actum*.

Advantage, gain, *emolumentum, i, n.*

As — as possible, with adjectives, *quam*, adv., with superlat.; as soon as possible, *quam primum*.

Cause, *causa, ae, f.*

Deliver, give over, *trado, ēre, didi, ditum*.

Desire, *opto, āre, āvi, ātum*.

Example, *exemplum, i, n.*

For the sake of, *causa* with gen. G. 414, 2, 3).

Profit, usefulness, *utilitas, ātis, f.*

Set before, *propōno, ēre, posui, positum*.

Somebody, something, *aliquis, qua, quid*.

**384. EXERCISE.**

1. We desire to see you as soon as possible in this city.
2. Cicero was striving to save the republic.
3. Young men, devote yourselves *to this study*, that you may be wise.
4. Devote yourselves *to study*, that you may be able to be both an honor to yourselves and an advantage to the republic.
5. Ambassadors were sent to Caesar to say that the town had been taken.
6. Scipio was born to achieve something worthy of a man.
7. Let us set before our sons examples for imitation.
8. He delivered the city to the soldiers to plunder.
9. Ambassadors came to Rome to ask for peace.
10. The consul did many things for the sake of defending himself.

**LESSON LXXVII.****FORMS FOR EXPRESSING CONDITION.****385. LESSON FROM THE GRAMMAR.**

- I. Clauses with certain Conjunctions. 503.
- II. Relative Clauses. 513.
- III. Participles. 503, 2, 1); 578, III.
- IV. Oblique Cases with Prepositions. 503, 2, 2).
- V. Imperative Clauses.<sup>1</sup> 535, 2.

---

<sup>1</sup> To these five forms a sixth might be added, the conditional sentence with *Si* omitted. See 503, 1. This form, however, cannot be safely imitated by the learner.

## 386. MODELS.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| I. Arms are of little value abroad, unless there is wisdom at home.  | I. <i>Parvi sunt foris arma, nisi est consilium domi.</i>           |
| II. If any one should see these things, he would be delighted.       | II. <i>Haec qui videat, delectetur.</i>                             |
| III. We are not wont to believe a liar, even if he speaks the truth. | III. <i>Mendāci homīni ne verum quidem dicenti credere solēmus.</i> |
| IV. What would the life of men have been without philosophy?         | IV. <i>Quid vita hominū sine philosophia fuisset?</i>               |
| V. Provoke him; you will at once see him frantic.                    | V. <i>Lacesse; jam videbis furem.</i>                               |

## 387. REMARKS.

1. MODEL II. — IF ANY ONE SHOULD SEE, *si quis videat*, or *qui videat*, lit. *whoever may see*. The former is the common form, but in illustrating the various expressions for *condition*, the latter is here admissible.

2. MODEL III. — IF HE SPEAKS, *dicenti*, lit. *speaking*.

## 388. VOCABULARY.

Associate, *socius*, *ii*, m.

At once, immediately, *jam*, adv.

Attempt, *conor*, *ari*, *atus sum*, dep.

Crime, *scelus*, *eris*, n.

Cultivate, *colo*, *ere*, *colui*, *cultum*.

Fail, *deficio*, *ere*, *feci*, *fectum*.

Leisure, *otium*, *ii*, n.

Punishment, *supplicium*, *ii*, n.

Remove, <i>tollo, ēre, sustūli, sublātum.</i>	Set forth, <i>exprōmo, ēre, prompsi, promptum.</i>
Restrain, <i>arceo, ēre, ui, arctum.</i>	Wicked, <i>imprōbus, a, um.</i>

## 389. EXERCISE.

1. I would write more to you if I had more leisure. 2. The day would fail me if I should attempt to set forth all that can be said in regard to philosophy. 3. If we wish to be both good and happy, we must cultivate virtue. 4. If any one should free the state from fear, he would be praised by all. 5. *Without associates* Catiline would never have attempted to form a conspiracy against the republic. 6. What would restrain the wicked from crime, if the fear of punishment were removed? 7. Soldiers, defend the city; you will be at once praised by all.

## LESSON LXXVIII.

## FORMS FOR EXPRESSING CONCESSION.

## 390. LESSON FROM THE GRAMMAR.

- I. Clauses with certain Conjunctions. 515.  
 II. Relative Clauses. 515, II.  
 III. Participles.<sup>1</sup> 578, IV.

---

<sup>1</sup> To these three forms one or two others might be added, but they would not be safe models for the learner.



## 391. MODELS.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>I. Though <i>all</i> excellence attracts us to itself, yet liberality does this in the highest degree.</p> <p>II. Who is there who does not praise Socrates, though he never saw him?</p> <p>III. The eye, though it does not see itself, discerns other things.</p> | <p>I. <i>Quamquam</i> omnis <i>virtus</i> nos <i>ad se allicit</i>, tamen <i>liberalitas</i> id <i>maxime efficit</i>.</p> <p>II. <i>Quis est</i>, qui <i>Socrātem</i> non <i>laudet</i>, quem <i>nunquam vidērit</i>?</p> <p>III. <i>Oculus</i>, <i>se non videns</i>, <i>alia cernit</i>.</p> |
|---|---|

## 392. REMARKS.

1. MODEL II. — PRAISE, *laudet*. See G. 501, I. THOUGH HE NEVER SAW HIM, *quem nunquam vidērit*, lit. *whom he never saw*.
2. MODEL III. — OTHER THINGS, *alia*. See G. 441.

## 393. SYNONYMES.

Happy, prosperous, fortunate; *beātus, felix, fortunātus*.

1. *Beātus, a, um*; HAPPY.

2. *Felix, icis*; (1) HAPPY, PROSPEROUS, — happy because successful and prosperous; (2) transitively, GIVING JOY AND HAPPINESS.

3. *Fortunātus, a, um*; FORTUNATE, SUCCESSFUL, FAVORED BY FORTUNE.

## 394. VOCABULARY.

Acquit, <i>absolvo</i> , <i>ēre</i> , <i>i</i> , <i>solutum</i> .	However much, <i>quantumvis</i> , adv.
Death, <i>mors</i> , <i>mortis</i> , <i>f</i> .	Mucius, <i>Mucius</i> , <i>ii</i> , <i>m</i> .
Excel, <i>excello</i> , <i>ēre</i> , <i>cellui</i> , <i>celsum</i> .	Prosperous, <i>felix</i> , <i>icis</i> .
Fear, to fear greatly, <i>pertimesco</i> , <i>ēre</i> , <i>timui</i> .	Raise, conduct, <i>perduco</i> , <i>ēre</i> , <i>duxi</i> , <i>ductum</i> .
Friends, my, your, &c., friends, <i>mei</i> , <i>tui</i> , etc. G. 441, 1.	Rescue, <i>eripio</i> , <i>ēre</i> , <i>ripui</i> , <i>reptum</i> .
High, ample, <i>amplus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .	Slay, <i>interficio</i> , <i>ēre</i> , <i>feci</i> , <i>fectum</i> .

## 395. EXERCISE.

1. Although they do not dare to praise Catiline, they are yet to be feared. 2. You would not be able, however much you may excel, to raise all your friends to the highest honors. 3. They dare to defend Catiline, though he is endeavoring to destroy the republic. 4. We know that the conspirators, though acquitted, cannot be rescued from the hands of the Roman people. 5. Caius Mucius attempted to slay king Porsena, though death was set before him (as the penalty). 6. We cannot be happy without virtue. 7. We all desire that you should be happy. 8. All desire that we should be prosperous. 9. There are some who seem to be always fortunate.

## LESSON LXXIX.

## FORMS FOR EXPRESSING TIME.

## 396. LESSON FROM THE GRAMMAR.

- I. Accusative of Time. 378; 427.
- II. Ablative of Time. 426.
- III. Clauses with Conjunctions. 521-523; 588, I.
- IV. Participles. 578, I.
- V. Appositive. 363, 3.

## 397. MODELS.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| I. Pericles presided over<br><i>Athens</i> forty years.                                | I. <i>Pericles quadraginta annos praefuit Athēnis.</i>                            |
| II. He lived three hundred years since.  | II. <i>Abhinc annos trecentos fuit.</i>   |
| III. Socrates on the last day of his life discoursed much on the immortality of souls. | III. <i>Socrātes suprēmo vitae die multa de immortalitāte animōrum disseruit.</i> |
| IV. He obeyed when it was necessary.   | IV. <i>Paruit quum necesse erat.</i>  |
| V. While they are quiet, they approve.   | V. <i>Quum quiescunt, probant.</i>  |
| VI. The grape, when it has ripened, becomes sweet.                                     | VI. <i>Uva maturāta dulcescit.</i>  |
| VII. Cicero learned many things when a boy.  | VII. <i>Cicēro puer multa didīcit.</i>  |

### 398. REMARKS.

1. MODEL II. — LIVED, *fuit*, lit. *was*. The verb *sum* is often thus used.
2. MODEL VI. — WHEN IT HAS RIPENED, *maturata*, lit. *having ripened*.
3. MODEL VII. — CICERO WHEN A BOY, *Cicero puer*, lit. *Cicero a boy*.

### 399. SYNONYMES.

Daily, day by day; *quotidie*, *in dies*, *in singulos dies*.

1. *Quotidie*; DAILY, DAY BY DAY, — the usual adverb for *daily*, whether with or without increase.

2. *In dies*, or *in singulos dies*; DAILY, DAY BY DAY, — used with comparatives and with words which involve increase or decrease.

### 400. VOCABULARY.

Arganthonius, <i>Arganthonius</i> , ii, m.	Expect, <i>expecto</i> , <i>are</i> , <i>avi</i> , <i>atum</i> .
At the age of, <i>natus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> , with the acc. of time. At the age of twenty, <i>viginti annos natus</i> , lit. <i>having been born twenty years</i> .	From day to day, <i>in dies</i> . Govern, <i>gubernare</i> , <i>are</i> , <i>avi</i> , <i>atum</i> . House, one's house, <i>domus</i> , <i>i</i> , f. G. 117, 1. Hundred, <i>centum</i> , indecl.
Daily, <i>quotidie</i> , adv.	Isocrates, <i>Isocrates</i> , <i>is</i> , m.
Die, <i>mori</i> , <i>mori</i> , <i>mortuus sum</i> , dep.	Marius, <i>Marius</i> , <i>ii</i> , m.
Eighty, <i>octoginta</i> , indecl.	Panathenaicus, <i>Panathenaicus</i> , <i>i</i> , m.
Entitle, <i>inscribo</i> , <i>ere</i> , <i>scripsi</i> , <i>scrip- tum</i> .	Plato, <i>Plato</i> , <i>onis</i> , m. Seventh time, <i>septimum</i> , adv.

The = that, not emphatic, <i>is, ea,</i>	Vice, <i>vitium, ii, n.</i>
<i>id.</i>	Weep at, <i>illacrimor, āri, ātus sum,</i>
Twenty, <i>viginti</i> , indecl.	dep. G. 386.

## 401. EXERCISE.

1. When virtue governs the republic, the citizens are happy. 2. Having come to Athens, I devoted myself to the study of philosophy. 3. Arganthonius is said to have reigned eighty years. 4. Cicero says that this king lived one hundred and twenty years. 5. Cato died at the age of eighty-five. 6. Isocrates is said to have written a book in his ninety-fourth year. 7. This book is entitled Panathenaicus. 8. Cicero, while reading Plato, wept at the death of Socrates. 9. Marius, while consul for the seventh time, died in his own house. 10. I will send a letter to you *daily*. 11. We are daily expecting your brother. 12. There are some who say that vice increases from day to day.

## LESSON LXXX.

## FORMS FOR EXPRESSING CAUSE.

## 402. LESSON FROM THE GRAMMAR.

## I. Ablative of Cause. 414.

1. A Preposition with its Case. 414, 2, 3), (1).

2. A Perfect Participle with an Ablative. 414, 2, 3), (2).

## II. Clauses with Conjunctions. 517-523.

## III. Relative Clauses. 519.

## IV. Participles. 578, II.

## 403. MODELS.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| I. The father exults with<br><i>joy.</i>   | I. <i>Pater exultat laetitia.</i>  |
| II. Death, because of the<br>shortness of life, is<br>never far distant.                           | II. <i>Mors propter brevitatem vitae nunquam longe abest.</i>                    |
| III. They seek <i>friendship</i> ,<br>led by the hope of a re-<br>ward.                            | III. <i>Amicitiam spe mercedis adducti expetunt.</i>                             |
| IV. Since a thanksgiving has<br>been decreed, celebrate<br><i>those days.</i>                      | IV. <i>Quoniam supplicatio decreta est, celebrato illos dies.</i>                |
| V. O fortunate youth, since<br>you have obtained Ho-<br>mer as the herald of<br><i>your valor.</i> | V. <i>O fortunāte adolescens, qui tuae virtutis Homērum praecōnem invenēris.</i> |
| VI. I affirm nothing, since I<br>am in doubt and dis-<br>trust myself.                             | VI. <i>Nihil affirmo, dubitans et mihi diffidens.</i>                            |

## 404. REMARKS.

1. MODEL V. — SINCE YOU HAVE OBTAINED, *qui invenēris*, lit. *who have found*. For the mood, see G. 519.
2. MODEL VI. — SINCE I AM IN DOUBT, *dubitans*, lit. *doubting*.

## 405. SYNONYMS.

The right, law ; *fas*, *jus*, *lex*.

1. *Fas*, indecl. n. ; THE RIGHT, — that which accords with the divine law.

2. *Jus, juris*, n.; THE RIGHT, JUSTICE, LEGAL RIGHT, — that which accords with law in general.

3. *Lex, legis*, f.; LAW, ENACTMENT, — human law.

#### 406. VOCABULARY.

Ahala, <i>Ahāla</i> , ae, m.	Influence, to influence, <i>addūco, ēre, duxi, ductum</i> .
Annoyance, <i>molestia</i> , ae, f.	Maelius, <i>Maelius</i> , ii, m.
Clodius, <i>Clodius</i> , ii, m.	Nation, <i>gens, gentis</i> , f. The law of nations, <i>jus gentium</i> .
Consult for, <i>consūlo, ēre, sūlui, sultum</i> , with dat. G. 385, 3.	Regal power, <i>regnum</i> , i, n.
Enact, <i>sancio, ire, sanxi, sanc-tum</i> .	Right, <i>fas</i> , n. indecl.
Fabricius, <i>Fabricius</i> , ii, m.	Seek, <i>appēto, ēre, petiri, petitem</i> .
For my, your, &c., sake, <i>mea causa, tua causa</i> , etc. G. 414, 2, 3).	Slay, <i>occido, ēre, i, cisum</i> .
	Spurius, <i>Spurius</i> , ii, m.

#### 407. EXERCISE.

1. We do many things *for the sake of our friends* which we would never do for our own sake. 2. I thank you because you have freed me from all annoyance. 3. Cicero praises Fabricius because he was just. 4. There are some who obey the laws on account of fear. 5. The commander, influenced by the hope of peace, sent ambassadors to the king. 6. Cicero is especially to be praised, because he consulted for the safety of the citizens. 7. Nothing which is right delights *Clodius*. 8. This was done in accordance with the law of nations. 9. The senate enacted many laws. 10. Servilius Ahala slew Spurius Maelius because he was seeking regal power.

# PART THIRD.

## ELEMENTS OF LATIN STYLE.

---

### CHAPTER I:

#### CHOICE OF WORDS AND CONSTRUCTIONS.

##### LESSON LXXXI.

##### ABSTRACT NOUNS. NUMBER.

**408.** Abstract nouns designating the periods of life, as *boyhood*, *youth*, *old age*, are generally best rendered into Latin, not by *pueritia*, *juventus*, and *senectus*, but by *puer*, *juvĕnis*, and *senex*. See Part II. 165, IV.

**409.** Names of offices, as *consulship*, *generalship*, *leadership*, when used to designate time, should be rendered into Latin by the corresponding names of officers, as *consul*, *imperātor*, *dux*. See Model I.

**410.** Verbal nouns, designating the action in the abstract, may often be rendered into Latin by Participles:

The violation of the laws, *violatæ leges*. For (concerning) the recovery of the captives, *de captivis recuperandis*. See Model II.

**411.** Substantives which are singular in English are sometimes rendered by those which are plural in Latin.  
Thus, —



## 1. Many names of cities are plural :

Athens, *Athēnae*; Thebes, *Thebae*; Syracuse, *Syracusae*. See G. 131, 1.

## 2. Many nouns, which are singular in English, are plural in Latin, because they are so used as really to involve that number :

To have in hand,<sup>1</sup> *in manibus habere*. To go on foot,<sup>1</sup> *pedibus ire*. To urge night and day, *noctes atque dies urgere*.

**412.** The force of the English expressions, *kinds of*, *instances of*, *examples of*, is often denoted in Latin by simply putting the following noun in the plural, especially if it be an abstract noun :

All instances of avarice, *omnes avaritiae*. There are two kinds of memory, *sunt duae memoriae*. Examples of glorious death, *clarae mortes*.

**413. MODELS.**

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| I. Piso proposed this law<br>in the consulship of<br>Censorinus and Manili-<br>us. | I. <i>Piso hanc legem Cen-<br/>sorino et Manilio<br/>consulibus tulit.</i> |
| II. Precepts are given for<br>the observance of<br>duty.                           | II. <i>Officii conservandi<br/>praecepta tradun-<br/>tur.</i>              |
| III. I have a great work in<br>hand.   | III. <i>Opus magnum in<br/>manibus habeo.</i>                              |

**414. REMARKS.**

1. MODEL I.—IN THE CONSULSHIP OF, etc., lit. *Censorinus and Manilius being consuls*.

---

<sup>1</sup> The words *hand* and *foot*, as here used, involve the plural, as the action is by no means confined to *one* hand or *one* foot. The plural is also involved in the expression *night and day*, meaning night after night and day after day. Hence the Latin uses the plural in such instances.

2. MODEL II. — FOR THE OBSERVANCE OF DUTY, *lit. of duty to be observed.*

# 415. VOCABULARY.

Adorn, *exorno, āre, āvi, ātum.*

Africanus, *Africānus, i, m.*

Appius, *Appius, ii, m.*

Arise, *exsisto, ēre, stīti, stitum.*

Attain, *consēquor, i, secūtus sum,*  
dep.

Attendant, *comes, itis, m. and f.*

Censor, *censor, ōris, m.*

Claudius, *Claudius, ii, m.*

Complain, *queror, i, questus sum,*  
dep.

Desire, *cupīditas, ātis, f.*

Find, *repērio, ire, pēri, pertum.*

Guide, *dux, ducis, m. and f.*

Highest results, highest things,  
*summa, ōrum, n. adj. used as*  
substant.

Just, with numbers, *ipse, a, um.*  
G. 452, 3.

Manilius, *Manilius, ii, m.*

Manius, *Manius, ii, m.*

Monument, *monumentum, i, n.*

Plautus, *Plautus, i, m.*

Power, *potentia, ae, f.*

Statue, *signum, i, n.*

Tarentum, *Tarentum, i, n.*

# 416. EXERCISE.

1. I find that Plato came to Tarentum in the consulship of Lucius Camillus and Appius Claudius. 2. Plautus died during the censorship of Cato. 3. Cato the censor died in the consulship of Lucius Marcius and Manius Manilius, just eighty-three years before the consulship of Cicero. 4. You have attained the highest results under the guidance of virtue, with the attendance of fortune. 5. They were complaining of the loss of liberty. 6. Scipio Africanus *always* had Xenophon in hand. 7. Pericles adorned Athens with the most beautiful statues and monuments. 8. There are some who devote themselves day and night to study. 9. You have from boyhood devoted yourself to study. 10. *In the greatest minds* there often arises the *desire* for honor, power, and glory.

## LESSON LXXXII.

## SUBSTANTIVES UNITED BY PREPOSITIONS.

**417.** In English, substantives are often brought into immediate relation to each other by the simple use of prepositions, as *the march into Italy, the army in Macedonia, the temples around the forum*. In Latin, the same construction is admissible, but is used much more cautiously in the best writers.

**418.** This construction may be used in Latin with certain Prepositions and in certain senses. Thus,—

1. With *cum* and *sine*.

Cupid with a lamp, *Cupido cum lampade*. A man without hope, *homo sine spe*.

2. With *in*, *erga*, *adversus*, *contra*, and *pro*, before the name of the object with reference to which the feeling is exercised or the action performed :

Hatred of the human race, *odium in* (towards) *hominum genus* (the race of men). Love to you, *erga te amor*. See G. 398, 4.

3. With *de*, *ex*, *inter*, in a partitive sense :

A plebeian, *homo de plebe* (a man of the people). One of the heroes, *unus ex viris*. See G. 398, 4.

4. With *de* in the sense of concerning, from, out of, *ex*, from, out of, *inter* with *se* or *ipsos*, and with *ad* and *apud* in expressions of place :

A book on civil law, *liber de jure civili*. The marble tables, *mensae e marmore* (tables made from or of marble). The naval battle near Tenedos, *apud Tenëdum pugna navālis*.

**419.** This combination of substantives, by means of prepositions, may be somewhat more freely used when the preposition with its case is placed between the leading noun and its modifier :

The most disgraceful flight from the city, *fuga ab urbe turpissima*.

**420.** When good authority cannot be furnished for this construction, it will be advisable either to insert a Relative Clause or a Participle before the preposition, or to give the sentence such a form as to bring the preposition with its case into relation to the verb :

In the temple near the city, *in fano, quod est propter urbem* (which is near the city).

#### 421. MODELS.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| I. Behold the silver Cupid<br>with a lamp.  | I. <i>Vide argenteum Cupidinem cum lampade.</i>                                       |
| II. Aristotle, in his third<br>book on philosophy,<br>does not dissent from<br>Plato. | II. <i>Aristotēles in tertio de philosophia libro a Platōne non dissensit.</i>        |
| III. They admire the necklace of gold and gems.                                       | III. <i>Monile ex auro et gemmis admirantur.</i>                                      |
| IV. In most things the mean<br>between too much<br>and too little is the<br>best.     | IV. <i>In plerisque rebus mediocritas quae est inter nimium et parum optimum est.</i> |

#### 422. REMARKS.

1. MODEL III. — OF GOLD, *ex auro*, lit. *from gold*.
2. MODEL IV. — THE MEAN BETWEEN TOO MUCH, etc., *mediocritas quae est inter*, etc.

#### 423. SYNONYMES.

Teacher, preceptor ; *doctor, praeceptor, magister*.

1. *Doctor, ōris*, m.; TEACHER, — regarded simply as one who imparts knowledge.

2. *Praeceptor*, *ōris*, m.; PRECEPTOR, INSTRUCTOR, TEACHER, — regarded as one who moulds the character of his pupils.

3. *Magister*, *tri*, m.; MASTER, TEACHER, — with reference to his superiority and power.

#### 424. VOCABULARY.

Abundance, <i>copia</i> , <i>ae</i> , f.	On = concerning, <i>de</i> , prep. with abl.
Around, <i>circum</i> , prep. with acc.	
Attention, study, zeal, <i>studium</i> , <i>ii</i> , n.	Present one's self, <i>se praebere</i> ; <i>praebeo</i> , <i>ere</i> , <i>ui</i> , <i>itum</i> .
Bestow, <i>confēro</i> , <i>ferre</i> , <i>tūli</i> , <i>collatum</i> .	Refinements, culture, <i>cultus</i> , <i>us</i> , m.
Credit, <i>fides</i> , <i>ei</i> , f.	Sedition, <i>seditio</i> , <i>ōnis</i> , f.
Edifice, <i>aedes</i> , <i>is</i> , f. G. 132.	Select, selected, <i>exquisitus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .
Elegance, <i>elegantia</i> , <i>ae</i> , f.	Set fire to, burn, <i>incendo</i> , <i>ere</i> , <i>endi</i> , <i>ensum</i> .
Epicurus, <i>Epicūrus</i> , <i>i</i> , m.	Station, to place, <i>collōco</i> , <i>āre</i> , <i>avi</i> , <i>atum</i> .
Forum, <i>forum</i> , <i>i</i> , n.	Sure, <i>certus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .
In = situated in, placed in, <i>positus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> , <i>in</i> with abl.	Teacher, <i>doctor</i> , <i>ōris</i> , m.; as master, <i>magister</i> , <i>tri</i> , m.
Instruct, teach, <i>doceo</i> , <i>ere</i> , <i>docui</i> , <i>doctum</i> .	Too, <i>nimis</i> , adv.
Means, property, <i>res</i> , <i>rei</i> , f.	Upon, <i>in</i> , prep. with acc. and abl.
Occult, <i>occultus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .	G. 435, 1.

#### 425. EXERCISE.

1. Your letter on friendship was most acceptable to me. 2. The refinements of life, with elegance and abundance, delight us. 3. All the philosophers before Socrates bestowed too great attention upon occult subjects. 4. This man, without means, without credit, without hope, the leader of sedition, set fire, with his own hands, to the sacred edifices. 5. True wisdom presents itself to us as the surest guide to happiness. 6. Valor even in an

enemy delights brave men. 7. The army was stationed in the forum and in all the temples around the forum. 8. This preceptor will instruct us in regard to philosophy. 9. We send our sons to the teachers of wisdom. 10. Epicurus boasted that he had had *no* teacher (master). 11. Tiberius Gracchus always had select teachers (masters) from Greece.

## LESSON LXXXIII.

## SPECIAL WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS.

**426.** Such words as *property, duty, business, mark, characteristic*, after the verb *to be*, are generally omitted in rendering into Latin, as their force is fully expressed in the Predicate Genitive :

It is the duty of a judge, *judicis est*. It is the mark of a narrow mind, *angusti animi est*.

**427.** Substantives after *as, when, for, of*, are often rendered by Appositives, the particles *as, when*, etc., being omitted. See Model II.

**428.** But in such cases, *as* is sometimes rendered by *ut*, and then the appositive shows in what capacity or light the person or thing denoted by the leading substantive is viewed. See Model III.

**429.** While the relation denoted by the preposition *of* is generally rendered by the Genitive, that denoted by some other prepositions, as *to, for, from, in, on account of*, is sometimes so rendered :

Gratitude for a favor, *beneficii gratia*. Escape from labors, *laborum fuga*. See above, 413, Model II.

## 430. MODELS.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| I. It is the part of barbarians to live for the day only.<br>II. Philip procured Aristotle as a teacher for Alexander his son.<br>III. I have often praised Cato as a citizen. | I. <i>Barbarōrum est in diem vivere.</i><br>II. <i>Philippus Aristotēlem Alexandro filio doctōrem accivit.</i><br>III. <i>Catōnem ut civem saepe laudāvi.</i> |
|--|---|

## 431. SYNONYMES.

Pride, arrogance, insolence; *superbia, arrogantia, insolentia.*

1. *Superbia, ae, f.*; PRIDE, HAUGHTINESS, SELF-SUFFICIENCY.

2. *Arrogantia, ae, f.*; ARROGANCE, HAUGHTINESS, — as shown in great pretensions and assumptions.

3. *Insolentia, ae, f.*; INSOLENCY, — an offensive display of superiority in an insulting manner.

## 432. VOCABULARY.

Achilles, *Achilles, is, m.*

Antiochus, *Antiochus, i, m.*

Antony, *Antonius, ii, m.*

Arrogance, *arrogantia, ae, f.*

As, *ut, adv.*

But, *vero, etc., conj.* G. 587,

III. 2.

Caius, *Caius, Caii, m.*

Consider, *cogito, are, avi, atum.*

Contrary to, *contra, prep.* with acc.

Excite, *concito, are, avi, atum.*

Hatred, *odium, ii, n.*

Insolence, *insolentia, ae, f.*

Narrow, *angustus, a, um.*

Obtain, find, *invenio, ire, veni, ventum.*

Perceive, *perspicio, ere, spexi, spectrum.*

Perfect, *perfectus, a, um.*

Popilius, *Popilius, ii, m.*

Pride, *superbia, ae, f.*

Prudence, *prudentia, ae, f.*

Regard, <i>habeo, ēre, ui, itum</i> , lit. to have, hold.	Riches, <i>divitiae, arum</i> , f. pl. G. 131, 1, 4).
Require, compel, <i>cogo, ēre, cogi</i> , <i>coactum</i> .	Senator, <i>senātor, oris</i> , m. Wickedness, <i>scelus, ēris</i> , n.

### 433. EXERCISE.

1. To love riches is the mark of a *narrow mind*. 2. It is the part of a wise man to do nothing contrary to the laws. 3. It is the duty of a good man to cultivate all the virtues. 4. Caius Popilius was sent as an ambassador to Antiochus the king. 5. Achilles obtained Homer as the herald of *his valor*. 6. Jupiter was regarded both as the king and as the father of all the gods. 7. It is the duty of a judge to consider, not what he himself wishes, but what the law requires. 8. To defend that which is right, I have ever thought a characteristic both of brave heroes and of great men. 9. To think this, is a mark of prudence; to do it, of fortitude; but both to think and to do it, of perfect virtue. 10. Great hatred is often excited *against pride and arrogance*. 11. We have perceived, not only the audacity and wickedness of *Antony*, but also his insolence and pride. 12. All greatly praise your Cato, as a senator, as a commander, and as a man.

### LESSON LXXXIV.

#### RENDERING OF CERTAIN NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES.

**434.** In English, Adjectives are used substantively only in the Plural, but in Latin they are occasionally so used even



in the Singular, especially in the Neuter with an abstract sense :

The truth, *verum* (a true thing). No sincerity, *nihil sinceri* (nothing of the sincere).

**435.** Proper names of places, when used with *of* or *from* to designate *nativity* or *origin*, are usually rendered by Latin Adjectives :

Archytas of Tarentum, *Archytas Tarentinus*. Gorgias of Leontini, *Gorgias Leontinus*. See G. 441, 5.

**436.** Proper names with prepositions, as *of*, *in*, are often rendered by Latin Adjectives :

Ulysses in Homer, *Homericus Ulixes*. Hercules in Xenophon, *Hercules Xenophonteus*. The battle of Pharsalia, *proelium Pharsalicum*. The battle of Cannae, *Cannensis pugna*. See G. 441, 5.

**437.** The English expressions, *the first part of*, *the middle* (part) *of*, *the last part of*, *the highest part of*, *the lowest part of*, and the like, are generally rendered by Latin Adjectives :

The first part of the province, *prima provincia*. The middle of summer, *media aestas*. See G. 441, 6.

**438.** Substantives, which designate persons as the agents of actions, may often be best rendered into Latin by Relative Clauses :

Hearers, *ii qui audiunt* (those who hear). Statesmen, *ii qui rei publicae praesunt* (those who preside over the republic). Lawgivers, *ii qui leges scribunt* (those who write laws).

**439.** Participial nouns and verbal nouns with *of*, should generally be rendered into Latin by a Passive Participle or a Gerund :

In liberating the country, *in liberanda patria*. Desirous of hearing you, *cupidus te audiendi*. See G. 580; 559-566.

**440.** Many adjectives are best rendered into Latin by the Genitive of nouns.

Thus, —

1. SPIRITUAL, MENTAL, must be rendered by *animi*, *mentis*, or *ingenii* ; BODILY, by *corpōris* :

By mental diseases, *anīmi morbis*. Bodily pain, *dolor corpōris*.  
Mental culture, *cultūra anīmi*.

2. LITERARY may be rendered by *litterārum*; LEARNED, sometimes by *doctrīnae*, *doctrinārum*; *artis*, *artium*; PHILOSOPHICAL, by *philosophiae*, or *de philosophia*:

Literary pursuits, *litterārum studia*. Learned studies, *doctrinae studia*.

441. Adjectives with adverbial modifiers may often be best rendered into Latin by the Genitive or Ablative of Characteristic. See Model III.

#### 442. MODELS.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| I. The temple of Diana of Ephesus was burned.     | I. <i>Templum Ephesiae Diānae deflagravit.</i>         |
| II. Many are careless in selecting friends.       | II. <i>Multi in amīcis eligendis negligentes sunt.</i> |
| III. <i>How blameless</i> ought commanders to be. | III. <i>Quanta innocentia debent esse imperatōres.</i> |

#### 443. REMARKS.

1. MODEL II. — IN SELECTING FRIENDS. See G. 580.
2. MODEL III. — HOW BLAMELESS, *quanta innocentia*, lit. *with* (of) *how great innocence*.

#### 444. VOCABULARY.

Advantage, <i>utilitas</i> , <i>ātis</i> , f.	Difference, there is a difference, <i>intērest</i> , <i>fuit</i> .
Atticus, <i>Atticus</i> , <i>i</i> , m.	
Battle, fight, <i>pugna</i> , <i>ae</i> , f.	Enact, write, <i>scribo</i> , <i>ēre</i> , <i>scripsi</i> , <i>scriptum</i> .
Between, <i>inter</i> , prep. with acc.	
Ceus, of Ceus or Cea, <i>Ceus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .	Epaminondas, <i>Epaminondas</i> , <i>ae</i> , m.
Crotona, <i>Croto</i> , <i>ōnis</i> , m. and f.	
Delight, <i>oblecto</i> , <i>āre</i> , <i>āvī</i> , <i>ātum</i> .	Gorgias, <i>Gorgias</i> , <i>ae</i> , m.

Lawgiver, be a lawgiver, *leges scribere*, lit. to enact laws.

Learned = of learning, *doctrinae*, f. sing. gen.

Leontine, of Leontini, *Leontinus*, a, um.

Less, minor, *us*, comp. of *parvus*. G. 165.

Leuctrian, of Leuctra, *Leuctricus*, a, um.

Lighten, *levo, are, avi, atum*.

Literary = of letters, *litterarum*, f. pl. gen.

No, *non*, adv.

Of = out of, *e, ex*, prep. with abl.

Old age, *senectus, utis*, f.

Pharsalian, of Pharsalus, or Pharsalia, *Pharsalius*, a, um.

Prodicus, *Prodicus*, i, m.

Propose to one's self no other aim, *nihil sibi aliud nisi proponere; propōno, ere, posui, positum* ;

lit. to propose to one's self nothing else except.

So, sometimes rendered by *is, ea, id*; so virtuous, *ea virtute*, lit. of that virtue; so wise, *ea sapientia*, lit. of that wisdom. G. 428.

Statesman, be a statesman, *rei publicae praesum, esse, fui*; lit. to superintend the republic.

Suffering, pain, *dolor, oris*, m.

Superbus, *Superbus*, i, m.

Tarquinius, *Tarquinius*, ii, m.

Useful, be useful, *utilitatem affero, ferre, attuli, allatum*, lit. impart advantage.

Warrior, be a warrior, *bellum gero, ere, gessi, gestum*, lit. to wage war.

While, when, *quum*, conj.

Wrong, *pravus*, a, um.

#### 445. EXERCISE.

1. As there is a difference between the right and the wrong, so is there between the true and the false. 2. Gorgias of Leontini, the teacher of Isocrates, lived one hundred and seven years. 3. Prodicus of Ceus was in great honor. 4. After the battle of Pharsalia, Cicero wrote to Atticus. 5. After the battle of Leuctra, Epaminondas was in great honor. 6. Solon the lawgiver was regarded as wise, one of the Seven. 7. Statesmen are no less useful than warriors. 8. Pythagoras came to

Crotona in the fourth year of the reign of Tarquinius Superbus. 9. Literary studies delight old age. 10. Many while in exile have lightened their suffering by learned studies. 11. Our forefathers were *so virtuous and wise*, that, in enacting laws, they proposed to themselves no other aim than the safety and advantage of the republic.

## LESSON LXXXV.

## ADJECTIVES — CONTINUED.

**446.** When two or more Adjectives belong to the same substantive, as attributives, —

1. They may be separate and independent modifiers of that substantive, and must then be connected by conjunctions.

2. One of them may modify the substantive directly, while the others modify the complex idea formed by the substantive and adjective united. The connective is then omitted:

Obscure and difficult subjects, *res obscuras atque difficiles*. All Latin words, *omnia verba Latina*.

**447.** By a difference of idiom, the Latin generally uses the connective after *multi*, *permulti*, *plurimi*, etc., though the English omits it in similar cases:

Many large states, *multae et magnae civitates*.

**448.** The Positive with *too*, *somewhat*, *unusually*, may be rendered by the Latin Comparative, and the Positive with *very*, *exceedingly*, by the Superlative:

Too short, *brevior*. Very short, *brevissimus*.

But instead of the Latin Comparative in the sense of *too*, the Positive with *nimis* may be used, and instead of the Superlative in the sense of *very*, the Positive with *valde*:

Too great, *nimis magnus*. Very great, *valde magnus*.

Here the emphasis rests upon *too* and *very*, rather than upon the adjective itself.

**449.** The Positive with *as* — *as possible* is rendered by the Superlative with *quam* or *quantus*, with or without *possum*:

As great as possible, *quam maximus*, with or without *possum*. See Model II.

**450.** When in English two comparatives occur with *the* — *the*, or with *the* — *so much the*, they are generally best rendered into Latin by Comparatives with *quanto* — *tanto*, *quo* — *eo* or *quo* — *hoc*. See Model III.

#### 451. MODELS.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| I. This state has been relieved of the whole debt.             | I. <i>Haec civitas omni aere aliēno liberāta est.</i>            |
| II. He led the army to Rome with as rapid marches as possible. | II. <i>Quam potuit maximis itineribus Romam exercitum duxit.</i> |
| III. The more difficult it is, the more honorable.             | III. <i>Quo est difficilius, eo praeclarius.</i>                 |

#### 452. REMARKS.

1. MODEL I. — DEBT, *aes aliēnum*, lit. *copper* or *money* belonging to another.

2. MODEL III. — THE — THE, *quo* — *eo*, lit. *by what* or *how much* — *by this* or *so much*.

#### 453. SYNONYMES.

Good, upright, honorable; *bonus, probus, honestus*.

1. *Bonus, a, um*; good, — the generic word for this quality, applicable both to persons and to things.

2. *Probus*, *a*, *um*; UPRIGHT, BLAMELESS, — a negative quality, free from blame rather than worthy of praise.

3. *Honestus*, *a*, *um*; HONORABLE, VIRTUOUS, NOBLE-MINDED, — involving a delicate sense of honor and duty.

## 454. VOCABULARY.

Another's, belonging to another, <i>aliēnus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .	Occupy the mind, <i>in animo versor</i> , <i>āri</i> , <i>ātus</i> , lit. to move about in the mind.
Armenian, <i>Armenius</i> , <i>ii</i> , <i>m</i> .	
Contract, <i>contraho</i> , <i>ēre</i> , <i>traxi</i> , <i>tractum</i> .	Princely, <i>regālis</i> , <i>e</i> .
Debt, <i>aes aliēnum</i> , lit. another's money.	Pursuit, exertion, <i>studium</i> , <i>ii</i> , <i>n</i> .
Drive, <i>pello</i> , <i>ēre</i> , <i>pepūli</i> , <i>pulsum</i> .	Release, <i>libēro</i> , <i>āre</i> , <i>āvi</i> , <i>ātum</i> .
Equity, <i>aequitas</i> , <i>ātis</i> , <i>f</i> .	Seem, <i>videor</i> , <i>ēri</i> , <i>visus sum</i> .
Heavy, weighty, great, severe, <i>gravis</i> , <i>e</i> .	Since, ago, <i>abhinc</i> , <i>adv</i> .
Long-continued, very long, <i>perdi- uturnus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .	Syllable, <i>syllaba</i> , <i>ae</i> , <i>f</i> .
Loud, great, <i>magnus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .	The — the, with comparatives, <i>quo</i> — <i>eo</i> . G. 418. Lit. by how much — by so much.
Many of the, <i>multi</i> , <i>ae</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>pl.</i> , in agreement with noun.	Thought, <i>cogitatio</i> , <i>ōnis</i> , <i>f</i> .
Money, <i>aes</i> , <i>aeris</i> , <i>n.</i> , lit. copper.	Tigranes, <i>Tigrānes</i> , <i>is</i> , <i>m</i> .
Noble-minded, <i>honestus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .	Till, <i>colo</i> , <i>ēre</i> , <i>colui</i> , <i>cultum</i> .
	Upright, <i>probus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .
	Verse, <i>versus</i> , <i>us</i> , <i>m</i> .
	Voice, <i>vox</i> , <i>vocis</i> , <i>f</i> .

## 455. EXERCISE.

1. Cicero says that the good are always happy. 2. Nothing seems to Xenophon so princely as the pursuit of tilling the field. 3. The Romans waged a severe and long-continued war with Tigranes the king of the Armenians. 4. Cicero released the state from a false debt. 5. The consuls contracted no new debt for the state. 6.

This large and heavy debt was contracted many years since. 7. Many weighty thoughts occupied the mind of the commander. 8. This verse is too long by one syllable. 9. No one can be too honorable. 10. The orator spoke with as loud a voice as possible. 11. The greater the fault is, the greater the pain. 12. Nothing is more worthy of a great and good man than virtue. 13. All upright men love equity itself. 14. Many of the best citizens and most noble-minded men were driven into exile.

## LESSON LXXXVI.

### PRONOUNS.—PERSONAL. REFLEXIVE.

**456.** The Nominatives *I, you, we*, when not emphatic, are omitted in rendering into Latin. See Model I.

**457.** *He, she, it, they, him, her, them*, when not emphatic, are usually omitted in rendering, if they can be omitted without ambiguity. See Model II.

**458.** When necessary, these Pronouns are rendered (1) generally by *is* ; but (2) if more demonstrative in force, in the sense of *this one, that one*, by *hic* or *ille* ; and (3) if emphatic, but not reflexive (G. 448), *he himself, himself*, by *ipse*. See Models I. and III.

**459.** But these Pronouns must sometimes be rendered by the Reflexive *se*.

Thus, —

1. The Objectives *himself, herself, itself, themselves*, must be rendered by *se*. See Model IV.

2. In a Subordinate Clause expressing the sentiment of the Principal Subject, the Objectives *him, her, it, them*, must be rendered by *se* when they refer to the Principal Subject. See Model V.

3. In a Subordinate Clause which must be rendered by the Accusative with the Infinitive and which expresses the sentiment of the Principal Subject, *he, she, it, they*, must be rendered by *se* when they refer to the Principal Subject. See Model VI.

**460.** The Objectives *myself, ourselves, yourselves*, are rendered by the Personal Pronouns *ego* and *tu*. See Model VII.

**461.** But when special emphasis rests upon the Objectives *myself, ourselves, yourselves*, *IPSE* is added to the Personal Pronoun. See Model VIII.

**462.** Personal Pronouns with prepositions are sometimes rendered by Possessives, especially with such words as *epistōla, littērae*, etc. See Model IX.

#### 463. MODELS.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| I. You know how highly<br>I prize them.  | I. <i>Eos quanti faciam<br/>scis.</i>  |
| II. It is necessary that<br>you should praise<br>this plan, for it can-<br>not be changed. | II. <i>Hoc consilium lau-<br/>des necesse est;<br/>mutāri enim non<br/>potest.</i> |
| III. It is fitting that he<br>should himself be a<br>good man.                             | III. <i>Oportet ipsum esse<br/>virum bonum.</i>                                    |
| IV. The boys conduct<br>themselves very pru-<br>dently.                                    | IV. <i>Puēri valde pru-<br/>denter se gerunt.</i>                                  |
| V. Caesar asks me to<br>come to him.   | V. <i>Caesar ut veniam<br/>ad se rogat.</i>  |
| VI. The consul thinks that<br>he has friends.  | VI. <i>Consul se amīcos<br/>habēre arbitrātur.</i>                                 |
| VII. We console ourselves.   | VII. <i>Nos consolāmur.</i>  |
| VIII. See that you guard<br>yourself.  | VIII. <i>Fac ut te ipsum<br/>custodias.</i>  |



IX. I have received three  
letters from you.

IX. *Accēpi tuas tres  
epistōlas.*

#### 464. REMARKS.

1. MODEL I. — HOW HIGHLY, *quanti*. See G. 402, III.
2. MODEL II. — THAT YOU SHOULD PRAISE, *laudes*. See G. 496, 1.
3. MODEL V. — TO COME, *ut veniam*, lit. *that I may come*. See G. 492, 2.
4. MODEL VIII. — SEE THAT YOU GUARD, *fac ut custodias*, lit. *do or make that you guard*. See G. 492, 1.
5. MODEL IX. — FROM YOU, *a te*, or *tuas* agreeing with *epistōlas*.

#### 465. VOCABULARY.

Admit, confess, <i>confiteor</i> , <i>ēri</i> , <i>fessus sum</i> , dep.	Move, affect, <i>afficio</i> , <i>ēre</i> , <i>fēci</i> , <i>secum</i> .
Again and again, <i>etiam atque etiam</i> , adv.	Myself, reflexive, not intensive, <i>ego</i> , <i>mei</i> . G. 448.
Allow, <i>concedo</i> , <i>ēre</i> , <i>cessi</i> , <i>cessum</i> .	Others, the others, the rest, <i>cetēri</i> , <i>ae</i> , <i>a</i> , pl.
As, for, <i>pro</i> , prep. with abl.	Satisfy, <i>satisfacio</i> , <i>ēre</i> , <i>feci</i> , <i>factum</i> . G. 26, 2, 3), (b); 385, 2.
As much, <i>quantus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> , relative to <i>tantus</i> .	So much, <i>tantus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> , antecedent to <i>quantus</i> .
Await, <i>exspecto</i> , <i>āre</i> , <i>āvī</i> , <i>ātum</i> .	State, say, <i>dico</i> , <i>ēre</i> , <i>dixi</i> , <i>dictum</i> .
Be ignorant of, <i>ignōro</i> , <i>āre</i> , <i>āvī</i> , <i>ātum</i> .	Take, appropriate, <i>sumo</i> , <i>ēre</i> , <i>sumpsi</i> , <i>sumptum</i> .
Born, be born, <i>nascor</i> , <i>i</i> , <i>natus sum</i> .	Thyself, yourself, reflexive, not intensive, <i>tu</i> , <i>tui</i> . G. 448.
British, of or from Great Britain, <i>Britannicus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .	To, towards, of friendly feelings and conduct towards a person, <i>erga</i> , prep. with acc.
Dutiful affection, <i>pietas</i> , <i>ātis</i> , f.	
I, emphatic, <i>egōmet</i> . G. 184, 3.	
Indeed, <i>quidem</i> , adv.	
Joy, <i>laetitia</i> , <i>ae</i> , f.	

## 466. EXERCISE.

1. You, Cato, were born not for me, not for yourself, but for your country. 2. You will not deny that you are very desirous of *glory*. 3. I have never denied that *they* (these) are very desirous of glory. 4. There were some who called themselves wise. 5. I was moved with the *greatest* joy, when I heard that you had been made consul. 6. Philosophers admit that they are ignorant of *many things*, and that they have to learn many things again and again. 7. *As much time* as is allowed them for pleasures, *I* shall take for myself for my studies. 8. There is nothing new, which, indeed, either you would wish to hear, or which I should dare to state as certain. 9. I satisfy *all* the others by my dutiful affection to you; myself I never satisfy. 10. I am awaiting your letter from Great Britain.

## LESSON LXXXVII.

## PRONOUNS. — POSSESSIVE.

**467.** The Possessive Pronouns, *my, your, his*, etc., when not emphatic, should be omitted in rendering into Latin, if they can be supplied from the context. See Model I.

**468.** When necessary, the Possessives of the Third Person, *his, her, its, their*, are rendered, —

1. By *suis*. This occurs (1) when they refer to the subject of the clause in which they stand, and (2) when in a Subordinate Clause expressing the sentiment of the Principal Subject, they refer to that subject. See Models II. and III.

2. By the Genitive of a Demonstrative or Relative. This occurs when *suis* is not admissible. See Model IV.

**469.** The Latin Possessive belonging to two or more nouns is generally expressed but once. See Model V.

**470.** The Possessive with *own* — *my own, your own*, etc. — is generally rendered by the simple Possessive; but if *own* is emphatic, it must be rendered by the Genitive of *ipse*. See Model VI.

#### 471. MODELS.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| I. Socrates already held in his hand the deadly cup.                            | I. <i>Socrātes in manu jam mortifērum illud tēbat poculum.</i>                     |
| II. He instructed his brother.  | II. <i>Fratrem suum erudit.</i>  |
| III. They know what their fellow-citizens think.                                | III. <i>Sciunt quid sui cives cogitent.</i>  |
| IV. Socrates and all his disciples were delighted with the study of philosophy. | IV. <i>Socrātes atque omnes ejus discipuli studio philosophiae delectati sunt.</i> |
| V. I impart a share of my burden to no one, of my glory to all the good.        | V. <i>Onēris mei partem nemini impertio, gloriae bonis omnibus.</i>                |
| VI. He is moved by his own power.   | VI. <i>Sua vi (or sua ipsius vi) movetur.</i>                                      |

#### 472. REMARKS.

1. MODEL I. — THE DEADLY CUP, *mortifērum illud poculum*, lit. *that deadly cup*. See G. 450, 4.

2. MODEL IV. — ALL HIS, *omnes ejus*. Here *his* is not reflexive, and is accordingly rendered by *ejus*, not by *suus*.

#### 473. SYNONYMES.

City, town, state, republic; *urbs, oppidum, civitas, res publica*.

1. *Urbs, urbis, f.*; CITY, — the usual word for city.
2. *Oppidum, i, n.*; FORTIFIED TOWN OR CITY.
3. *Civitas, ātis, f.*; STATE, — as a political organization, with its laws and institutions.
4. *Res publica, rei publicae, f.*; COMMONWEALTH, REPUBLIC.

## 474. VOCABULARY.

Achievement, <i>res gesta, rei gestae</i> , lit. thing performed.	Exhort, <i>cohortor, āri, ātus sum</i> , dep.
Admire, <i>admīror, āri, ātus sum</i> , dep.	Genius, <i>ingenium, ii, n.</i>
Approach, <i>accēdo, ēre, cessi, cessum</i> .	How highly, with verbs of valuing, <i>quanti. G. 402, III. 1.</i>
Catulus, <i>Catulus, i, m.</i>	Life, period of life, <i>aetas, ātis, f.</i>
Cimbrian, <i>Cimbricus, a, um. A</i> victory over the Cimbrians, <i>Cimbrica victoria.</i>	Milesian, of Miletus, <i>Milesius, a, um.</i>
Colleague, <i>collēga, ae, m.</i>	Most exalted, <i>summus, a, um</i> , superlat. of <i>superus. G. 163, 3.</i>
Consider, judge, <i>existimo, āre, āvi, ātum</i> .	Rest upon, be situated in, <i>esse positus, a, um, in</i> with abl.
Dignity, <i>dignitas, ātis, f.</i>	Share, <i>communīco, āre, āvi, ātum</i> .
Discourse, <i>oratio, ōnis, f.</i>	Thales, <i>Thales, is, m.</i> ; acc. <i>em</i> or <i>en</i> .
Esteem, <i>facio, ēre, feci, factum</i> , lit. to make.	Worth, moral worth, <i>virtus, ātis, f.</i>
Except, <i>praeter</i> , prep. with acc.	

## 475. EXERCISE.

1. The orator spent his life in the study of eloquence.
2. Marius shared with his colleague Catulus the glory of his victory over the Cimbrians.
3. All the seven wise men, except Thales of Miletus, presided over their states.
4. It is a characteristic of your wisdom to consider that

all your dignity rests upon your worth and achievements. 5. Socrates said that he knew nothing. 6. His whole discourse was spent in praising virtue, and in exhorting all men to the pursuit of virtue. 7. There is no doubt that Rome was a most beautiful city. 8. All the states are compelled to await *your* aid. 9. You all know how highly I esteem the republic. 10. Our forces were approaching the town of Antioch. 11. Many admired Plato on account of his most exalted genius.

## LESSON LXXXVIII.

### PRONOUNS.—DEMONSTRATIVE. RELATIVE.

**476.** The Demonstratives, *this, that, these, those*, are rendered into Latin,—

1. Literally by *hic, ille, iste*. For the difference in the use of these forms, see G. 450. See Models IV. and VI.

2. By the Relative, to mark a close connection with the preceding sentence or clause. See Model I.

3. The expressions, *and that too, and that indeed*, are rendered by *is* with a conjunction. See Model II.

4. Before an objective with *of*, *this, that, these, or those*, referring to a noun already expressed before a preceding *of*, is generally omitted in rendering. See Model III.

**477.** The Relative is generally rendered by the Latin Relative, but certain differences of idiom require attention.

1. As the Relative clause in Latin often precedes the Antecedent clause, the Antecedent itself is often introduced into the Relative clause. It is then usually represented in its own clause by a demonstrative, *is, idem, hic*, etc. See Model IV.

2. When the real Antecedent is an Appositive, it must in Latin be introduced into the Relative clause. See Model V.

3. Adjectives belonging in sense to the antecedent sometimes stand in the Relative clause, in agreement with the relative, especially comparatives, superlatives, and numerals. See Model VI.

#### 478. MODELS.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| I. The fact itself speaks,<br>and this always has<br><i>very great</i> weight.   | I. <i>Res loquitur ipsa ;<br/>quae semper valet<br/>plurimum.</i>   |
| II. You have a memory, and<br>that too an unbounded<br>one.  | II. <i>Habes memoriam, et<br/>eam infinitam.</i>  |
| III. Whose eloquence was<br>more conspicuous than<br>that of Pisistratus?  | III. <i>Cujus eloquentia prae-<br/>stabilior fuit. quam<br/>Pisistrati?</i>                                 |
| IV. Let every one occupy<br>himself in the art with<br>which he is acquainted.   | IV. <i>Quam quisque norit<br/>artem, in hac se ex-<br/>erceat.</i>  |
| V. Thence I hastened to<br>Amanus, a mountain<br>which separates Syria<br>from Cilicia.                                  | V. <i>Inde ad Amānum<br/>contendi, qui mons<br/>Syriam a Cilicia<br/>dividit.</i>                           |
| VI. Agamemnon vowed to<br>Diana the most beau-<br>tiful thing which had<br>been born <i>that year</i><br>in his kingdom. | VI. <i>Agamemnon devovit<br/>Diānae quod in<br/>suo regno pulcherrī-<br/>mum natum esset<br/>illo anno.</i> |

#### 479. REMARKS.

1. MODEL III. — WHOSE, *cujus*, lit. *of whom*.
2. MODEL IV. — *Norit*, Potential Subj., lit. *whatever art each one may know*.

3. MODEL V. — A MOUNTAIN WHICH, *qui mons*, lit. *which mountain*.

4. MODEL VI. — THE MOST BEAUTIFUL THING WHICH, *quod pulcherrimum*, lit. *which the most beautiful*.

### 480. VOCABULARY.

And that too, <i>et is, ea, id; et is</i>	Joyful, <i>laetus, a, um</i> .
<i>quidem</i> .	Of after superlatives = among,
As to, after <i>so, ut</i> , conj. with subj.	<i>inter</i> , prep. with acc.
Astyages, <i>Astyāges, is, m</i> .	Predict, <i>praedico, ěre, dixi, dictum</i> .
Be held = to be, <i>sum, esse, fui</i> .	Rhetorician, <i>rhetor, ōris, m</i> .
Compare, <i>confĕro, ferre, tūli, collatum</i> .	Say, relate, <i>fero, ferre, tuli, latum</i> .
Conduct one's self, <i>se gerĕre; gero, ěre, gessi, gestum</i> .	Small, contracted, <i>angustus, a, um</i> .
During, in, <i>in</i> , prep. with abl.	Sufficiently, <i>satis</i> , adv.
Eclipse, <i>defectio, ōnis, f</i> .	Suitably = worthily enough, <i>satis digne</i> , adv.
Entertain, hold, <i>teneo, ěre, ui, tentum</i> .	Surpass the folly = be more foolish, <i>esse dementior, ius</i> .
Expose one's self, <i>se opponĕre; oppōno, ěre, posui, positum</i> .	Take place, happen, <i>fiō, fieri, factus sum</i> . G. 294.
Famous, <i>clarus, a, um</i> . The famous, sometimes rendered by <i>ille, a, ud</i> .	Unpopularity, <i>invidia, ae, f</i> .
Foolish, <i>demens, entis</i> .	Well-known, sometimes rendered by <i>ille, a, ud</i> . G. 450, 4.
He, she, etc. = the same one, <i>idem, eadem, idem</i> .	Worthily, <i>digne</i> , adv.

### 481. EXERCISE.

1. Gorgias of Leontini, the well-known ancient rhetorician, was held in great honor. 2. At Rome there were some who exposed themselves to *unpopularity* for the safety of their country. 3. Cicero was in Athens just ten days.

4. Nothing can surpass the folly of those who, in a free state, so conduct themselves as to be feared. 5. That which is base is never useful. 6. Thales of Miletus, who is said to have been the wisest of the Seven, has never been suitably praised. 7. He is said to have predicted the eclipse of the sun which took place in the reign of Astyages. 8. Epicurus, in one house, and that too a small one, entertained *many friends*. 9. Of the many most joyful days which Scipio had seen during his life, that day was the most famous. 10. Let us compare the life of Demosthenes with that of Cicero.

## LESSON LXXXIX.

### PRONOUNS. — INTERROGATIVE. INDEFINITE.

**482.** Why? how is it that? may be rendered by *quid?* Why then? what indeed? by *quid enim?* What of the fact that? by *quid quod?* See Model I.

**483.** The article *a*, or *an*, is generally omitted in rendering, unless it has the force of *a certain, some, any*, in which case it may be rendered by *aliquis*, sometimes even by *quidam* or *quispiam*. See Model II.

**484.** The article *the* is generally omitted in rendering; but when it has the force of *that*, especially before a relative clause, it is rendered by the pronoun *is*, and sometimes by *ille*. See Model III.

**485.** *Every* with an ordinal, and, in most instances, *all* with a superlative or ordinal, should be rendered by *quisque*. See Models I. and IV.

**486.** *One another, each other*, may be rendered by *inter*



*se*, or *inter ipsos*, and *one, one* — *another, another*, by *alius* — *aliū*. See Model V.; also above, 270, Model VIII.

#### 487. MODELS.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| I. What shall we say of the fact that the best men ever die with the greatest equanimity? | I. <i>Quid, quod optĭmus quisque aequissĭmo animo moritur?</i>  |
| II. Cicero did not discuss a part of the case, but spoke upon the whole subject.          | II. <i>Cicĕro non partem egit causae, sed de tota re dixit.</i> |
| III. Xenophon, the pupil of Socrates, wrote history.                                      | III. <i>Xenŏphon, Socratĭcus ille, scripsit historiam.</i>      |
| IV. At every third word of his oration, he threatened me.                                 | IV. <i>Tertio quoque verbo oratĭŏnis suae mihi minabātur.</i>   |
| V. They were unlike each other.   | V. <i>Dissimĭles inter se fuĕrunt.</i>                          |

#### 488. REMARKS.

1. MODEL I. — WHAT SHALL WE SAY OF THE FACT THAT, *quid, quod*, lit. *what, that*, i. e. what of the fact that, or what shall we say? &c.

2. MODEL II. — THE PUPIL OF SOCRATES, *Socratĭcus ille*, THE — emphatic rendered by *ille*.

#### 489. SYNONYMES.

- I. Who, which, what; *quis, uter, qui?*
1. *Quis, quae, quid*; WHO, WHICH ONE, WHICH? — who, which, of any number.
  2. *Uter, utra, utrum*; WHO, WHICH ONE? — which of two.
  3. *Qui, quae, quod*; WHAT, OF WHAT CHARACTER OR

KIND, — inquires after some distinguishing characteristic of the object, while *quis* and *uter* inquire after the object itself.

II. All, every; *omnis, quisque, unus quisque*.

1. *Omnis, e*; ALL, EVERY, EVERY ONE, EVERY PART, — with the idea of including the whole.

2. *Quisque, quaeque, quidque* or *quodque*; EVERY, EVERY ONE, EACH ONE, — giving prominence to the individual, rather than to the whole of which he is a part.

3. *Unus quisque (unus, a, um)*; EVERY ONE, EVERY SINGLE ONE, EVERY INDIVIDUAL OBJECT, — stronger than *quisque*, as it admits no exception.

## 490. VOCABULARY.

Age, period of life, <i>aetas, ætis, f.</i>	Individual, one, <i>unus, a, um. G.</i>
All, each, every, <i>quisque, quaeque, quodque</i> and <i>quidque</i> or <i>quicque</i> ; G. 191, 1, 1); <i>omnis, e.</i>	176, 1.
Each topic, <i>quidque</i> . All the good, <i>optimus quisque</i> , lit. <i>each best man</i> .	Is doing, is done, <i>agitur, actum est</i> , pass. of <i>ago</i> .
Commend, make acceptable, <i>probo, ære, ævi, ætum</i> .	Lightly, <i>leviter</i> , adv.
Commit to writing, <i>litteris mando, ære, ævi, ætum</i> .	On the subject of, concerning, <i>de</i> , prep. with abl.
Condition, state, <i>status, us, m.</i>	Once, formerly, <i>quondam</i> , adv.
Constantly, <i>assiduus, a, um. G.</i>	Praetor, <i>praetor, òris, m.</i>
443.	Roscius, <i>Roscus, ii, m.</i>
Conversation, <i>sermo, ònis, m.</i>	Seek, <i>expeto, ère, petiri, petiturum</i> .
Desirable, <i>optabilis, e.</i>	Sextus, <i>Sextus, i, m.</i>
Fifth, <i>quintus, a, um.</i>	Take the census of, <i>censeo, ère, ui, censum</i> . The census of Sicily is taken, <i>Sicilia censetur</i> .
For the reason that, <i>propterea quod</i> , conj.	Touch, <i>tango, ère, tetigi, tactum</i> .
Friend of the people, <i>popularis, e.</i>	Which, which one, of two, <i>uter, utra, utrum. G. 149.</i>
	With each other, <i>inter se. G.</i>
	448, 1.

## 491. EXERCISE.

1. Who saluted him? 2. Which one of us is the friend of the people, you or I? 3. What is the condition of the republic? 4. I have committed to *writing* the conversation which Crassus and Antony once (formerly) held with each other on the subject of eloquence. 5. The census of Sicily was taken every fifth year; it was taken in the praetorship of Verres. 6. What is more desirable than wisdom? what more worthy of a man? 7. Those who seek *this* are called philosophers. 8. Death is common to every age. 9. Each of your friends will write to you. 10. I will touch *lightly* each individual topic. 11. The consuls so conducted themselves that they commended their plans to all the good. 12. Sextus Roscius not only was not at Rome, but did not know at all what was doing at Rome, for the reason that he was constantly in the country.

## LESSON XC.

VERBS. — ACTIVE. PASSIVE. TRANSITIVE. INTRANSITIVE.

492. With transitive verbs a thought may in general, at the pleasure of the writer, be expressed either actively or passively; but if the subject of the active construction would be an abstract noun with a genitive of the real agent, the passive construction is preferred. See Models I. and II.

493. Those verbs which in English are used both transitively and intransitively must be rendered into Latin with

special care, as we often find in such cases that the transitive sense must be rendered by one verb and the intransitive by another. Thus the verb *to increase*, when used transitively, must be rendered by *augeo*, but when used intransitively by *cresco*.

**494.** The English Impersonal Construction in the passive voice is often rendered personally in Latin. This is especially common with verbs of *perceiving*, *declaring*, *saying*, *thinking*, *finding*, *seeming*, and the like. See Model III.

1. But in the Compound tenses of verbs of *saying* and *thinking*, the Latin prefers the Impersonal Construction: *traditum est*, *dictum est*, *dicendum est*, *credendum est*, etc. See Model IV.

**495.** But the English Personal Construction may sometimes be rendered into Latin by the Impersonal. Thus, —

1. The Second Periphrastic Conjugation is often Impersonal. See Model V.

2. Latin verbs which are intransitive in the active—i. e. do not govern the accusative—in the passive can be used only impersonally. See Model VI.

#### 496. MODELS.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| I. All things were ordained<br>by God.   | I. <i>A Deo omnia constituta sunt.</i>                                     |
| II. The prudence of Cicero<br>liberated the republic<br>from the greatest dangers. | II. <i>Cicerōnis prudentia res publica maximis periculis est liberata.</i> |
| III. It is related that Aristides<br>was the most just of all.                     | III. <i>Aristides omnium iustissimus fuisse traditur.</i>                  |
| IV. It has been said that the<br>law is a silent magistrate.                       | IV. <i>Dictum est legem esse mutum magistratum.</i>                        |
| V. The plans of audacious  | V. <i>Audacium civium con-</i>   |

*citizens* must often be resisted.

VI. An unsuccessful battle was fought by the consuls.

*siliis saepe est resistendum.*

VI. A consulibus male pugnatum est.

### 497. REMARKS.

1. MODEL II. — In this sentence, though the Active construction is used in the English, the Passive is preferable in the Latin.

2. MODEL III. — Observe the Personal construction.

3. MODEL V. — The Impersonal construction is necessary in the Passive, because *resisto* does not admit the Accusative.

4. MODEL VI. — AN UNSUCCESSFUL BATTLE WAS FOUGHT, *male pugnatum est*, lit. *it was fought badly*.

### 498. VOCABULARY.

Acquire, *paro, āre, āvi, ātum.*

Act, do, *facio, ēre, feci, factum.*

Admire, wonder at, *miror, āri, ātus sum, dep.*

Be eminent, *unus, a, um, emineo, ēre, ui, or emineo alone.*

Commonwealth, *res publica, rei publicae, f.*

Desert, *desēro, ēre, serui, sertum.*

Diminish, *minuo, ēre, ui, ūtum.*

Eminent, excelling, *excellens, entis.*

Esteem lightly, despise, *contemno, ēre, tempsi, temptum.*

Great, illustrious, *amplus, a, um.*

Increase, trans., *augeo, ēre, auxi, auctum.*

Kind, every kind, *omne genus; genus, ēris, n.*

My, your, etc., own productions, *mea, tua*, etc. G. 441, 1.

Old, *senex, senis*; as substant., *an old person.*

Oratory, *dicendi, o, um, o*, ger. of *dico*, lit. *of, for*, etc., *speaking.*

Resources, means, *opes, opum, f. pl.* G. 133, 1.

Scaevola. *Scaevola, ae, f.*

So far, *tantum*, adv. So far am I from, *tantum abest ut* with subj., the clause with *ut* being the subject of *abest*.

Spirit, courage, *animus, i, m.*

Withdraw, *dectdo, ēre, cessi, cessum.*

## 499. EXERCISE.

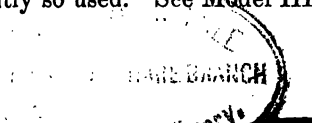
1. Money has always been lightly esteemed by all the greatest and most distinguished men. 2. He *defended* the commonwealth when he was a *young man*; he will not *desert* it now that he is *old*. 3. I have always praised Cato as a commander. 4. Cato, as a man eminent (excelling) in every virtue, has been praised by *all*. 5. It seems to me that Crassus acted more wisely than Scaevola. 6. So far are we from admiring our own productions, that Demosthenes himself, who is eminent among all *in every kind of oratory* (speaking), does not satisfy us. 7. Your plans will not *diminish*, but *increase*, the calamity. 8. There is no doubt that the resources and spirits of the enemy are increasing from day to day. 9. The *valor of Scipio* compelled Hannibal to withdraw from Italy. 10. We must not only acquire wisdom, but also use it.

## LESSON XCI.

## VERBS. — GENERAL STATEMENTS.

500. In general statements the second person singular, or the first and third persons plural, are often used in Latin to denote an indefinite subject, as people, persons in general. Thus, —

I. The second person singular is used when the remark is conceived of as addressed to *any one* who may chance to hear or read it; *you, any one*. The second person of the subjunctive is frequently so used. See Model III.



II. The first person plural is used when the speaker wishes to include himself in the general statement; *we ought, every one ought*. The third person plural is used in such general expressions as *they say, they report, they think*, etc. See Models I. and II.

III. But in such general statements, the third person singular of the passive voice is often used in Latin. See Model III.

### 501. MODELS.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| I. We envy those who have the things which we long to have.                                  | I. <i>Iis aemulāmur qui ea habent, quae nos habere cupimus.</i>    |
| II. They say that Solon was the wisest of the Athenians.                                     | II. <i>Solōnem dicunt Atheniensium sapientissimum fuisse.</i>      |
| III. Having obtained a victory, you should consult for those whom you have subdued by force. | III. <i>Parta victoria, iis quos vi deviceris consulendum est.</i> |

### 502. REMARKS.

1. MODEL II. — For the position of *dicunt*, see Remarks 304, 1.
2. MODEL III. — YOU SHOULD CONSULT FOR = one should consult for, *consulendum est*.

### 503. SYNONYMES.

Knowledge, foresight, wisdom; *scientia, prudentia, sapientia*.

1. *Scientia, ae, f.*; KNOWLEDGE, SKILL, — knowledge both theoretical and practical.

2. *Prudentia*, *ae*, *f*.; FORESIGHT, PRUDENCE, SAGACITY, SOUND JUDGMENT.

3. *Sapientia*, *ae*, *f*.; WISDOM,—involving both discernment and culture.

## 504. VOCABULARY.

Adversary, <i>adversarius</i> , <i>ii</i> , <i>masc.</i> adj. used as substant.	Openly, <i>palam</i> , <i>adv.</i> An open adversary, <i>palam adversarius</i> .
Author, adviser, <i>auctor</i> , <i>ōris</i> , <i>m.</i> and <i>f</i> .	Possess, have, <i>habeo</i> , <i>ēre</i> , <i>ui</i> , <i>itum</i> .
Avoid, <i>vito</i> , <i>āre</i> , <i>āvi</i> , <i>ātum</i> .	Quickly, <i>celeriter</i> , <i>adv.</i>
Be on one's guard, <i>caveo</i> , <i>ēre</i> , <i>cavi</i> , <i>cautum</i> .	Set fire to, <i>inflammo</i> , <i>āre</i> , <i>āvi</i> , <i>ātum</i> .
Confidence, <i>fides</i> , <i>ēi</i> , <i>f</i> . Have confidence in, <i>fidem habeo</i> with <i>dat</i> .	Suggestion, at the suggestion of, <i>auctor</i> in the <i>abl. abs.</i> At the suggestion of the Magi, <i>Magis auctoribus</i> , <i>lit. the Magi being advisers</i> .
Contend, <i>decerto</i> , <i>āre</i> , <i>āvi</i> , <i>ātum</i> .	Think, <i>arbitror</i> , <i>āvi</i> , <i>ātus sum</i> , <i>dep</i> .
Easily, <i>facile</i> , <i>adv</i> .	Towards, <i>adversus</i> , <i>prep.</i> with <i>acc</i> .
-Injury, harm, <i>injuria</i> , <i>ae</i> , <i>f</i> .	Undertake, <i>suscipio</i> , <i>ēre</i> , <i>cepi</i> , <i>ceptum</i> .
Instance, thing, <i>res</i> , <i>rei</i> , <i>f</i> .	Unharméd, <i>sine injuria</i> , <i>lit. without harm</i> , according to connection, without <i>doing</i> or without <i>suffering</i> wrong.
Know, understand, <i>intelligo</i> , <i>ēre</i> , <i>lexi</i> , <i>lectum</i> .	Xerxes, <i>Xerxes</i> , <i>is</i> , <i>m</i> .
Live, one lives, men live, <i>vivitur</i> , <i>lit. it is lived</i> .	
Magian, <i>pl. the Magi</i> , <i>Magus</i> , <i>i</i> , <i>m</i> .	
Mother, <i>mater</i> , <i>tris</i> , <i>f</i> .	
Muse, <i>Musa</i> , <i>ae</i> , <i>f</i> .	

## 505. EXERCISE.

1. They say that he is the wisest who most quickly perceives in each instance what is true. 2. We have confidence in those whom we think to know (understand)



more than ourselves. 3. By being on your guard, you would easily avoid him who is an open adversary. 4. It is said that Xerxes, at the suggestion of the Magi, set fire to the temples of Greece. 5. There are certain duties to be observed even towards those from whom you have received an injury. 6. Wars must be undertaken that men may live in peace unharmed (without injury). 7. Although the results of war are uncertain, yet one should contend for liberty at the peril of life. 8. While we sleep the Muses will not give us the knowledge of writing, reading, and the other arts. 9. Cicero says that wisdom is the mother of all good arts. 10. The knowledge of the liberal arts is more useful than money. 11. All statesmen ought to possess the highest prudence.

## LESSON XCII.

### VERBS. — TENSES.

**506.** In English the Present tense is sometimes used of an action which is really future, and must therefore be rendered into Latin by the Future tense. See Model I.

**507.** In English, the Present, the Future, or the Perfect, is sometimes used of a future action which must be completed before some specified event. In such cases it must be rendered into Latin by the Future Perfect. See Model II.

**508.** When the English Imperfect or Past tense simply states an historical fact, without any reference to the continuance of the action, it must be rendered into Latin by the Perfect; but when it pictures a scene, or represents the action as continuing, it must be rendered by the Imperfect. See Models III. and IV.

**509.** The Imperfect with *while* is often best rendered by *dum* with the Present. See Model IV.

**510.** The Perfect with *have*, when used of an action which has been going on for some time, is best rendered by the Present, generally with *jamdiu. jamdūdum*, etc. See Model V.

### 511. MODELS.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| I. If we follow <i>nature</i> , we shall not go astray.   | I. <i>Natūram si sequēmur, non aberrabimus.</i>                   |
| II. When I reach Rome, I will write to you.   | II. <i>Romam quum venēro, scribam ad te.</i>                      |
| III. They saw the gleaming swords.  | III. <i>Fulgentes gladios vidēbant.</i>                           |
| IV. While our soldiers were collecting these things, the king himself escaped from their hands. | IV. <i>Haec dum nostri colligunt, rex ipse effugit e manibus.</i> |
| V. I have not known for a long time what you are doing.   | V. <i>Jamdiu ignōro quid agas.</i>                                |

### 512. REMARKS.

1. MODEL I. — IF WE FOLLOW, Latin idiom, *if we shall follow*. The action really belongs to the future.

2. MODEL II. — WHEN I REACH, Latin idiom, *when I shall have reached*, — a future action to be completed before the time of writing.

3. MODEL IV. — WHILE OUR SOLDIERS WERE COLLECTING, Latin idiom, *while our (soldiers) collect*.

4. MODEL V. — I HAVE NOT KNOWN FOR A LONG TIME, Latin idiom, *for a long time I do not know*.

## 513. SYNONYMES.

Innocence, honesty, integrity, virtue; *innocentia, honestas, integritas, virtus*.

1. *Innocentia, ae, f.*; INNOCENCE, BLAMELESSNESS, — freedom from guilt.

2. *Honestas, ātis, f.*; HONESTY, MORAL WORTH, — especially as shown in character and intention.

3. *Integritas, ātis, f.*; INTEGRITY, UPRIGHTNESS, — involving the idea of *soundness* and *completeness* of moral character.

4. *Virtus, ūtis, f.*; VIRTUE, MORAL WORTH, — as shown both in life and in character, more comprehensive than either of the other three words.

## 514. VOCABULARY.

Accommodate one's self to, yield to, *obsequor, i, secutus sum*, dep.

Assiduously, *studiōse*, adv.

Consider, consider as, *arbitror, āri, ātus sum*.

Defendant, *reus, rei, m.*

Eagerly, *cupide*, adv.

For a long time, *jamdūdum*, adv.

Good will, *benevolentia, ae, f.*

Happen, befall, *accido, ēre, cidi*.

If any, *si quis, quae* or *qua, quid*.

G. 190, 2.

Indeed, I, thou, etc.: a personal

pronoun with a conj. is often best rendered by the relat. *qui, quae, quod*. G. 453.

Inhabitant, *incōla, ae, m. and f.*

Innocence, *innocentia, ae, f.*

Less, *minus*, adv.

Let = cause that, *facio, ēre, feci, factum, ut* with subj.

Means, by no means, *nulla re*, lit. *by no thing*.

Moral worth, honor, *honestas, ātis, f.*

More fully, *pluribus verbis*, lit. *with more words*.

Obtain, <i>nanciscor</i> , <i>i</i> , <i>nactus sum</i> , dep.	Preceptress, <i>praecepatrix</i> , <i>icis</i> , <i>f</i> .
Occasion, there is occasion, need, <i>opus est, fuit</i> .	Proof, <i>testimonium</i> , <i>ii</i> , <i>n</i> .
One's, one's own, <i>suus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .	World, <i>mundus</i> , <i>i</i> , <i>m</i> .
Others', of others, another's, <i>alienus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .	Yesterday's, of yesterday, <i>hesternus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> . Yesterday, <i>hesterno die</i> . G. 426.

## 515. EXERCISE.

1. Socrates considered himself an inhabitant and citizen of the whole world. 2. If anything *new* shall happen, we will let you know. 3. If there shall be any occasion, you will let us know. 4. I will write to you more fully when I obtain more leisure. 5. Our forefathers assiduously cultivated their own fields; they did not eagerly seek those of others. 6. I never pleased myself less than yesterday; indeed, while I accommodated myself to the young men, I forgot that I was old. 7. The defendant has given me the proof of his innocence. 8. I have often admired the moral worth of *Socrates*. 9. With wisdom as a preceptress, one can live in tranquillity. 10. Statesmen can by no means more easily secure the good will of the multitude than by integrity and virtue. 11. I have *for a long time* desired to visit Athens. 12. We had for a long time desired to visit Rome.

## LESSON XCIII.

## VERBS. — INDICATIVE.

**516.** The English Indicative must often be rendered by the Latin Subjunctive. Thus, —

1. Often in clauses denoting Cause, or Time and Cause. See Model I.

2. In Indirect Questions. See Model II.

3. In the Subordinate Clauses of Indirect Discourse. See Model III.

4. In Relative Clauses defining indefinite antecedents. See Model IV.

5. In Clauses denoting Result, and sometimes in Conditional and in Concessive Clauses. See Model V.

**517.** The Indicative with *that*, in a clause which is used either as the subject or the object of a verb, is generally best rendered into Latin by the Infinitive with a Subject Accusative. See Model VI.

**518. MODELS.**

I. Panaetius praises Scipio Africanus, because he was temperate.

II. It is asked whether one duty is greater than another.

III. Ennius does not think that one should mourn over death which immortality follows.

I. *Panaetius Scipiōnem Africānum laudat, quod fuērit abstīnens.*

II. *Quaeritur numquod officium aliud alio majus sit.*

III. *Ennius non censet lugendam esse mortem quam immortalitas consequatur.*

IV. There is no one who is not able to attain to virtue.

V. I would not decline the labor, if I had any leisure time.

VI. We hear that Catiline spoke of the republic with some in one way and with others in another.

V. *Nemo est qui ad virtutem pervenire non possit.*

V. *Laborem non recusarem, si mihi ullum esset vacuum tempus.*

VI. *Catilinam aliter cum aliis de re publica locutum audimus.*

### 519. REMARKS.

1. MODEL III. — THAT ONE SHOULD MOURN OVER DEATH, *lugendam esse mortem*, lit. *that death should be mourned*.

2. MODEL VI. — WITH SOME IN ONE WAY AND WITH OTHERS IN ANOTHER, *aliter cum aliis*, lit. *in another way with others*.

### 520. VOCABULARY.

Alone, *solus, a, um*. G. 149.

Aristotle, *Aristotēles, is, m*.

Delightful, charming, *dulcis, e*.

Destitute of, *expers, ertis*. G. 399.

Do, act, *ago, ēre, egi, actum*.

Entirely, *amnino*, adv.

Evening, *vesper, ēris, m*. At evening, *vespēri*.

For the sake of, *gratia* or *causa* with gen. G. 414, 2, 3).

Justice, *justitia, ae, f*.

Justly, *juste*, adv.

Learning, erudition, *eruditio, ōnis, f*.

Offer, *affēro, ferre, attūli, allatum*.

Opinion, *opinio, ōnis, f*.

Prince, *princeps, īpis, m*.

Recall, call to mind, *commemōro, āre, āvi, ātum*.

Say — not, deny, *nego, āre, āvi, ātum*. Say that no one = deny that any one, *nego*, etc.

Wont, be wont, *soleo, ēre, solitus sum*. G. 272, 3.

## 521. EXERCISE.

1. Brutus has written to me ; but what he wishes I do not know ; for what counsel can I offer him, since I need *counsel* myself? 2. For the sake of exercising my memory, I recall at *evening* what each day I have said, heard, and done. 3. *When boys*, we had the opinion that Socrates, the prince of philosophers, was entirely destitute of all learning. 4. Epicurus says that one cannot live happily, unless one lives wisely, honestly, and justly. 5. Cicero says that no one, who does not live honestly, can live happily. 6. Publius Scipio was wont to say, that he was never less at leisure than when at leisure, nor less alone than when alone. 7. The poets are so delightful that they are not only read, but also committed to memory.

## LESSON XCIV.

## VERBS. — POTENTIAL MOOD.

522. The English Potential Mood, with the signs, *may*, *can*, *might*, *could*, *would*, *should*, is generally best rendered by the Latin Subjunctive. See Model I.

523. But the Potential may sometimes be rendered by the Indicative, and sometimes even by the Infinitive. Thus, —

1. By the Indicative of the Periphrastic Conjugations in the historical tenses, especially in conditional sentences. See Model II.

2. The Potential may be rendered by the Indicative in

expressions of *duty, necessity, ability*, and the like, and in such expressions as, *it would be fair, proper, just, tedious, difficult, better, more useful*, etc. See Model III.

3. The Potential after *that* may sometimes be rendered by the Infinitive. See Model IV.

**524.** In English, after the conjunctions, *if, unless, except, though, although, that, lest, in order that*, etc., the verb takes the *form* sometimes of the Indicative, sometimes of the Potential, and sometimes of the Subjunctive. But the verb after these conjunctions must generally be rendered into Latin either by the Indicative or by the Subjunctive, and in choosing between these two moods, the learner must be guided by the directions given him in his Grammar. See G. 489-523; also Model V.

### 525. MODELS.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| I. What can seem <i>great</i> to him to whom all eternity is known?         | I. <i>Quid videātur ei magnum, cui aeternitas omnis nota sit?</i> |
| II. This condition should not have been accepted.                           | II. <i>Haec conditio non accipienda fuit.</i>                     |
| III. It would be tedious to reply to all that has been said by you.         | III. <i>Longum est ad omnia respondere quae a te dicta sunt.</i>  |
| IV. It is of great interest to us that you should come as soon as possible. | IV. <i>Magni nostra interest te quam primum venire.</i>           |
| V. If I ask you anything, will you not reply?                               | V. <i>Si te rogavero aliquid, nonne respondebis?</i>              |



## 526. REMARKS.

1. MODEL II. — SHOULD NOT HAVE BEEN ACCEPTED, Latin idiom, *was not to be accepted*, or *did not deserve to be accepted*.

2. MODEL III. — IT WOULD BE TEDIOUS, Latin idiom, *it is long*, i. e. a long task.

3. MODEL V. — IF I ASK, *si rogavero*, lit. *if I shall have asked*.

## 527. VOCABULARY.

Appropriate to, apply to, <i>conféro</i> ,	Impel, <i>impello</i> , <i>êre</i> , <i>pûli</i> , <i>pulsum</i> .
<i>ferre</i> , <i>tûli</i> , <i>collatum</i> , in with acc.	Important, is important to, <i>intêrest</i> , <i>fuit</i> : G. 408.
As much — as, <i>tantus</i> — <i>quantus</i> :	Inform, <i>certiôrem facio</i> , <i>êre</i> , <i>feci</i> , <i>factum</i> ; lit. <i>make more cer-</i> <i>tain</i> .
each, of course, to be in its proper construction in its own clause.	Liberality, <i>liberalitas</i> , <i>âtis</i> , f.
Asia, <i>Asia</i> , <i>ae</i> , f.	Mention, <i>commemôro</i> , <i>âre</i> , <i>âvi</i> , <i>âtum</i> .
Beneficence, <i>beneficentia</i> , <i>ae</i> , f.	Noble, honorable, <i>honestus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .
Better, preferable, <i>satius</i> , properly neut. comp. from <i>satis</i> ; lit. <i>more satisfactory</i> .	Object of interest, <i>quod visendum</i> <i>est</i> ; lit. <i>what should be visited</i> .
Certainly, <i>certe</i> , adv.	Silent, <i>mutus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .
Depart from, <i>exeo</i> , <i>ire</i> , <i>ii</i> , <i>itum</i> .	Sufficient, be sufficient, be able, <i>possum</i> , <i>posse</i> , <i>potui</i> .
Differently, <i>aliter</i> , adv.	Think little of, despise, <i>contemno</i> , <i>êre</i> , <i>temptsi</i> , <i>temptum</i> .
Either — or, <i>vel</i> — <i>vel</i> , etc. G. 587, II., 2.	Understand, <i>intelligo</i> , <i>êre</i> , <i>lexi</i> , <i>lectum</i> .
Flaccus, <i>Flaccus</i> , <i>i</i> , m.	Unnecessary, not necessary, <i>non</i> <i>necessarius</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .
Follow, <i>sequor</i> , <i>i</i> , <i>secutus sum</i> , dep. To follow this course, that course, &c., <i>hoc</i> , <i>illud</i> , etc., <i>sequor</i> .	Vender, <i>venditor</i> , <i>ôris</i> , m.
Govern, rule, <i>rego</i> , <i>êre</i> , <i>rex</i> , <i>rec-</i> <i>tum</i> .	Whole, the whole of, <i>totus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> , adj. G. 149.

## 528. EXERCISE.

1. It would be tedious and unnecessary to mention all the objects of interest in the *whole of Asia*. 2. Flaccus thinks that it is important to him that I should write you as often as possible. 3. If I thought differently, certainly your admonition would be sufficient to impel me to follow the course which you think best. 4. I wish that you would write to me on what day you think that you will depart from Rome, that I may inform you in what place I shall be. 5. Would it not be better to be silent, than to speak that which no one understands? 6. The republic should have been wisely governed. 7. Nothing is more noble than to think little of money, if you do not have it; and if you have it, to appropriate it to beneficence and liberality. 8. What is there which cannot be purchased, if you give as much as the *vender* wishes?

## LESSON XCV.

## VERBS. — IMPERATIVE.

529. The Imperative with *let* is generally best rendered by the First and Third Persons of the Latin Subjunctive, while other Imperatives are generally best rendered by the Latin Present Imperative. See Models I. and II.

530. Remember that the Imperative with a negative is best rendered by *noli* and *notite* with the Infinitive. See Model III.

## 531. MODELS.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>I. See that you come as soon as possible.</p> <p>II. Since life without friends is full of fear, let us secure friendships.</p> <p>III. Do not think that the consul did this without great pain.</p> | <p>I. <i>Cura ut quam primum venias.</i></p> <p>II. <i>Quum vita sine amicis metus plena sit, amicitias comparēmus.</i></p> <p>III. <i>Noli putāre consulem hoc sine magno dolore fecisse.</i></p> |
|--|--|

## 532. REMARKS.

1. MODEL I. — SEE THAT, *cura ut*, lit. *take care that*.
2. MODEL III. — DO NOT THINK, *noli putāre*, lit. *do not wish to think*. See G. 538, 2.

## 533. SYNONYMES.

To approve, to praise, to extol; *probo, laudo, extollo laudibus* or *laudando*.

1. *Probo, āre, āvi, ātum*; TO APPROVE.
2. *Laudo, āre, āvi, ātum*; TO PRAISE, TO COMMEND.
3. *Extollo, ēre, laudibus* or *laudando*; TO LAUD, EXTOL.

## 534. VOCABULARY.

Action, deed, <i>factum</i> , i, n.	Care for, <i>curo, āre, āvi, ātum</i> .
Arrange with reference to, <i>refēro, ferre, tūli, lātum, ad</i> with acc.; lit. <i>refer to</i> .	Desire, <i>colo, velle, volui</i> , G. 293; <i>opto, āre, āvi, ātum</i> . See Syn. 618.

Eagerly, <i>vehementer</i> , adv.	Other, the other, the second of
Engaged, be engaged in, <i>sum, esse, fui, in</i> with abl.; lit. <i>to be in</i> .	two, <i>alter, ĕra, ĕrum</i> . G. 149; 149, 2.
Extol, <i>extollo, ĕre</i> , with <i>laudibus</i> or <i>laudando</i> .	Proceed, <i>pergo, ĕre, perrexi, perfectum</i> .
Guard, defend, <i>tueor, ĕri, tutus sum</i> , dep.	Such — as, in quality, <i>talis — qualis</i> ; in character, <i>is — qui</i> ; lit. <i>the one who</i> or <i>which</i> . See G. 186, 4, and 451, 4.
Heaven, <i>coelum, i, n.</i> See G. 143, 1.	That, not strongly demonstrative, especially as antecedent of relative, <i>is, ea, id</i> .
Immortal, <i>immortalis, e</i> .	Toil, labor, <i>labor, ĕris, m</i> .
Interests, profit, <i>utilitas, atis, f</i> .	
Observe, retain, <i>teneo, ĕre, ui, tentum</i> .	

### 535. EXERCISE.

1. Do not doubt that there were *poets* before Homer. 2. Proceed, young men, and devote yourselves to the study in which you are now engaged, that you may be both an honor to yourselves and an advantage to your friends. 3. Let us imitate those who, by their counsels and toils, have attained immortal glory. 4. Let us think that the most useful, which will be the best. 5. Let us be such as we wish to be regarded. 6. I am eagerly awaiting a letter from you, and indeed such a one as I especially desire. 7. Let us arrange all our plans and actions with reference to virtue. 8. We not only approve, but also praise, your plans. 9. There are some who, with their praises, extol Marcus Cato to heaven. 10. Let those who are to be statesmen observe two precepts of Plato, one that they should guard the interests of the citizens, the other that they should care for the whole state.

## LESSON XCVI.

## VERBS. — INFINITIVE.

**536.** When the English Infinitive is simply the subject or the object of a verb, it should be rendered by the Latin Infinitive. See Model I.

**537.** When the English Infinitive either expresses purpose or result, or is dependent upon a noun or adjective, it can seldom be rendered by the Latin Infinitive. When thus used, it should generally be rendered by one of the following constructions :

1. By the Subjunctive of Purpose or Result. See Model II.; also G. 489-501.

2. By the Genitive of the Gerund or Gerundive with *causa* or *gratia*. See Model III.

3. By the Accusative of the Gerund or Gerundive with *ad*. See Model IV.

4. By a Relative Clause. See Model V.; also G. 501, III.

5. By the Supine in *u*. See Model VI.

**538. MODELS.**

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| I. All wished to hear Cicero.          | I. <i>Omnes Cicerōnem audire voluērunt.</i>   |
| II. I exhort you to read this oration. | II. <i>Te hortor ut hanc orationēm legas.</i> |
| III. He came to Rome to visit me.      | III. <i>Romam venit mei visendi causa.</i>    |
| IV. Cicero arose to reply.             | IV. <i>Cicēro ad respondendum surrexit.</i>   |

- V. The consul was worthy to command.      V. *Consul dignus fuit qui imperāret.*  
 VI. Let us inquire what it is best to do.      VI. *Quaerāmus quid optimum factu sit.*

## 539. REMARKS.

1. MODEL III. — TO VISIT ME, *mei visendi causa*, lit. *for the sake of visiting me.*

2. MODEL V. — WORTHY TO COMMAND, Latin idiom, *worthy who should command*, i. e. *worthy that he should command.*

## 540. VOCABULARY.

Advantage, <i>commōdum</i> , i, n.	Interrupt, <i>interpello</i> , āre, āvi, ātum.
Archytas, <i>Archytas</i> , ae, m.	Know, know how, <i>scio</i> , <i>scire</i> , <i>scivi</i> , <i>scitum</i> .
Assembly, <i>concio</i> , ōnis, f.	Lawful, it is lawful, <i>licet</i> , <i>licuit</i> or <i>licitum est</i> . G. 299.
Attention, exertion, <i>opēra</i> , ae, f.	Not, not at all, <i>nihil</i> . G. 380, 2.
Connected, <i>continens</i> , entis.	Pay one's respects to, <i>salūto</i> , āre, āvi, ātum.
Curio, <i>Curio</i> , ōnis, m.	Perhaps, <i>forſitan</i> , adv.
Deserve, <i>mereo</i> , ēre, ui, itum; <i>mereor</i> , ēri, itus sum, dep.	Reply, <i>respondeo</i> , ēre, spondi, sponsum.
Devise, <i>invenio</i> , ire, vēni, ventum.	Syracusan, of Syracuse, <i>Syracusius</i> , a, um.
Dion, <i>Dio</i> or <i>Dion</i> , ōnis, m.	Urge, <i>impello</i> , ēre, pūli, pulsum.
Discourse, <i>oratio</i> , ōnis, f.	Wonderful, <i>mirabilis</i> , e.
Early in the morning, <i>mane</i> , adv.	
Evident, be evident, <i>consto</i> , āre, stiti, stātum.	
Give heed, <i>opēram do</i> , dare, dedi, datum.	
Injure, <i>noceo</i> , ēre, ui, itum. G. 385.	

## 541. EXERCISE.

1. If we wish to be both wise and happy, we must give heed to virtue. 2. Plato wrote to *Archytas* to remember that he was born, not for himself only, but for his country. 3. We are prepared to hear. 4. It is not lawful to injure *another* for the sake of one's own advantage. 5. It is evident that *laws* were devised for the safety of citizens. 6. I will not interrupt you at all; I prefer to hear a connected discourse. 7. Plato urged Dion of Syracuse to liberate his country. 8. Perhaps this which I am about to say may be wonderful to hear, but I will certainly say that which I think. 9. Pompey is a suitable person to command the Roman army. 10. Know that Curio came to me *to pay his respects*. 11. Early in the morning men come into the assembly; they inquire what it is best to do. 12. Socrates replied to his judges that he had deserved to be presented with the highest honors. 13. All things are easily learned, if you know how to learn.

## LESSON XCVII.

## VERBS. — PARTICIPLES.

**542.** The English Participle may generally be rendered by the Latin Participle. See Model I.

**543.** The English Perfect Active Participle may be rendered by one of the following constructions:

1. By the Perfect Participle of a Deponent verb. See Model II.

2. By the Perfect Passive Participle in the Ablative Absolute. See Model III.

3. By *Quum* with the Subjunctive. See Model IV.

4. By *Postquam* with the Indicative. See Model V.

**544.** The English expressions, *so called*, *the so called*, *what they* or *you call*, are rendered by Relative Clauses, *qui dicĭtur*, *qui vocĭtur*, *qui appellĭtur*, *quem dicunt* or *dicis*, *quem vocant* or *vocas*, etc. See Model VI.

**545.** The English Participle in *ing*, when used substantively, must be rendered by the Gerund or Gerundive. See Model VII.

#### 546. MODELS.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| I. I <i>have received</i> your carefully written letter.  | I. <i>Accēpi tuam diligenter scriptam epistōlam.</i>   |
| II. Having tarried a few days at Corinth, he came to Athens.                                      | II. <i>Corinthe paucos dies commorĭtus, Athēnas venit.</i>                                     |
| III. The commanders, having conquered the enemy, presented their secretaries with gold rings.     | III. <i>Imperatōres, hoste superĭto, scribas suos annūlis aureis donavērunt.</i>               |
| IV. Mithridates, having betaken himself into his own kingdom, made an attack upon the Roman army. | IV. <i>Mithridātes, quum se in regnum recepisset suum, in exercĭtum Romĭnum impētum fecit.</i> |
| V. The actor, having been hissed from the stage, fled to you for protection.                      | V. <i>Histrĭo, postquam e scena sibilis explodebĭtur, ad te confūgit.</i>                      |



- |   |   |
|---|---|
| VI. That law, as you call it,<br>is not a law.                | VI. <i>Lex ista quam vocas<br/>non est lex.</i>                 |
| VII. We are animated with<br>the desire of living<br>happily. | VII. <i>Beāte vivendi cupi-<br/>ditāte incensi su-<br/>mus.</i> |

## 547. REMARKS.

1. MODEL III. — HAVING CONQUERED THE ENEMY, *hoste superāto*, lit. *the enemy having been overcome*.
2. MODEL IV. — HAVING BETAKEN HIMSELF, *quum se recepisset*, lit. *when he had betaken himself*.
3. MODEL VI. — AS YOU CALL IT, *quam vocas*, lit. *which you call*.

## 548. SYNONYMES.

To be grateful, to thank, to reciprocate a favor; *gratiam (gratias) habeo, gratias ago, gratiam refēro*.

1. *Gratiam (gratias) habeo, ēre, ui, itum*; TO BE GRATEFUL, — to have or feel gratitude.

2. *Gratias ago, ēre, egi, actum*; TO THANK, TO RETURN THANKS, — to express gratitude.

3. *Gratiam refēro, ferre, tūli, lātum*; TO RECIPROCATATE A FAVOR, TO RETURN OR REQUITE A FAVOR, — to show gratitude by deeds.

## 549. VOCABULARY.

Carefully, <i>diligenter</i> , adv.	Maiden, <i>virgo</i> , <i>inis</i> , f.
Deed, thing, <i>res</i> , <i>rei</i> , f.	Mantineia, <i>Mantinea</i> , <i>ae</i> , f.
Entertain gratitude, be grateful, <i>gratiam habeo, ēre, ui, itum</i> .	Novel, <i>novus</i> , <i>a, um</i> .
Establish, <i>firmiter, āre, āvi, ātum</i> .	Olympus, <i>Olympus</i> , <i>i, m</i> .
Express thanks, <i>gratias ago, ēre, egi, actum</i> .	Part, <i>pars, partis</i> , f.
	Poor, with limited means, <i>inops</i> , <i>ōpis</i> .

Robber, <i>praedo</i> , <i>onis</i> , m.	Start, set out, <i>proficiscor</i> , <i>i</i> , <i>profec-</i>
Sabine, <i>Sabinus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .	<i>tus sum</i> , dep.
Seize, <i>rapio</i> , <i>ere</i> , <i>rapui</i> , <i>raptum</i> .	Surely, <i>certe</i> , adv.
Servilius, <i>Servilius</i> , <i>ii</i> , m.	Tarry, <i>commoror</i> , <i>ari</i> , <i>atus sum</i> ,
Some time = at some time, <i>ali-</i>	dep.
<i>quando</i> , adv.	Towards, <i>versus</i> , adv., usually after thé word denoting place.

### 550. EXERCISE.

1. Having been asked my opinion, I said many things in regard to the *republic*. 2. Cicero, having been asked his opinion, said that which was most worthy of the republic. 3. I received *many* letters from you on the *same day*, all carefully written. 4. We see all parts of Italy adorned with the most beautiful monuments. 5. Publius Servilius, the commander of the Roman army, having achieved the greatest deeds, took the ancient city of Olympus. 6. Epaminondas, having conquered the Lacedaemonians at Mantinea, died in joy and victory. 7. The robbers, having tarried one night at Capua, started towards Rome. 8. I entertain the greatest gratitude to you for your favor. 9. O that we some time may be able to requite *your* favor; we shall indeed *ever* be grateful. 10. A poor man, if he cannot requite a favor, can surely be grateful. 11. We desire to express our thanks to you in the strongest terms. 12. Romulus pursued a novel plan *for establishing a state*, when he ordered the Sabine maidens to be seized.

## LESSON XCVIII.

## DISTINCTION IN THE USE OF PARTICIPLES, RELATIVE CLAUSES, AND CLAUSES WITH CONJUNCTIONS.

**551.** Participles, Relative Clauses, and Clauses with Conjunctions, are in Latin kindred constructions, and must, accordingly, be used with care and discrimination. Thus, —

I. The Relative Clause is generally used when we wish to *identify* a person or thing by specifying some characteristic, or to *call attention* to some *permanent* and *essential* quality or habit. See Models I. and II.

II. A Clause with a Conjunction is generally used when we wish to make the relation of *time*, *cause*, *condition*, *concession*, etc., particularly prominent. See Model III.

III. The Participle may be used, —

1. Instead of the Relative Clause, when we wish to indicate only an *accidental* or *temporary* connection between a quality or an action and the noun to which it is referred; and, —

2. Instead of a Clause with a Conjunction, when the relation of *time*, *cause*, *condition*, *concession*, etc., is not particularly prominent. See Models IV. and V.

**552. MODELS.**

- I. In the book entitled  
Laelius, Cicero wrote  
on the subject of  
friendship.
- II. The virtue which boldly  
meets coming evils is  
called fortitude.

- I. *In eo libro qui in-*  
*scribitur Laelius,*  
*Cicero de amicitia*  
*scripsit.*
- II. *Virtus quae venientibus*  
*malis obstat*  
*fortitudo nominatur.*

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| III. I seem to be in <i>Rome</i><br>when I read your let-<br>ters.<br>IV. I have sent <i>you</i> a letter<br>written in Greek.<br>V. Not knowing the true<br>path of glory, he pre-<br>fers to be feared by the<br>citizens rather than<br>loved. | III. <i>Romæ videor esse</i><br><i>quum tuas epistōlas</i><br><i>lego.</i><br>IV. <i>Epistōlam Graece com-</i><br><i>positam misi ad te.</i><br>V. <i>Ignōrans verum iter</i><br><i>gloriae, metui a</i><br><i>civibus quam diligi</i><br><i>mauvult.</i> |
|---|---|

## 553. REMARKS.

1. MODEL I. — ENTITLED LAELIUS. This identifies the book thus entitled, and must therefore be expressed by the Relative Clause.

2. MODEL II. — COMING. This does not identify the evils, and may therefore be rendered by the Participle.

## 554. SYNONYMES.

To remember, to recollect, to recall to mind; *memīni*, *reminiscor*, *recordor*.

1. *Memīni*; TO REMEMBER, — to retain in memory. See G. 297.

2. *Reminiscor*, *i*; TO REMEMBER, TO RECOLLECT, TO RECALL TO MIND, — to recall by an effort of the memory.

3. *Recordor*, *āri*, *ātus sum*; TO RECALL TO MIND, TO CHERISH THE MEMORY OF, — to recall to mind and to dwell upon the recollection, generally with pleasure.

## 555. VOCABULARY.

Advice, give advice, advise, <i>suadeo</i> , <i>ere</i> , <i>suasi</i> , <i>suasum</i> .	All, all together, <i>cunctus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> . Any, <i>ullus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> . G. 149.
---	--

Civil, belonging to the city, <i>urbānus, a, um.</i>	Inscribe, <i>inscribo, ěre, scripsi, scriptum.</i>
Excellent, good, <i>bonus, a, um.</i> G. 165.	Military, pertaining to war, <i>bellicus, a, um.</i>
For the first time, <i>primum, adv.</i>	Nearly, <i>paene, adv.</i>
Hearing, in the hearing of, pres. part. of <i>audio</i> in the abl. absol.; e. g., in the hearing of Greece, <i>audiente Graecia</i> , lit. <i>Greece hearing.</i>	Nineteen, <i>undeviginti</i> , indecl. Olympia, <i>Olympia, ae, f.</i>
Hippias, <i>Hippias, ae, m.</i>	Recall to mind, <i>recordor, āri, ātus sum, dep.</i>
Hortensius, <i>Hortensius, ii, m.</i>	Trust, hope, <i>spero, āre, āvi, ātum.</i>
I myself, you yourself, he himself, &c., <i>ipse, a, um.</i> G. 452, 1.	Very, with nouns, <i>ipse, a, um.</i> G. 452, 2.

## 556. EXERCISE.

1. Do not philosophers inscribe their names in these very books which they write on the subject of despising glory? 2. Hippias, having come to Olympia, boasted, in the hearing of nearly all Greece, that there was nothing, in any art, which he did not himself know. 3. In the conversation held with Cato, Cicero said many things on the subject of virtue. 4. Isocrates wrote, in his ninety-fourth year, the book entitled Panathenaicus. 5. In the consulship of Lucius Crassus and Quintus Scaevola, Quintus Hortensius the orator spoke for the first time in the forum at the age of nineteen. 6. I remember what advice you then gave me. 7. I trust that you, who are wont to forget nothing except injuries, recall to mind many things in regard to this most excellent man, Marcus Cato. 8. Recall to mind those things which you learned when a boy. 9. Pericles, excelling in learning, in coun-

sel, and in eloquence, presided for forty years over *Athens*, both in civil and in military affairs.

## LESSON XCIX.

## EXPRESSIONS OF DUTY, NECESSITY.

**557.** The general meaning conveyed by the English word *must* is expressed in Latin in five different ways. These, however, must be carefully distinguished from each other. Thus, —

I. *Debeo*, I ought, denotes a moral obligation, I ought, or I must, because I ought:

What ought we to do? *Quid facere debemus?* What ought we to have done? *Quid facere debuimus?* See Model I.

II. *Oportet*, it behooves, also denotes moral obligation, but with the accessory notion of propriety. It also differs from *debeo* in expressing the obligation *impersonally* and *abstractly*, as a duty in itself considered:

This ought to be said, *Hoc dici oportet*. See Model II.

III. The Second Periphrastic Conjugation and the Participle in *dus*, denote (1) a necessity growing out of the circumstances of the case, and (2) propriety or desert:

That plan must be commended, *Illud consilium laudandum est*. See Model III.

IV. *Necesse est*, it is necessary, is the strongest and most unqualified expression of stern necessity:

This must be done, *Hoc fieri necesse est*. See Model IV.

V. *Opus est*, it is needful, there is need, denotes only a qualified necessity, and has reference to the attainment of an object:

It is needful that this should be done, *Hoc fieri opus est*. See Model V.

## 558. MODELS.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| I. We ought to have aided you.                         | I. <i>Te juvāre debuimus.</i>                               |
| II. This ought long since to have been done.           | II. <i>Hoc jampridem factum esse oportuit.</i>              |
| III. We ought to consider what we have to fear.        | III. <i>Debemus cogitare quid nobis sit metuendum.</i>      |
| IV. Why was it necessary for you to write that letter? | IV. <i>Quid tibi necesse fuit illam epistolam scribere?</i> |
| V. You will defend us, if it shall seem to be needful. | V. <i>Nos, si opus esse videbitur, defendes.</i>            |

## 559. REMARKS.

1. MODEL I. — OUGHT TO HAVE AIDED, Latin idiom, *were under obligation* (owed) to aid. See G. 541, 3.

2. MODEL II. — *Factum esse* is here used, instead of *fiēri*, to emphasize the completion of the action.

## 560. VOCABULARY.

Accomplish, <i>efficio, ēre, fēci, fecitum.</i>	Change, to alter, <i>muto, āre, āvi, ātum.</i>
Admiration, a feeling of admiration, <i>admiratio, ōnis, f.</i>	Choose, select, <i>eligo, ēre, legi, lectum.</i>
Admit, concede, <i>concedo, ēre, cessi, cessum.</i>	Depend upon, <i>positus, a, um, esse, in</i> with abl.; lit. <i>be placed in.</i>
Amount, quantity, <i>vis, vis, f.</i> G. 88, III. 3.	Evil, <i>malum, i, n.</i>
Attempt, <i>tento, āre, āvi, ātum.</i>	Exist, <i>sum, esse, fui.</i>

Frequently, <i>saepe</i> , adv.; comp. <i>saepius</i> , superlat. <i>saepissime</i> .	More highly, with verbs of valuing, <i>pluris</i> , adv.
Good, <i>bonum</i> , i, n.	Necessary, it is necessary, <i>necesse est</i> , <i>fuit</i> .
Learn, observe, <i>accipio</i> , <i>ēre</i> , <i>cēpi</i> , <i>ceptum</i> .	Perhaps, <i>fortasse</i> , adv.
Least, <i>minimus</i> , a, um, superlat. of <i>parvus</i> , G. 165; adv. <i>minime</i> .	Possession, <i>possessio</i> , <i>ōnis</i> , f.
Magistrate, <i>magistrātus</i> , us, m.	Pray, I pray, parenthetical, <i>quaeso</i> .
Minister, servant, <i>minister</i> , <i>tri</i> , m., <i>ministra</i> , ae, f. To minister to, <i>minister</i> or <i>ministra esse</i> with gen.; lit. <i>to be the minister of</i> .	Prize, <i>aestimo</i> , <i>āre</i> , <i>āvi</i> , <i>ātum</i> .
	Prompt, affect, <i>commōveo</i> , <i>ēre</i> , <i>mōvi</i> , <i>mōtum</i> .
	Prove, <i>probo</i> , <i>āre</i> , <i>āvi</i> , <i>ātum</i> .
	Silver, <i>argentum</i> , i, n.

## 561. EXERCISE.

1. That which ought to be accomplished by worth is often attempted by means of *money*. 2. We have learned from *good men*, that of evils it behooves one to choose the least. 3. It must be admitted that an honorable life is a happy life. 4. No possession, no amount of gold and silver, must be more highly prized than virtue. 5. The arts which minister to pleasures are *least* to be commended. 6. It must be admitted that a *happy life* depends upon *virtue*. 7. Consider, I pray, what we ought to do. 8. All things should be arranged with reference to the *highest good*. 9. There is need of magistrates, without whose prudence and diligence a state cannot exist. 10. Prompted by a feeling of admiration, I praise *Plato* more frequently, perhaps, than is necessary. 11. I will not prove to these judges that the praetor took money contrary to the laws.



## LESSON C.

## USE OF SPECIAL VERBS.

**562.** *Permission* may be expressed in Latin, —

1. By *licet*, it is lawful, permitted by human law. See Model I.

2. By *fas est*, it is right, permitted by divine law. See Model II.

3. By *conceditur, concessum est*, it is allowed, permitted by all law. See Model I.

**563.** *Power, ability*, is expressed by *possum*, I am able, I can. See Model III.

**564.** *Possibility, uncertainty*, may be expressed, —

1. By *fiēri potest ut*, with the Subjunctive, it can happen that, it may be that. See Model IV.

2. By the Potential Subjunctive. See Model V.

**565.** The Latin has three principal ways of expressing possession :

I. *Sum* with the Ablative is used of necessary and permanent possession. This is used especially when the thing possessed is a part, a quality, or a characteristic of the possessor. See Model VI.

II. *Habeo* is the most common equivalent for the English verb *to have*, but is used especially to denote external possession. See Models VII. and VIII.

III. *Sum* with the Dative has the same general force as *habeo*, but calls attention to the thing possessed by making it the subject of the verb. See Models IX. and X.<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> In expressions of naming, as in Model IX., *sum with the Dative* is the regular construction. It is also the usual construction when the

## 566. MODELS.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| I. We say that is lawful<br>which is permitted<br>by the laws.   | I. <i>Licēre id dicimus<br/>quod legibus con-<br/>ceditur.</i>                                 |
| II. The consul defended<br>you, as far as he was<br>able, as far as was<br>right, and as far as<br>was lawful. | II. <i>Consul, quoad pos-<br/>set, quoad fas es-<br/>set, quoad liceret,<br/>vos defendit.</i> |
| III. They might have aided<br>you very much.   | III. <i>Te plurimum ju-<br/>vāre potuērunt.</i>  |
| IV. It may be that I am<br>mistaken.   | IV. <i>Fiēri potest ut fal-<br/>lar.</i>   |
| V. Who would hesitate to<br>defend his country?  | V. <i>Quis dubitet patri-<br/>am defendere?</i>  |
| VI. Africanus was possess-<br>ed of the greatest<br>eloquence.   | VI. <i>Erat in Africāno<br/>summa eloquen-<br/>tia.</i>  |
| VII. He has an ancestral<br>estate in Italy.   | VII. <i>Fundum in Italia<br/>paternum habet.</i>   |
| VIII. Demosthenes possess-<br>ed wisdom united<br>with eloquence.  | VIII. <i>Demosthēnes sapi-<br/>entiam cum elo-<br/>quentia junctam<br/>habuit.</i>             |
| IX. At Syracuse there is a<br>fountain whose name<br>is Arethusa.  | IX. <i>Syracūsīs est fons<br/>cui nomen Are-<br/>thūsa est.</i>                                |
| X. I have no dealings<br>with him.   | X. <i>Nihil mihi est cum<br/>illo.</i>   |

---

subject stands connected with an oblique case with or without a preposition, as in Model X., *nihil cum illo*, no dealings with him.

## 567. REMARKS.

1. MODEL IV. — IT MAY BE THAT, Latin idiom, *it can take place* (be done) *that*.

2. MODELS VI. — VIII. — Observe the different ways of expressing possession.

3. MODEL IX. — WHOSE NAME IS, Latin idiom, *to which there is the name*.

## 568. VOCABULARY.

Acquaintance, experience, *usus*,  
*us*, m. A very intimate acquaintance, *summus usus*.

Administer, *gero*, *ĕre*, *gessi*, *gestum*.

And yet = and, *et*, conj.

Aware, be aware, know, *scio*, *scire*,  
*scivi*, *scitum*.

By myself, by yourself, &c., *me-*  
*cum*, *tecum*, etc.; lit. *with my-*  
*self*, &c.

Correctly, *recte*, adv.

Elegantly, *polite*, adv.

Ever, *unquam*, adv.

Express, utter, *elōquor*, *i*, *locātus*  
*sum*, dep.

Fabius, *Fabius*, *ii*, m.

Innumerable, *innumerabilis*, *e*.

Know, be acquainted with, *cog-*  
*nosco*, *ĕre*, *nōvi*, *nītum*.

May be, it may be that, *fiēri potest*  
*ut* with subj.

Negligent, *negligens*, *entis*.

No one, nobody, *nemo*, *inīs*; *nū-*  
*lus*, *a*, *um*. See G. 457, 2.

Not, followed by either — or, =  
neither — nor, *neque* or *nec* —  
*neque* or *nec*.

One, any one, any thing, *quis*,  
*quae*, *quid*.

Repeat, *reddo*, *ĕre*, *dīdi*, *dītum*.

So that, *ut*, conj.

Strongly, *valde*, adv.

Such — as = so great, or so much  
— as, *tantus* — *quantus*.

Talent, mental ability, *mens*, *men-*  
*tis*, *f*.

Think, ponder, *cogito*, *āre*, *āvi*,  
*ātum*.

Think out, *commentor*, *āri*, *ātus*  
*sum*.

Whoever, whatever, *quisquis*,  
*quaequae*, *quodquod* and *quio-*  
*quid* or *quidquid*. He — who,  
that — which, *is* — *qui*.

Writing, *scriptum*, *i*, *n*.

Wrong, *nefas*, *n*. indecl.

## 569. EXERCISE.

1. Whatever is not lawful we ought to regard as wrong. 2. It may be that one may think correctly, and yet not be able to express elegantly that which one thinks. 3. You would not be able to praise Plato either too strongly or too frequently. 4. I do not think that Verres will deny that he has innumerable pictures. 5. O that there had been in Tiberius Gracchus such talent for administering the republic well, as there was genius for speaking well! 6. It is not permitted me to be negligent in this thing. 7. I have, as I think you are aware, a very intimate acquaintance with Marcus Fabius. 8. *Hortensius* had such a memory as I think I have known in no one (else), so that, whatever he had thought out by himself, he could, without writing, repeat in the same words in which he had thought it.

## LESSON CI.

## PREPOSITIONS.

570. In many instances where the English idiom uses prepositions, the Latin adopts some different construction.

571. The preposition *without* may be variously rendered into Latin, but most frequently (1) by the preposition *sine*, (2) by a participle with *non* or some other negative word, and (3) by *ut non*, *qui non*, or *quin*, with the Subjunctive. See Models I.—III.

572. The preposition *for* may generally be rendered (1) by the Dative of the Indirect Object, (2) by *pro* with the

Ablative, and (3) by other prepositions; *ad*, *ob*, *propter* with the Accusative, or *de* with the Ablative. See Models IV. — VI.

**573.** The preposition *to* may be rendered, (1) by the Dative of the Indirect Object, (2) by *ad* with the Accusative, and (3) by the Accusative of Limit. See Models VII. — IX.

### 574. MODELS.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| I. I <i>shall</i> say without hesitation that which I think.           | I. <i>Dicam sine cunctatione quod sentio.</i>                   |
| II. It is sad to be troubled without accomplishing anything.           | II. <i>Miserrum est nihil proficientem angere.</i>              |
| III. I allowed <i>no</i> day to pass without writing something to you. | III. <i>Nullum intermisi diem quin aliquid ad te scriberem.</i> |
| IV. We were born, not only for ourselves, but also for our country.    | IV. <i>Non nobis solum, sed etiam patriae, nati sumus.</i>      |
| V. The soldiers fought for liberty.                                    | V. <i>Milites pro libertate pugnaverunt.</i>                    |
| VI. Publius Scipio seems to have been born for glory.                  | VI. <i>Publius Scipio ad gloriam natus esse videtur.</i>        |
| VII. The commander will yield to the laws.                             | VII. <i>Imperator legibus cedit.</i>                            |
| VIII. I write to those who write to me.                                | VIII. <i>Scribo ad eos qui ad me scribunt.</i>                  |
| IX. Archias came to Rome in the consulship of Marius and Catulus.      | IX. <i>Archias Romam venit Mario et Catulo consulibus.</i>      |

## 575. REMARKS.

1. MODEL II. — WITHOUT ACCOMPLISHING ANYTHING, *nihil proficentem*, lit. *accomplishing nothing*.
2. MODEL III. — WITHOUT WRITING, *quin scribērem*, lit. *but that I wrote*.
3. MODELS IV. AND VI. — FOR OURSELVES, *nobis*, Indirect Object. FOR GLORY, *ad gloriam*, the Object or End for which.

## 576. SYNONYMES.

To think, to have an opinion; *opīnor*, *puto*, *arbītror*, *sentio*, *censeo*.

1. *Opīnor*, *āri*, *ātus sum*, dep.; TO THINK, TO HAVE AN IMPRESSION, — used especially of mere impression, as opposed to well-founded opinion.

2. *Puto*, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātum*; TO THINK, TO SUPPOSE, — implying a more decided opinion than *opīnor*.

3. *Arbītror*, *āri*, *ātus sum*, dep.; TO THINK, TO HAVE A CONVICTION, — used especially (1) of opinions which rest upon one's own personal convictions, and (2) of opinions which have authority, as those of an arbitrator.

4. *Sentio*, *īre*, *sensi*, *sensum*; TO THINK, TO PERCEIVE, TO FEEL, — used especially of one's sentiments, as dependent upon one's own experience, upon what one has perceived and felt.

5. *Censeo*, *ēre*, *ui*, *censum*; TO THINK, TO DECIDE, — to express one's opinion authoritatively and officially, as a senator may do by vote or otherwise.

## 577. VOCABULARY.

Allow to pass, <i>intermitto</i> , <i>ēre</i> , <i>missi</i> , <i>missum</i> .	In regard to, sometimes rendered by gen. ; e. g. a precept in regard to duty, <i>officii praeceptum</i> , lit. a precept of duty.
Appear, seem, <i>videor</i> , <i>ēri</i> , <i>visus sum</i> , pass. of <i>video</i> ; lit. to be looked upon as.	Introduce, bring in, <i>indūco</i> , <i>ēre</i> , <i>duxi</i> , <i>ductum</i> .
Attain, <i>adipiscor</i> , <i>i</i> , <i>adeptus sum</i> , dep.	Not even, <i>ne quidem</i> , with the emphatic word after <i>ne</i> . Not even when, <i>ne tum quidem, quum</i> , lit. not then even, when.
Conduce to, be conducive to, <i>conduco</i> , <i>ēre</i> , <i>duxi</i> , <i>ductum</i> . G. 385.	Point, thing, <i>res</i> , <i>rei</i> , f.
Consult, consult for, consult for the interest of, <i>consūlo</i> , <i>ēre</i> , <i>sului</i> , <i>sultum</i> . G. 385, 3.	Sacrifice, spend, <i>profundo</i> , <i>ēre</i> , <i>fadi</i> , <i>fasum</i> .
Discord, <i>discordia</i> , <i>ae</i> , f.	Suppose, think, <i>arbitror</i> , <i>āri</i> , <i>ātus sum</i> , dep. ; <i>puto</i> , <i>āre</i> , <i>āvi</i> , <i>ātum</i> .
Encounter, go to meet, <i>oppēto</i> , <i>ēre</i> , <i>ivi</i> and <i>ii</i> , <i>itum</i> .	Tear, <i>lacrima</i> , <i>ae</i> , f.
Express opinion, think, <i>censeo</i> , <i>ēre</i> , <i>ui</i> , <i>censum</i> .	Think, be of opinion, <i>opinor</i> , <i>āri</i> , <i>ātus sum</i> , dep.
Give, deliver, <i>trado</i> , <i>ēre</i> , <i>didi</i> , <i>ditum</i> .	Thus far, <i>adhuc</i> , adv.
Glorious, <i>gloriōsus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .	Without, variously rendered. See 571.
Have reference to, <i>refēror</i> , <i>ferri</i> , <i>lātus sum</i> , <i>ad</i> with acc. ; lit. be referred to.	Witness, <i>testis</i> , <i>is</i> , m. and f.

## 578. EXERCISE.

1. Death encountered for one's country is wont to appear, not only glorious, but also happy. 2. Senators who consult for the interests of a part of the citizens, and neglect a part, introduce sedition and discord into the

state. 3. I was writing to you those things which I supposed to be conducive to your safety. 4. All laws ought to have reference to the welfare of the state. 5. There were many in Rome who were prepared to sacrifice for their country, not only money, but also life. 6. We are not able to *state* these things without tears. 7. Who is there, indeed, who would dare to call himself a *philosopher* without giving some precepts in regard to duty. 8. The witness says that he does not think this, but knows it; that he has not heard it, but seen it. 9. I think that you have heard what opinion I expressed *on the other points*. 10. The Athenians thought that whatever was not honorable was not even useful. 11. That which is base is never useful, not even when you attain that which you suppose to be useful. 12. He has thus far allowed no day to pass without consulting for the safety of the citizens.

## LESSON CII.

### ADVERBS AND CONJUNCTIONS.

**579.** The English Adverbs may sometimes be rendered literally by corresponding Latin Adverbs, and sometimes by other parts of speech. Thus adverbs and adverbial expressions may sometimes be rendered, —

1. By Adjectives. See Model I.

2. By Pronouns. Thus *also* may sometimes be rendered by *idem*; *always* sometimes by *quisque*. See Model II.; also G. 451, 3, and 458, 1.

**580.** *Not very*, before adjectives and adverbs, may be



rendered by *non ita* ; and *not very much*, before verbs, by *non ita valde*. See Models III. and IV.

**581.** In negative sentences, the negative is commonly joined with the conjunction :

And not, *neque*, or *et non* ; for not, *neque enim*, or *non enim* ; yet not, *neque tamen*, or *non tamen*. See Model V.

**582.** In a clause expressing purpose, *that*, with a negative adjective, pronoun, or adverb, should be rendered by *ne* with the corresponding affirmative adjective, pronoun, or adverb :

That no one, nobody, *nequis*, not *ut nemo* ; that no, *ne ullus*, not *ut nullus* ; that nothing, *nequid*, not *ut nihil* ; that never, *ne unquam*, not *ut nunquam*. See Model VI.

### 583. MODELS.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| I. <i>At that time</i> Cicero was constantly at Rome.   | I. <i>Eo tempore</i> Cicero Romae fuit assiduus.                            |
| II. There is nothing wrong which is not also disgraceful.                                       | II. <i>Est nihil pravam, quod idem non turpe.</i>                           |
| III. These statues are very beautiful, but not very ancient.                                    | III. <i>Haec signa sunt pulcherrima, sed non ita antiqua.</i>               |
| IV. We are not very much moved by these things.   | IV. <i>His rebus non ita valde movemur.</i>                                 |
| V. I came to Athens, said Democritus, and no one recognized me.                                 | V. <i>Veni Athēnas, inquit Democritus, neque me quisquam agnovit.</i>       |
| VI. Who does not know, that it is the first law of history, that nothing false should be said ? | VI. <i>Quis nescit, primam esse historiae legem, nequid falsi dicatur ?</i> |

## 584. REMARKS.

1. MODEL I. — WAS CONSTANTLY, *fuit assiduus*, lit. *was constant*.
2. MODEL II. — WHICH IS ALSO, *quod idem*, lit. *which the same*. *Est* is omitted because it can be so readily supplied.
3. MODEL III. — NOT VERY ANCIENT, *non ita antiqua*, lit. *not so ancient*.

## 585. SYNONYMES.

To teach, to instruct, to cultivate, to educate; *doceo, erudio, praeceptio, instituo*.

1. *Doceo, ēre, ui, tum*; TO TEACH, — with the simple idea of imparting instruction or knowledge.

2. *Erudio, ēre, iui, itum*; TO INSTRUCT, TO CULTIVATE, TO REFINÉ, — with special reference to the *effect* of the instruction in refining the character.

3. *Praeceptio, ēre, cēpi, ceptum*; TO INSTRUCT, TO FURNISH WITH PRECEPTS, — with special reference to the maxims and precepts imparted for the guidance of the pupil.

4. *Instituto, ēre, ui, itum*; TO INSTRUCT, TO TRAIN UP, TO EDUCATE, — more comprehensive than either of the above terms.

## 586. VOCABULARY.

Branch of learning, <i>doctrina</i> , ae, f.	acc.; <i>conféro, ferre, tūli, col-</i>
But not, and not, <i>neque</i> , conj.	<i>lātum</i> .
By no means, <i>minime</i> , adv.; lit.	Do, perform, <i>gero, ēre, gessi, ges-</i>
<i>least</i> .	<i>tum</i> .
Desirous, <i>studiōsus</i> , a, um. See	Dream, <i>somnium</i> , ii, n.
222.	Fear, <i>vereor, eri, itus sum</i> , dep.
Devote one's self to, apply one's	Give precepts, <i>praeceptio, ēre, cēpi,</i>
self to, <i>se conferre ad</i> with	<i>ceptum</i> .

Gravity, <i>gravitas</i> , <i>ātis</i> , f.	Perishable, <i>caducus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .
Hostile, unfriendly, <i>inimicus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .	Pythagorean, <i>Pythagoreus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .
Lysis, <i>Lysis</i> , <i>īdis</i> , m.	Teach, <i>doceo</i> , <i>ēre</i> , <i>ui</i> , <i>doctum</i> ; train up, <i>instituo</i> , <i>ēre</i> , <i>ui</i> , <i>atum</i> .
Much, exceedingly, <i>valde</i> , adv.	Troublesome, <i>molestus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .
No one, that no one, in clauses de- noting purpose, <i>ne quis</i> . G. 190, 2.	Unwillingly, unwilling, <i>invitus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> . G. 443.
Not very, <i>non ita</i> , adv.	Well known, sometimes rendered by <i>ille</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>ud</i> . G. 450, 4.
Perhaps, sometimes rendered by <i>haud scio an</i> ; lit. <i>I know not</i> <i>whether</i> .	Wholly, whole, <i>totus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> . G. 149; 443.

## 587. EXERCISE.

1. There were some who devoted themselves wholly to learned studies. 2. You will perceive from these letters, both what I have done and what I have said. 3. Those things which seem to be useful, but are not so, are hostile to virtue. 4. Wealth, power, honors, and pleasures, are perishable and uncertain. 5. The consuls devoted themselves wholly to the safety of the republic. 6. There were many who admired the gravity, justice, and wisdom of Caesar. 7. We did this most unwillingly. 8. These things are not, indeed, very troublesome to me. 9. Men are not very much moved by *dreams*. 10. The well-known Pythagorean Lysis taught the Theban Epaminondas, perhaps, without exception, the greatest hero of all Greece. 11. To give precepts on the subject of eloquence is by no means easy. 12. Let us teach those who are desirous of learning. 13. Plato instructed Dion of Syracuse in all branches of learning. 14. We all fear that no one may approve your plan.

## CHAPTER II.

## ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS AND CLAUSES.

## LESSON CIII.

## ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS.

**588.** General Rules for the Arrangement of Words. See G. 593-597.

1. Effect of Emphasis and Euphony. G. 594.
2. Contrasted Groups. G. 595.
3. Kindred Words. G. 596.
4. Words with a Common Relation. G. 597.

**589.** Special Rules for the Arrangement of Words. See G. 598-602.

1. Modifiers of Nouns. G. 598.
2. Modifiers of Adjectives. G. 599.
3. Modifiers of Verbs. G. 600.
4. Modifiers of Adverbs. G. 601.
5. Position of Special Words. G. 602.

**590. MODELS.**

I. We were occupied at that time day and night in the study of all the branches of knowledge.

I. *Nos eo tempore noctes et dies in omnium doctrinārum meditatione versabāmur.*

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| II. We have heard that<br><i>Plato</i> traversed the<br>most <i>distant</i> lands. | II. <i>Ultimas terras lus-</i><br><i>trasse Platōnem ac-</i><br><i>cepimus.</i> |
| III. New names must be as-<br>signed to new things.                                | III. <i>Rebus novis nova sunt</i><br><i>ponenda nomina.</i>                     |
| IV. We admire the justice<br>and wisdom of <i>Caesar</i> .                         | IV. <i>Caesāris justitiam et</i><br><i>sapientiam admirā-</i><br><i>mur.</i>    |

### 591. REMARKS.

1. MODEL II. — WE HAVE HEARD, *accepimus*, lit. *we have received*, i. e. *we have received or learned by report*.

2. MODEL III. — MUST BE ASSIGNED, *ponenda sunt*, lit. *must be placed*. For the order of words, see G. 595, observing that *nomina*, which might stand directly before *sunt*, is made still more emphatic by its present position.

### 592. SYNONYMES.

To see, perceive, behold, visit; *video, cerno, specto, viso*.

1. *Video, ēre, vidi, visum*; TO SEE, — the usual word in this sense.

2. *Cerno, ěre*,<sup>1</sup> TO PERCEIVE, TO SEE CLEARLY, TO DISCERN, — involving the idea of discriminating, as well as that of seeing.

3. *Specto, āre, āvi, ātum*; TO BEHOLD, TO LOOK UPON, — with attention or interest.

4. *Viso, ěre, visi, visum*; TO DESIRE TO SEE, TO GO TO SEE, TO VISIT.

---

<sup>1</sup> In the best prose, the Perfect and Supine do not occur in this sense.

## 593. VOCABULARY.

Affluent, copious, <i>uber, ̃ris.</i>	Lost, engaged, busy, <i>impeditus, a, um.</i>
Aged, old, <i>senex, senis.</i>	Necessity, <i>necessitas, ̃tis, f.</i>
Beauty, <i>pulchritudo, ̃nis, f.</i>	Open, <i>apertus, a, um.</i>
Deserve, often expressed by the Pass. Periphrastic Conj. See G. 231.	Perceive, discern, <i>cerno, ̃re.</i>
Ear, <i>auris, is, f.</i>	Pursuit, study, <i>studium, ii, n.</i>
Eye, <i>oculus, i, m.</i>	Remove, take away, <i>tollo, ̃re, sustuli, sublātum.</i>
For a long time, <i>jampridem, adv.</i> G. 467, 2.	Thought, <i>cogitatio, ̃nis, f.</i>
Game, <i>ludus, i, m.</i>	Thus, <i>sic, adv.</i>
Invention, <i>inventum, i, n.</i>	Tyranny, <i>tyrannis, ̃dis, f.</i>
	Unimpaired, <i>int̃ger, gra, grum.</i>
	Witness, <i>specto, ̃re, ̃vi, ̃tum.</i>

## 594. EXERCISE.

1. Young men are led by the precepts of the *aged* to the pursuits of *virtue*. 2. Who would not admire the *beauty of virtue*? 3. We have been taught by our forefathers to arrange all our plans and actions with reference to virtue. 4. Who is more affluent in speaking than Plato? 5. There were some who said that Jupiter would speak thus, if he should speak Greek. 6. If these things deserve to be seen, you have often seen them. 7. We, who have witnessed these games, have seen nothing new. 8. Often, when lost in thought, with eyes and ears open and unimpaired, we neither see nor hear. 9. Many things, which cannot be seen with the eyes, can yet be perceived with the mind. 10. I have been for a long time desiring

to visit you. 11. We cannot sufficiently praise Brutus and Cassius, whom you defend. 12. We see that tyranny remained, though the tyrant was removed. 13. Those things which moved me would also have moved *you*. 14. The inventions of *necessity* are more ancient than those of *pleasure*.

## LESSON CIV.

### EUPHONY AND RHYTHM.

**595.** In arranging a Latin sentence, attention must be paid to Euphony and Rhythm. But here the best results can be secured only by the aid of a cultivated ear. A few practical directions, however, may aid the learner in avoiding obvious errors.

I. Avoid the monotonous effect produced by a series of words of the same length, especially of monosyllables; as, *et fons et pons*.

II. Avoid the frequent repetition of the same letters in corresponding parts of successive words, especially in the endings; as, *Graeciam quondam magnam vocātam*.

III. Avoid the genitive plural of future active participles, on account of the harshness of its sound; as, *moniturōrum, rectorūrum*. But the genitive plural of *futūrus* is sometimes necessary.

IV. Avoid placing a word which ends in two or more consonants before one which begins with two or more consonants; as, *ingens stridor*.

V. Aim at variety in the length, sound, and ending of successive words, and in the ending of successive clauses. See Models I. and II.

VI. Special attention should be given to the end of the sentence. A word of two or more syllables with a round and full sound should be selected for this place when the sense permits. A monosyllable should not be so used, unless it be the copula *sum, es, est*, etc., or some other word which blends readily, in sound and in sense, with what precedes. See Models I. and II.

## 596. MODELS.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>I. Publius Africanus, having destroyed Carthage, adorned the cities of the Sicilians with the most beautiful statues and monuments.</p> <p>II. I demand from you <i>no</i> reward of virtue, <i>no</i> badge of honor.</p> | <p>I. <i>Publius Africānus, Carthagīne delēta, Siculōrum urbes signis monumentisque pulcherrimis exornāvit.</i></p> <p>II. <i>Nullum ego a vobis praeium virtutis, nullum insigne honoris postulo.</i></p> |
|---|--|

## 597. SYNONYMES.

To surpass, conquer, overcome ; *supĕro, vinco, devinco.*

1. *Supĕro, āre, āvi, ātum* ; TO SURPASS, TO OVERCOME, TO SURMOUNT.

2. *Vinco, ěre, vici, victum* ; TO CONQUER, — the usual word in this sense.

3. *Devinco, ěre, vici, victum* ; TO CONQUER COMPLETELY, TO OVERCOME, TO SUBDUE, — stronger than *vinco*.



## 598. VOCABULARY.

By = from, in accordance with, <i>e</i> ,	Invite, <i>invito, āre, āvi, ātum.</i>
<i>ex</i> , prep. with abl.	Mention, say, <i>dico, ēre, dixi, dictum.</i>
Clear, <i>clarus, a, um.</i>	Opulent, <i>opulentus, a, um.</i>
Communicate, relate, <i>trado, ēre,</i>	Preserve, <i>conservo, āre, āvi, ātum.</i>
<i>didī, ditum.</i>	Prosperous, happy, <i>beātus, a, um.</i>
Conquer completely, <i>devinco, ēre,</i>	Reason, <i>ratio, ōnis, f.</i>
<i>vici, victum.</i>	Short, brief, <i>brevis, e.</i>
Contend, <i>contendo, ēre, i, tentum.</i>	Some, any, <i>aliqui, qua, quod.</i>
Dionysius, <i>Dionysius, ii, m.</i>	Some time, at some time, <i>aliquo tempore.</i>
Duillius, <i>Duilius, ii, m.</i>	Thirty-eight, <i>duodequadraginta:</i>
Fitting, it is fitting, <i>oportet, ut,</i>	Young man, youth, <i>juvēnis, is, m.</i>
<i>impers.</i>	
How, <i>quam, adv.</i>	

## 599. EXERCISE.

1. Reason invites young men to justice, equity, and fidelity. 2. How many things do we do *for the sake of our friends*, which we would never do for the sake of our foes! 3. Dionysius was *for thirty-eight years* the tyrant of a most opulent and prosperous state. 4. I did not suppose even those things which I have mentioned above, to be new to you. 5. It is fitting that he who obeys should hope that he will some time rule, and that he who rules should consider that he must in a short time obey. 6. Those things which you have said are clearer than the sun itself. 7. Epaminondas, the commander of the Thebans, did not deliver the army to him who by law had succeeded him as praetor, but, having himself retained it a few days contrary to law, he conquered the Lacedaemonians. 8. Even if many should contend with you in *valor*, you would yet easily surpass them all. 9. Caius Duillius

completely conquered the Carthaginians in a very great battle. 10. Cicero, whose orations we read when boys, preserved the republic. 11. It is not easy to find one who does not communicate to another what he himself knows.

## LESSON CV.

### ARRANGEMENT OF CLAUSES.

**600.** Rules for the Arrangement of Clauses. See G. 603-606.

**601.** A verb which has an Infinitive Clause as its object, may either precede or follow such clause, or may be inserted within it; and, in the latter case, it usually stands directly after the Subject Accusative, or directly before it. See Model II.

**602.** A subject or object which is common to both the principal and the subordinate clauses, generally stands at the beginning of the sentence, and is followed by the subordinate clause. See Model III.

### 603. MODELS.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| I. Let us defend that which we think; for our judgments <i>are free</i> .            | I. <i>Defendāmus quod sentīmus; sunt enim iudicia libēra.</i>                         |
| II. Thales said that water was the first principle of all things.                    | II. <i>Thales aquam dixit esse initium omnium rerum.</i>                              |
| III. Cato, though born at Tusculum, was admitted to the rights of Roman citizenship. | III. <i>Cato, quum esset Tusculi natus, in populi Romāni civitatem susceptus est.</i> |

## 604. REMARKS.

1. MODEL II. — *Dixit* might have been placed before *aquam*, or even at the end of the sentence.

2. MODEL III. — TO THE RIGHTS OF ROMAN CITIZENSHIP, in *populi Romāni civitatem*, lit. into the citizenship of the Roman people.

## 605. SYNONYMES.

To feign, invent, pretend, disguise ; *finġo, simŭlo, dissimŭlo*.

1. *Fingo, ěre, finxi, fictum* ; TO FEIGN, TO INVENT, TO DEVISE, — with the leading idea of forming or devising something, whether true or false.

2. *Simŭlo, āre, āvi, ātum* ; TO PRETEND, TO FEIGN, — to represent as true that which is known to be false.

3. *Dissimŭlo, āre, āvi, ātum* ; TO DISGUISE, TO CONCEAL.

## 606. VOCABULARY.

Accomplish, attain, <i>assęquor, i, secutus sum, dep.</i>	Indeed, then, <i>tandem</i> , adv. ; lit. at length.
Accusation, <i>crimen, ĩnis, n.</i>	Invent, devise, <i>finġo, ěre, finxi, fictum</i> .
After, <i>post</i> , prep. with acc.	Macedon, of Macedon, a Macedonian, <i>Macędo, őnis, m.</i>
Alexander, <i>Alexander, dri, m.</i>	Mad, be mad, <i>furo, ěre, ui.</i>
Bear, suffer, <i>patior, i, passus sum, dep.</i>	Multitudes assemble, <i>concursus fit</i> ; lit. a concourse is made.
Censure, <i>reprehendo, ěre, di, sum.</i>	Olive tree, <i>olea, æ, f.</i>
Disguise, <i>dissimŭlo, āre, āvi, ātum.</i>	Pretend, <i>simŭlo, āre, āvi, ātum.</i>
Displease, <i>displġceo, ěre, ui, ĩtum.</i>	Produce, bear, <i>fero, ferre, tuli, latum</i> .
For the purpose, <i>causa</i> with gen. G. 414, 2, 3).	Render service, <i>prosum, prodesse,</i>
Frequently, <i>crebro</i> , adv.	
How long? <i>quousque</i> ? adv.	

<i>profui.</i> G. 290; 385. To render a greater service, <i>plus</i> <i>prodesse.</i>	instruct, <i>erūdīo, ire, iui</i> or <i>ii,</i> <i>itum.</i>
Some time, at some time, <i>aliquan-</i> <i>do,</i> adv.	That, expressing purpose, when the dependent clause contains a comparative, <i>quo,</i> conj.
State, commonwealth, <i>res publica,</i> <i>rei publicae,</i> f.	Without, be without, <i>careo, ēre, ui,</i> <i>itum.</i> G. 425.
Teach, <i>doceo, ēre, docui, doctum;</i>	Work, memorial, monument, <i>mon-</i> <i>umentum, i, n.</i>

## 607. EXERCISE.

1. When Demosthenes was expected to speak, multitudes assembled from the whole of Greece for the purpose of hearing him. 2. Men do not wonder at what they frequently see, even if they do not know why it happens. 3. When I was praised by Cato, I could easily bear even to be censured by the others. 4. Philosophers have taught many to be better citizens and more useful to their states, as Lysis taught Epaminondas of Thebes; Plato, Dion of Syracuse; Aristotle, Alexander of Macedon. 5. And not only while alive do they instruct and teach those who are desirous of learning, but they also accomplish this same thing by their literary works even after death. 6. How long, indeed, shall he who has surpassed all enemies in crime be without the name of an enemy? 7. I shall not be able to disguise the fact that those things which have been done thus far displease me. 8. Solon pretended to be mad, both that his life might be more secure, and that he might render a greater service to the republic. 9. They have invented many accusations against the consul. 10. The Athenians were wont to say that every land which produced the olive tree was theirs.

## CHAPTER III.

## STRUCTURE OF LATIN SENTENCES.

## LESSON CVI.

## COMPACTNESS OF STRUCTURE.

**608.** The Latin in the form and structure of sentences differs widely from the English. Accordingly, in translating from the vernacular into that language, it is often necessary to reconstruct the sentence to adapt it to the Latin idiom.

**609.** But the true type of the Latin sentence, with its compactness, symmetry, and beauty, cannot be learned from rules. It can be acquired only by a careful study of the best models. On this point, therefore, the learner must turn for instruction and guidance to the pages of Caesar and Cicero, those great masters of Latin style. It is only necessary, therefore, in this chapter, to call his attention to the leading characteristics of the Latin sentence, and to guard him against certain errors into which he is liable to fall.

**610.** Compactness of structure is a prominent characteristic of the Latin idiom. Accordingly an English sentence which is to be translated into Latin, if not already concisely expressed, must first be thrown into a compact form, preparatory to a literal rendering. Thus, —

I. English sentences beginning with the impersonal forms, *it is said that he, they, etc., it is reported that, etc., it is thought that, it seems that, the order is given that,* and the

like, may be more compactly expressed in the personal form, and must, accordingly, be so changed to adapt them to the Latin idiom. The corresponding personal forms are, *he is said, he is reported, he is thought, he seems, he is ordered*. See Model I.

II. English sentences beginning with *it is, it was*, before a predicate noun and a relative clause, must be so reconstructed that the thought contained in the two clauses, the antecedent and the relative, may be expressed in one. Thus: *It was he who did it*, becomes, *He did it*. See Model II.

III. In English, with verbs of *thinking, saying, knowing*, and the like, the subject of discourse is sometimes introduced with a preposition, as, *concerning, in regard to, in respect to, of*, and then repeated in the form of a pronoun in a clause with *that*; as, *In regard to Socrates, we know that he was wise*. This construction, though admissible in Latin when the subject of discourse is especially emphatic, should in general be avoided. The above sentence when adapted to the Latin idiom becomes, *We know that Socrates was wise*. See Model III.

## 611. MODELS.

- I. It is said that Epaminondas played upon the lyre excellently.
- II. It was Pisistratus who first arranged the books of Homer as we now have them.
- III. It is related of Romulus that he most successfully waged many wars with his neighbors.

- I. *Epaminondas fidibus praeclāre cecinisse dicītur.*
- II. *Pisistrātus primus Homēri libros sic disposuit ut nunc habemus.*
- III. *Romūlus bella cum finitīmis multa felicissimē gessisse traditur.*

## 612. REMARKS.

1. MODEL I. — IT IS SAID THAT EPAMINONDAS, Latin idiom, *Epaminondas is said*.

2. MODEL II. — IT WAS PISISTRATUS WHO FIRST, Latin idiom, *Pisistratus first*.

3. MODEL III. — IT IS RELATED OF ROMULUS THAT, Latin idiom, *Romulus is related*.

## 613. VOCABULARY.

Achievements are accomplished, <i>res geruntur</i> .	Live, alive, living, <i>vivus, a, um</i> .
Admitted, it is admitted, <i>constat, constitit</i> .	Milo, <i>Milo</i> and <i>Milon, ōnis, m</i> .
Apollo, <i>Apollo, īnis, m</i> .	Money, sum of money, <i>pecunia, ae, f</i> .
As = that which, a thing which, <i>id quod</i> . G. 445, 7.	Open, <i>aperio, ire, ui, pertum</i> .
Authority, <i>auctoritas, ātis, f</i> .	Ox, <i>bos, bovis, m</i> . G. 90, 2.
Banish, expel, <i>expello, ěre, pŭli, pulsum</i> .	Relate, <i>trado, ěre, didi, ditum</i> .
Bear, support, <i>sustineo, ěre, ui, tentum</i> .	Say, "they say," subject indefinite, <i>ferunt</i> . It is said, <i>fertur</i> , etc.
Become acquainted with, <i>cognosco, ěre, nŏvi, nĭtum</i> .	Shoulder, <i>humĕrus, i, m</i> .
Bring to, <i>adduco, ěre, duxi, ductum, ad</i> with acc.	Stadium, <i>stadium, ii, n</i> .
Confirm, <i>confirmo, āre, āvi, ātum</i> .	Syracuse, <i>Syracusae, ārum, f. pl</i> .
Cypselus, <i>Cypselus, i, m</i> .	Tarquinius, <i>Tarquinius, ōrum, m. pl</i> .
Delphic, <i>Delphicus, a, um</i> .	Through, <i>per</i> , prep. with acc.
Demaratus, <i>Demarātus, i, m</i> .	Unable, to be unable = not to be able, <i>non possum, posse, potui</i> .
Endure, <i>fero, ferre, tuli, latum</i> .	Walk, go along, <i>ingrĕdior, i, gressus sum</i> , dep.
Etruria, <i>Etruria, ae, f</i> .	Withdraw, call off, <i>avoco, āre, āvi, ātum</i> .
Flourishing, <i>florens, entis</i> .	Without a nomination from the people, <i>injussu popŭli</i> . G. 414, 2, 3).

### 614. EXERCISE.

1. It is related of Servius Tullius that he was the first who reigned without a nomination from the people. 2. It is said that Demaratus, the father of king Tarquin, having been unable to endure the tyrant Cypselus, fled with a large sum of money, and betook himself to Tarquinii, a very flourishing city of Etruria. 3. It is not by force, but by wisdom, that great achievements are accomplished. 4. It is not with the eyes, but with the mind, that we perceive those things which we see. 5. It was Lycurgus who confirmed his laws by the authority of the Delphic Apollo. 6. It is said that Milo walked through the stadium at *Olympia*, bearing upon his shoulders a *live ox*. 7. It was Socrates who first brought philosophy to common life. 8. It seems to me, as is admitted among all, that Socrates was the first to withdraw philosophy from occult subjects, and to bring it to common life. 9. They say that Plato came into Italy to become acquainted with the Pythagoreans. 10. It is said that Dionysius the tyrant, having been banished from Syracuse, *opened a school* at Corinth.

### LESSON CVII.

#### UNITY OF THE LATIN SENTENCE.

**615.** Unity, though important in the English sentence, is still more so in the Latin. All the various parts of the sentence should be nicely adapted to each other, and made to unite harmoniously in one complete organic whole. Thus, —



I. When a Latin sentence consists of two or more clauses, it is usually so constructed, if possible, that these clauses have the same subject. See Model I.

II. When the subjects of successive clauses are not the same, they should, if possible, be of the same form. Thus they may all be nouns, or all infinitives, or all indirect questions. See Model II.

III. The objects of successive clauses should also, when practicable, be of the same form. See Model III.

IV. The predicates of successive clauses should also, when practicable, be of the same form. Thus they may all be verbs, or all predicate nouns with the copula *sum*, or all predicate adjectives with the copula. See Model IV.

V. The same general law also applies, though not with the same force, to the other elements of the sentence. See Model I.

### 616. MODELS.

I. We see that the blessings which we enjoy and the air which we breathe are given us by God.

II. If hope is the expectation of good, fear is the expectation of evil.

III. I shall consider, not only what it becomes you to hear, but also what it becomes me to say.

IV. Can that which is useless to the republic be useful to any citizen?

I. *Commōda quibus fruimur spiritumque quem ducimus a Deo nobis dari videmus.*

II. *Si spes est expectatio boni, metus est expectatio mali.*

III. *Non solum, quid te audire, verum etiam quid me deceat dicere, considerābo.*

IV. *Num potest, quod inutile rei publicae sit, id cuiquam civi esse utile?*

## 617. REMARKS.

1. MODEL I. — AIR = breath, *spiritum*.
2. MODEL IV. — Observe the position of *id* after the Relative clause. See G. 604, II.

## 618. SYNONYMES.

To wish, desire; *volo, opto, cupio*.

1. *Volo, velle, volui*; TO WISH, — used of the calm exercise of the will, but involving the purpose to realize the wish.

2. *Opto, āre, āvi, ātum*; TO WISH, TO DESIRE, — used of the simple exercise of the will, without involving the purpose to act.

3. *Cupio, ĕre, ĩvi, ĩtum*; TO DESIRE, TO DESIRE EAGERLY, — used especially of passionate and eager desire.

## 619. VOCABULARY.

Adversity, <i>res adversae</i> , f. pl. G. 441, 4.	Hearer, <i>auditor, ōris</i> , m.
Apply one's self to, <i>se applicāre ad</i> with acc.; <i>applicō, āre, āvi</i> and <i>ui, ātum</i> and <i>ĩtum</i> .	July, of July, <i>Quintilis, e</i> .
Arouse, <i>erigo, ĕre, rexi, rectum</i> .	Look forward to, <i>exspecto, āre, āvi, ātum</i> .
Attentive, <i>attentus, a, um</i> .	Nones, usually the <i>fifth</i> day of the month, but the <i>seventh</i> in March, May, July, and Oct.,
Blessing, good, <i>bonum, i, n</i> .	<i>nonae, ārum</i> , f. pl. G. 708, I. 2.
Day before, <i>pridie</i> , adv.	Overthrow, <i>everto, ĕre, verti, ver-sum</i> .
Fortunate, <i>fortunātus, a, um</i> .	Past, <i>præteritus, a, um</i> .
From that place, thence, <i>inde</i> , adv.	Pertain to, <i>pertineo, ĕre, ui, ad</i> with acc.
Future, yet to come, <i>futurus, a, um</i> .	
Greatest (in rank), highest, <i>summus, a, um</i> . G. 163, 3.	

Pleased, be pleased, rejoice, <i>laetor</i> , <i>āri</i> , <i>ātus sum</i> , dep.	Regard as, believe, <i>statuo</i> , <i>ēre</i> , <i>ui</i> , <i>ātum</i> .
Present, <i>praesens</i> , <i>entis</i> .	Show, <i>demonstro</i> , <i>āre</i> , <i>āri</i> , <i>ātum</i> .
Promise, <i>polliceor</i> , <i>ēri</i> , <i>itus sum</i> , dep.	Sixth of July, <i>pridie Nonas Quin-</i> <i>tiles</i> , lit. <i>the day before the</i> <i>Nones of July</i> . G. 708, I.— III.; 437, 1.
Prosperity, <i>res secundae</i> , f. pl. G. 441, 4.	
Recall to mind, <i>recordor</i> , <i>āri</i> , <i>ātus</i> <i>sum</i> , dep.	So, in such a manner, <i>sic</i> , adv. Temperate, <i>temperans</i> , <i>antis</i> . Unusual, <i>inusitatus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .

## 620. EXERCISE.

1. As we are aroused by those blessings which we expect, so we are pleased by those which we recall to mind. 2. Some apply themselves to philosophy, some to the civil law, and others to eloquence. 3. The wise remember the blessings which are past, enjoy those which are present, and look forward to those which are future. 4. It seemed to me that Caius Marius was one of the most fortunate of men in prosperity, and one of the greatest of heroes in adversity. 5. After the overthrow of the republic, Cicero wrote more in a short time than in many years while the republic was standing. 6. Cicero, having been in Athens just ten days, set out from that place on the 6th of July. 7. You cannot be *brave* while judging pain the greatest evil, or *temperate* while regarding pleasure as the highest good. 8. They desire to know what can be done. 9. We wish to be both wise and happy. 10. We shall have *attentive* hearers, if we promise to speak of great, new, and unusual subjects. 11. We shall make them attentive, if we show that those things, which we are about to state, pertain to the highest public welfare.

## LESSON CVIII.

## PERSPICUITY.

**621.** Perspicuity is another most important quality of Latin style. The best Latin writers express their thoughts with great fulness, clearness, and exactness. In the choice of words, they prefer the specific to the general, the concrete to the abstract. Thus, —

I. Instead of pronouns or other general words, more specific terms, referring not so much to the entire person as to some particular part of his nature, are often used. Thus *animus* may be so used when the action relates especially to the mind; *corpus* when it relates to the body; *ingenium* when it relates to natural endowments; *tempus* when it relates to time and opportunity; *oculus, auris*, etc., when it relates to the senses. See Models I. and II.

II. When a single word is insufficient to express the idea with the requisite fulness and clearness, two or more words are often employed. See Model II.

III. The Latin has certain favorite circumlocutions. Thus, —

1. *Facio ut*, with the Subjunctive, is often used to represent the action as *intentional*; though, in English, one verb would be sufficient, and that, too, generally in the Indicative. See Model III.; also G. 489, 1.

2. *Accidit ut, contingit ut, or evenit ut*, with the Subjunctive, is often used to represent the action as *accidental*. See Model IV.

3. *Fiëri potest ut*, with the Subjunctive, is often used to represent the action as *possible*. See Model IV., under 566.

4. Here may be mentioned also the free use of *res, genus*,

*modus*, and a few other words: *res secundae*, prosperity, *res adversae*, adversity; *res gestae*, exploits, achievements, deeds; *res publica*, republic; *in hoc genere*, in this respect; *quo in genere*, in which respect; *in omni genere*, in every respect; *omni genere virtutis*, in every kind of virtue; *omni modo*, in every way; *mirum in modum*, wonderfully. See Model V.

## 622. MODELS.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| I. I devoted all my time to the exigencies of my friends.           | I. <i>Omne meum tempus amicorum temporibus transmisi.</i>                |
| II. The eyes of many will observe and watch you.                    | II. <i>Multorum te oculi speculabuntur atque custodient.</i>             |
| III. I thought that I ought briefly to reply to your communication. | III. <i>Faciendum mihi putavi ut tuis litteris breviter responderem.</i> |
| IV. It was Cicero's good fortune to be very dear to the senate.     | IV. <i>Ciceroni contigit ut esset senatui carissimus.</i>                |
| V. It is difficult to bear adversity with equanimity.               | V. <i>Adversas res aequo animo ferre difficile est.</i>                  |

## 623. REMARKS.

1. MODEL III. — I OUGHT TO REPLY, *faciendum mihi, ut responderem*, lit. *it was to be done by me that I should reply*.

2. MODEL IV. — TO BE, *ut esset*, lit. *that he should be (was)*.

## 624. SYNONYMES.

To happen, to come to pass, to result; *accīdo, contingo, evenio*.

1. *Accīdo, ěre, accīdi*; TO HAPPEN, — the most common word for this general meaning, used of unexpected occurrences, whether favorable or unfavorable, but especially of those which are unfavorable.

2. *Contingo, ěre, contīgi, contactum*; TO HAPPEN, TO BE ONE'S GOOD FORTUNE, — used chiefly of fortunate occurrences.

3. *Evenio, ěre, evēni, eventum*; TO HAPPEN, TO RESULT, TO TURN OUT, — used chiefly of events which are regarded as the results of antecedent causes.

## 625. VOCABULARY.

Aid, <i>adjumentum</i> , i, n.; often in pl.	Expectation, opinion, <i>opinio, ōnis</i> , f.
Bring, <i>affĕro, ferre, attŭli, allātum</i> .	For, after <i>parātus, ad</i> , prep. with acc. For = during, <i>per</i> , prep. with acc.
By letter, <i>per littĕras</i> .	Happen, of desirable occurrences (be one's good fortune), <i>contingo, ěre, tīgi, tactum</i> ; of undesirable occurrences, <i>accīdo, ěre, i</i> .
Communicate, converse, <i>collōquor, i, locutus sum</i> , dep.	Harmony, <i>concordia, ae, f</i> .
Contrary to, <i>praeter</i> , prep. with acc.	Lasting, <i>sempiternus, a, um</i> .
Design, <i>consilium, ii, n</i> .	Military science, <i>res militāris, f</i> .
Distrusting, <i>diffisus, a, um</i> , part. from <i>diffido</i> . G. 385.	More, of more value, <i>pluris</i> . G. 402, III. 1.
Empire, <i>imperium, ii, n</i> .	Native talent, <i>ingenium, ii, n</i> .
Event, issue, <i>eventus, us, m</i> ; thing, <i>res, rei, f</i> .	

Now, <i>nunc</i> , adv.	Since, because, <i>quoniam</i> , conj.
Offend, <i>offendo</i> , <i>ere</i> , <i>i</i> , <i>sum</i> . G.	So many, <i>tot</i> , indecl.
385, 1.	Then, <i>tum</i> , adv.
Possess, <i>possideo</i> , <i>ere</i> , <i>sēdi</i> , <i>ses-</i>	This = that, <i>is</i> , <i>ea</i> , <i>id</i> .
<i>sum</i> .	Treasures, possessions, things, <i>res</i> ,
Possessed of, <i>praeditus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> . G.	<i>rerum</i> , f. pl.
419, III.	Wealthy, <i>dives</i> , <i>itis</i> .
Profitable, <i>fructuosus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .	Willingly, <i>libenter</i> , adv.
Quiet, <i>otium</i> , <i>ii</i> , n.	Would that, I would that, <i>utnam</i> ,
Rather, more, <i>magis</i> , adv.	adv. G. 488, 1.
Result, be the result, <i>evenio</i> , <i>ere</i> ,	
<i>veni</i> , <i>ventum</i> .	

## 626. EXERCISE.

1. I shall willingly communicate with you by letter as often as possible. 2. Since it was not my good fortune to be with you, I would that I had been informed of your design. 3. It may be that the consul will offend the senate. 4. I will admit, Cato, that, distrusting myself (my native talents), I sought the aid of learning. 5. May this event bring to you and to all the citizens, peace, tranquillity, quiet, and harmony. 6. Those who are possessed of *virtue* are alone wealthy; for they alone possess treasures both profitable and lasting, and alone are content with their possessions. 7. A leader skilled in military science is often of more value in battle than all the other soldiers. 8. Nothing could have happened so contrary to my expectation. 9. I, who then feared that the things which have happened would be the result, now fear nothing, and am prepared for every event. 10. Who of the Carthaginians surpassed in counsel, valor, and achievements, that very Hannibal who, for so many years, con-

tended with the Romans for empire and glory? 11. I ought to expect letters from you, rather than you from me; for there is nothing doing at Rome which I think you *would care to know*.

## LESSON CIX.

### LOGICAL QUALITIES OF THE SENTENCE.

**627.** The logical relations which subsist between the different parts of the Latin sentence should be expressed with great exactness and care. Thus,—

I. If the actions are coördinate, they must be expressed in coördinate clauses or sentences. See Model I.

II. If one action is subordinate to the other, its clause must also be made subordinate. See Model II.

III. The relations of actions to each other in point of time must be indicated with great exactness by the Latin tenses. See Model III.

IV. Correlative clauses, indirect questions, and clauses with conjunctions, are favorite constructions in the Latin. See Model III., under 616.

### 628. MODELS.

I. A *brief* life has been given us by God; but the recollection of a well-spent life is eternal.

II. Even if I had anything to say, I should yet

I. *Brevis a Deo nobis vita data est; at memoria bene reditæ vitæ sempiterna.*

II. *Etiam si habërem aliquid, quod dicë-*



wish to hear you, because I have myself spoken so much.

*rem, tamen te audire vellem, quod ipse tam multa dixissem.*

III. You will assign to these volumes as much time as you wish.

III. *Tribues his voluminibus temporis quantum voles.*

### 629. REMARKS.

1. MODEL I. — IS ETERNAL, *sempiterna*. *Est* is omitted. See G. 367, 3.

2. MODEL II. — *Dixissem*. The pluperfect is here used to denote an action completed at the time of *vellem*.

3. MODEL III. — AS YOU WISH, *quantum voles*, lit. *as you will wish*. The action is really future.

### 630. SYNONYMES.

To shun, to flee, to escape; *vito, fugio, effugio*.

1. *Vito, āre, āvi, ātum*; TO SHUN, TO AVOID.

2. *Fugio, ěre, fugi, fugitum*; TO FLEE, — to attempt to escape by flight.

3. *Effugio, ěre, effūgi*; TO FLEE FROM, TO ESCAPE.

### 631. VOCABULARY.

Academy, *Academia, ae, f.*

Beginning, *initium, ii, n.*

Busy, be busy, *occupatione distineri*; lit. *be distracted by business or occupation*. How very busy one is, *quanta occupatione, etc.*

Celestial, *coelestis, e.* Celestial bodies, *coelestia, ium, n. pl.*

Clear, *perspicuus, a, um.*

Commit one's self, *se tradere*; *trado, ěre, didi, ditum.*

Contemplate, *contemplor, āri, ātus sum, dep.*

Dictate, <i>dicto, āre, āvi, ātum.</i>	Occupation, <i>occupatio, ōnis, f.</i>
Distract, <i>distineo, ēre, ui, tentum.</i>	Only, <i>modo, adv.</i>
Entirely, <i>totus, a, um. G. 149; 443.</i>	Owe, <i>debeo, ēre, ui, itum.</i>
Escape, <i>effugio, ēre, fugi.</i>	Part, is the part of, often rendered by the gen. 402, I.
Especially, <i>praesertim, adv.</i>	Philo, <i>Philo</i> or <i>Philon, ōnis, m.</i>
Flee, escape, <i>profugio, ēre, fugi.</i>	Principal, <i>princeps, ipis, m. and f.</i>
Flight, <i>fuga, ae, f.</i>	Readily, easily, <i>facile, adv.</i>
For, <i>nam, conj.</i>	Recover, restore, <i>recreo, āre, āvi, ātum.</i>
Heavens, <i>coelum, i, n.</i>	So—as, with adjectives and adverbs, <i>tam—quam, adv.</i>
Impel, incite, <i>concito, āre, āvi, ātum.</i>	Such, <i>talis, e.</i>
Infer, <i>colligo, ēre, lēgi, lectum.</i>	These lines; these things, <i>haec, n. pl.</i>
Leisure, unoccupied, <i>vacuus, a, um.</i>	Thought, <i>sententia, ae, f.</i>
Look upon, <i>suspicio, ēre, spexi, spectrum.</i>	Voice, a feeble voice, <i>vocula, ae, f.</i>
Manifest, <i>apertus, a, um.</i>	Walk, <i>ambulo, āre, āvi, ātum.</i>

## 632. EXERCISE.

1. I have *no one* to whom I owe more than to you. 2. You have forgotten what I said in the beginning, that I could say more readily, especially in regard to such subjects, what I do not think, than what I think. 3. What can be so manifest and so clear, when we have looked upon the heavens, and have contemplated the celestial bodies, as that there is a God by whom these are governed? 4. This oration of Demosthenes, which I know you have often read, abounds in the most weighty words and thoughts. 5. When the principal of the Academy, Philo, fled from Athens and came to Rome, I committed myself entirely to him, impelled by a certain wonderful zeal for

philosophy. 6. He who fears that which cannot be avoided, can in no way live happily. 7. The Stoics say that it is not the part of a wise man to flee. 8. We do not doubt that the citizens are in flight; only let them escape. 9. I think that you have *never before* read a letter from me, unless written with my own hand: from this you will be able to infer how very busy I am; for, as I had no leisure time, and as it was necessary for me to walk for the purpose of recovering my voice, I dictated these lines while walking.

## LESSON CX.

### LATIN PERIODS.

**633.** The favorite type of the Latin sentence is that of the period. The writer groups his thoughts in such a manner, as not only to show their logical connections, but also to give to each group unity and completeness. The thoughts, when thus arranged, are readily embodied in the periodic form; but a flowing and well-rounded period is a work of great skill, and requires the hand of a master. In this lesson, therefore, we must be content to illustrate the general form of the Latin period, without attempting the higher qualities of style. See Models I. and II.

### 634. MODELS.

I. If you will carefully consider what power Mithridates had, what he accomplished, and what a hero he was, you will

I. *Si diligenter, quid Mithridātes potuērit, et quid effecērit, et qui vir fuērit, considerāris, omnibus regibus*

surely place this king before all the other kings with whom the Roman people waged war.

*quibuscum populus Romānus bellum gessit, hunc regem nimīrum antepōnes.*

II. Cyrus in the conversation which he held at the time of his death, when he was very old, said that he had never perceived that his old age had become weaker than his youth had been.

II. *Cyrus eo sermōne quem moriens habuit, quum admōdum senex esset, negat se unquam sensisse senectutem suam imbecillīorem factam, quam adolescentia fuisset.*

### 635. REMARKS.

1. MODEL I. — Observe, in studying this model (1), the compact structure of the whole, and (2) the unity of the sentence, especially as illustrated in the indirect questions, *quid — potuerit*, etc. IF YOU WILL CONSIDER, Latin idiom, *will have considered*. ALL THE OTHER; here *other* may be either expressed or omitted in rendering into Latin. In this passage the corresponding Latin word is omitted in Cicero.

2. MODEL II. — AT THE TIME OF HIS DEATH, *moriens*, lit. *dying*. SAID THAT HE NEVER, *negat se unquam*, lit. *denies that he ever*. *Negat* is in the Historical Present. See G. 467, III.

### 636. SYNONYMS.

To destroy, tear asunder, overthrow; *deleo, diruo, evertō*.

1. *Deleo, ēre, ēvi, ētum*; TO DESTROY, — the generic word for this meaning.

2. *Diruo, ēre, dirui, dirūtum*; TO DESTROY, TO RUIN, — especially with the accessory idea of tearing asunder.

3. *Evertō, ēre, everti, eversum*; TO OVERTHROW, TO SUBVERT.

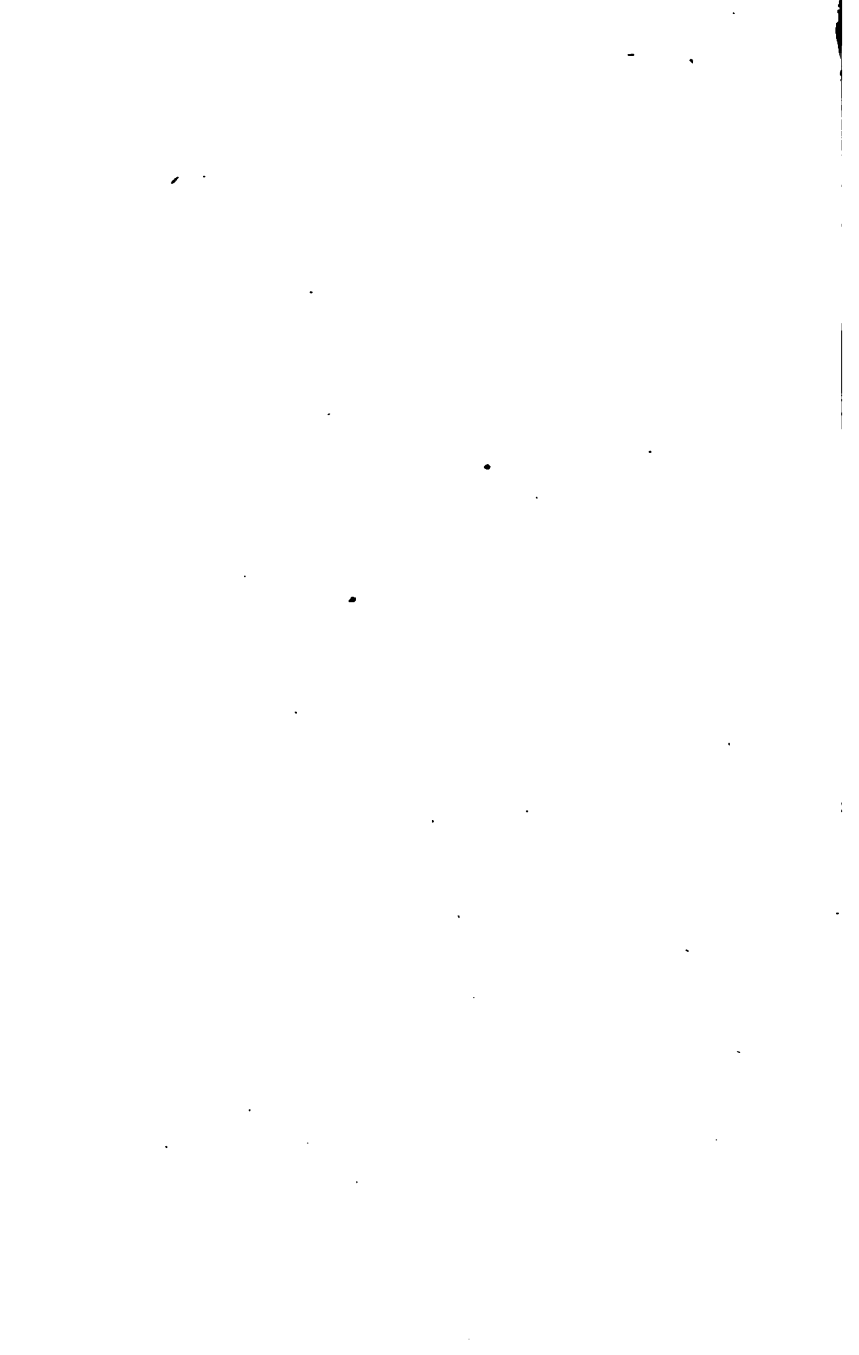
## 637. VOCABULARY.

Agency, through my, &c., agency, <i>per me</i> , etc.; lit. <i>through me</i> .	Excellence, goodness, <i>bonitas</i> , <i>artis</i> , f.
Aid, <i>adjūvo</i> , <i>āre</i> , <i>jūvi</i> , <i>jātum</i> .	Firmly established, firm, <i>firmus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .
Appoint, <i>constituo</i> , <i>ēre</i> , <i>ui</i> , <i>atum</i> .	For = against, <i>in</i> , prep. with acc.
At times, <i>interdum</i> , adv.	He, she, it = this one, <i>hic</i> , <i>haec</i> , <i>hoc</i> .
Chief, highest, <i>summus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> , superlat. of <i>superus</i> . G. 163, 8.	Hostility, enmity, <i>odium</i> , <i>ii</i> , n.
Commit, do, <i>facio</i> , <i>ēre</i> , <i>fecī</i> , <i>factum</i> .	Illustrious, most illustrious, high- est, <i>summus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .
Connect, <i>conjungo</i> , <i>ēre</i> , <i>junxi</i> , <i>junctum</i> .	Kill, <i>enēco</i> , <i>āre</i> , <i>enecui</i> , <i>enectum</i> .
Connection, no connection, <i>nihil conjunctum</i> , n.; lit. <i>nothing connected</i> .	Know, comprehend, <i>percipio</i> , <i>ēre</i> , <i>cēpi</i> , <i>ceptum</i> .
Consistent, be consistent with one's self, <i>sibi consentire</i> , with <i>ipse</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> , in agreement with sub- ject; <i>consentio</i> , <i>ire</i> , <i>sensi</i> , <i>sen- sum</i> .	Measure, <i>metior</i> , <i>iri</i> , <i>mensus sum</i> , dep.
Define, <i>definio</i> , <i>ire</i> , <i>ivi</i> , <i>itum</i> .	Oppose one's self, <i>se opponere</i> ; <i>op- pōno</i> , <i>ēre</i> , <i>posui</i> , <i>positum</i> .
Deserted, waste, <i>desertus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .	Overcome, <i>vinco</i> , <i>ēre</i> , <i>vici</i> , <i>victum</i> .
Devote one's self to, <i>se conferre ad</i> with acc.; <i>confēro</i> , <i>ferre</i> , <i>tūli</i> , <i>collātum</i> .	Right, the right, integrity, <i>hones- tas</i> , <i>artis</i> , f.
Dissension, <i>dissidium</i> , <i>ii</i> , n.	Ruin, demolish, <i>diruo</i> , <i>ēre</i> , <i>ui</i> , <i>ūtum</i> .
	Several, <i>complures</i> , <i>a</i> or <i>ia</i> , pl.
	So — as, with verbs, <i>sic — ut</i> .
	Such, so great, <i>tantus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .
	Utterly, <i>funditus</i> , adv.

## 638. EXERCISE.

1. Solon, when he was asked why he had appointed no punishment for him who should kill a father, replied that

he had thought that no one would commit so great a crime. 2. Leonidas, the king of the Lacedaemonians, opposed himself to the *enemy* at Thermopylae, when either a disgraceful flight or a glorious death was set before him. 3. He who so defines the chief good, that it has no connection with virtue, and who measures it by his own advantages, and not by the right, would not be able, if he should be consistent with himself, and should not at times be overcome by the excellence of his nature, to cultivate either friendship or justice. 4. There is no doubt that large forces of the enemy were destroyed in many battles. 5. I see that it is admitted among all that several cities, ruined and almost deserted, have, through your agency, been restored. 6. No state is so firmly established that it may not be utterly *overthrown* by hostilities and dissensions. 7. Those most illustrious men, Scipio Africanus, Caius Laelius, and Marcus Cato, would never have devoted themselves to the study of letters, if they were not at all aided by them in the knowledge and practice of virtue.



# NOTES.

- 15.—1. **Is useful**, *utilis est*, or *est utilis*. In this exercise, the learner will adopt the former order.—11. **Cicero**; for the position of the object in Latin, see 13, I. 4.—**Cicero**, the most celebrated of the Roman orators. PAGE 7
- 20.—4. **Hannibal**, a celebrated Carthaginian general.—**Saguntum**, a town in Spain.—16. **Their**, *suum*. Remember that the *Number*, as well as the *Gender* and *Case*, of the possessive, is determined, not by the noun to which it refers, but by that to which it belongs. Here *suum*, their, refers to *puëri*, boys, which is in the plural, while it belongs to *patrem*, father, which is in the singular. 9
- 25.—2. **Consul**. Under the Roman commonwealth, two *consuls* were annually chosen as joint presidents.—8. **Socrates**, a celebrated Athenian philosopher.—10. **Herodotus**, a Greek historian. 11
- 30.—9. **Catiline**, the notorious conspirator against the Roman government.—12. **Our pupils**; omit the possessive *our* in rendering into Latin: so also *your*, in the next sentence. See G. 447. 12
- 35.—1. **Numa**. The emphatic subject should be placed at the end of the sentence. See G. 594, II.—**Numa**, the second king of Rome.—12. **Athens**, the capital of Attica, in Greece. 14
- 40.—3. **Is an honor to**, Lat. idiom, *is for an honor to*. See G. 390.—7. **As a present** = *for a present*.—8. **I have** = *there are to me*. 16
- 44.—2. **The orator**, *oratoris*. See G. 42, 4; 363.—3. **Demosthenes**, the greatest of Athenian orators. 17
- 49.—1. **Is a characteristic of**, Lat. idiom, *is of*. See G. 402, I.—8. **Our friends**; omit *our* in rendering.—13. **Us**, *nostra*. See G. 408, 1, 2). 19
- 54.—8. **Talent**, *talentum*, a sum of money somewhat more than \$1000. It consisted of sixty *minae*.—10. **Proud of** = *proud because of*.—11. **Scipio**, a celebrated Roman general. 21



- 23     59. — 1. **Cato**, the name of several distinguished Romans. The most celebrated was Marcus Porcius Cato, the Censor. — 6. **Five years older** = *older by five years*.
- 24     64. — 1. **There were**, *fuērunt*, or *erant*. — **There** — omitted in rendering into Latin. The Perf. *fuērunt* simply states the historical fact, that *there were cities*; while the Impf. *erant* gives prominence to the continued existence of these cities. — 2. **Were you?** *fuistis?* a question for information. See G. 346, II. 1. — **Corinth**, a beautiful city in Greece.
- 26     69. — 6. **Tarquin**. Tarquinius Priscus, the fifth king of Rome, is meant. He came from Tarquinii, a city of Etruria. — **In the reign of Ancus**, Lat. idiom, *Ancus reigning*. See G. 431, 2. Ancus Marcius was the fourth king of Rome. 7. **When Cicero was consul** = *in the consulship of Cicero*. See G. 431, 2.
- 29     79. — 1. **Saguntum**. Place the emphatic subject at the end of the sentence. See G. 594, II. — 3. **How many books have you** = *how many books are there to you?* — 5. **Was a man of**, Lat. idiom, *was of*. See G. 402, III. — 6. **In your happiness** = *because of*, etc. — 8. **Servius**. Servius Tullius, the sixth king of Rome, is meant. — 14. **Pydna**, a town in Macedonia. — **At Pydna**, *ad Pydnam*.
- 35     94. — 7. **He had received**, *accepisset*, Subj. by Attraction. See G. 527. — 8. **Because they are diligent**, *quod diligentes sunt*, — a positive reason on the authority of the narrator. Hence the Indic. *sunt*. See G. 520, I. But in 9, where the Indirect Discourse is used, *sunt* becomes *sint*. See G. 531.
- 37     99. — 1. **Boys**, *puēri*. Place the Vocative after the first clause. See G. 602, VI. — **The good**. See G. 441, 1. — 3. **Of the Roman people**. For the position of the Genitive, see G. 598, 3. — 4. **Is the part of**, Lat. idiom, *is of*. See G. 402, I.
- 39     104. — 5. **Inclined to play**, Lat. idiom, *inclined to playing*. — 8. **To ask for** = *to seek*, Supine in *um*. See G. 569.
- 41     111. — 2. **Another**, *alter*; as only two persons are mentioned. See G. 459, 3. — 4. **Xenophon**, a celebrated Greek historian. — 8. **Ennius**, a Roman poet. — 11. **Let us be content**. See G. 487.
- 42     116. — 1. **Saturnia**, an ancient citadel on the Capitoline Hill, the fabled beginning of Rome. — 2. **Ascanius**, the son of Aeneas, and founder of the city of Alba Longa in Italy.
- 43     118. — 2. **What ought?** etc. See G. 229; 525. — 5. **Camillus**, a distinguished Roman general. — 7. **Porsena**, a king of Etruria in Italy.
- 44     120. — 1. **New Carthage**, a town in Spain. — 5. **Cannae**, a

village in Apulia, famous for the victory of Hannibal over the Romans. — 6. **Many states of Italy.** See G. 598, 3. — 8. **Carthaginians**, the citizens of ancient Carthage in Northern Africa.

122. — 1. **Your country**, *patrias tuas*; or *patrias*. See G. 447; 385. — 2. **To come.** See G. 492, 2. — 4. **Mithridates**, a celebrated king of Pontus. — 5. **Sulla**, a distinguished Roman general. — 7. **Capua**, the chief city of Campania in Italy. — 10. **Cæsar**. Julius Caesar, a distinguished Roman general and statesman, is meant. — 11. **Nile**, a river in Egypt. 45

127. — 1. **Gauls**, the inhabitants of ancient Gaul, embracing modern France. — 4. **Lacedaemonians**, the inhabitants of Lacedaemon, or Sparta, a celebrated city in Greece. — 5. **Their king Leonidas**, *regem Leonidam*. Place these words after the verb, directly before the Relative. — **To occupy**, *qui occuparet*. See G. 500. — **Thermopylae**, the celebrated pass in Greece where Leonidas fell. 47

129. — 8. **As a present.** See G. 390, II. — 10. **Many years.** 48  
See G. 378. — 11. **Leuctra**, a town in Boeotia.

131. — 1. **Pericles**, a celebrated Athenian statesman. — 3. 49  
**Philip**, a king of Macedonia. — 5. **Chaeronea**, a town in Boeotia.

136. — 3. **Their own valor**, *suam virtutem*. A possessive with *own*, if not particularly emphatic, may be rendered by the Latin possessive standing before its noun. The Genitive of *ipse* is added when special emphasis requires it. See G. 452, 4. — 6. **Belgians**, a warlike people in the north of Gaul. — 7. **Must be accomplished.** See G. 229. — **By us.** See G. 388. 51

141. — 1. **Helvetians**, a people in Gaul. — **Their.** See G. 597, I. — 3. **To encounter**, Infinitive, or *ad* with the Gerundive. 53  
— 6. **Did see**; for Person, see G. 463, 1. — 10. **For me to speak**, *ut dicam*, lit. *that I should (may) speak*.

147. — 1. **Of the Romans.** Great freedom, it will be remembered, is allowed in the arrangement of Latin words. A genitive or an adjective may often precede its noun, even when no emphasis is indicated; especially if perspicuity or euphony can be thus promoted. Indeed, the arrangement may often be left to the option of the writer. — 3. **In their language** = *by means of their language*. See G. 414; 414, 4. — 4. **Very brave.** See G. 444, 1. — 10. **Them.** See 457; also G. 451, 1. 55

152. — 1. **Greatly.** Place *valde* directly before the verb. See G. 600, 3. — 4. **To be burned.** See G. 551, II. 1. — 5. **Orgetorix**, a Helvetian chieftain. — 6. **To wage.** See G. 492, 2. — 7. **Would be** = *was about to be*. — 10. **His forces**, *copias*; the 57

## PAGE

possessive is unnecessary. See G. 447. — **Labienus**, a distinguished officer under Caesar in Gaul. — **Arar**, a river in Gaul, the Saône.

- 59    **158.** — 3. **How large a force**, *quantas copias*. In the sense of — force, forces, *copiæ* (plur.), and not *copia*, is generally used. — 10. **Was Orgetorix?** etc. See G. 346, II. 2, 1). — 13. **Orgetorix**. Either like the English or with the addition of the simple predicate — *Orgetorix was the bravest*. See G. 346, II. 3. — 14. **Not, ne, or noli** with the Infinitive. See G. 538. — 15. **Let us encounter**. See G. 487.
- 61    **163.** — 1. **Had**. See G. 525; 481, I. 2. — 4. **Lemannus**, the Lake of Geneva in Switzerland. — 5. **The Rhone**, *Rhodanus*, a river in Gaul. — 6. **Their cities** = *the cities of them*. See 468, 2. — 7. **Aeduaans**, a powerful tribe in Gaul. — 9. **Of the Romans**. See G. 598, 3.
- 63    **169.** — 1. **Caria**, a province in Asia Minor. — 4. **Was, fuisse**, referring not to the time of *didisti*, but to the age of Caesar. — 5. **Carthage**, an ancient city in Northern Africa. — **Numantia**, an ancient city in Spain.
- 65    **174.** — 4. For the order of words, see G. 595. — 5. **That Geneva is**. See G. 551, I. — **Allobroges**, a powerful tribe in ancient Gaul. — 6. **Brutus, Collatinus**, the first consuls in Rome. — 9. In combining these names, connect *Marcus* and *Quintus* by a conjunction, and let the other parts of the names follow in the plural, *Tullii Cicerones*. See G. 439, 4.
- 68    **180.** — 6. **At this place**. See G. 422, 1, 1). — **Rhine**, a celebrated river in Europe. — 10. **That boast**. See G. 371, 1, 3), (2). — 13. **The same as, idem quod**. See G. 451, 5.
- 70    **186.** — 1. **Ariovistus**, a German chieftain in the time of Caesar. — 2. **By his own name, suo nomine**. *Ipsius* is unnecessary. — 4. **From his own name, e suo nomine**. — 5. **Whom**. See G. 385. — **Blind**. See G. 594, II. — 9. **Our opinion, sententiam**. The possessive should be omitted. — 12. **My opinion**. Here it is better to use the possessive to avoid all ambiguity.
- 72    **191.** — 6. **His**. The possessive before *commander* and *home* should be omitted in rendering into Latin. — **To be permitted, ut liceat**. See G. 492, 2. — 7. **Of what**. See G. 374, 5. — 8. **Of Ariovistus = from Ariovistus**.
- 74    **196.** — 3. **Tiberius Gracchus**, a statesman famous in the political history of Rome. — 4. **Publius Scipio Nasica**, a Roman citizen distinguished for his integrity. — 6. **Spoke Latin, Latine locutum esse**. The Latin idiom uses the adverb *Latine* where

the English uses the noun Latin. — 9. **To take.** See G. 491. — **The city of Geneva,** Lat. idiom, *the city Geneva.* See G. 363. — 10. **To encounter.** Use the Infinitive in this sentence, but see note on 141, 3.

202. — 3. **Sent, misisse,** referring to the historical fact that Ariovistus sent, etc. *Mittere* would mean *was sending* at the time of the statement. See G. 541, 1. — 4. **I said so** = *I said it*; but *it* in such cases should be omitted in rendering into Latin. See 457. — 5. **To the city of,** etc. See G. 379, 2. — 6. **To their camp,** etc., Lat. idiom, *to Geneva to their camp.* — 9. **When a boy.** See G. 363, 3. — 11. **Your letter** = *your communication*, with no special reference to its form.

207. — 2. **The good.** See 441, 1. — 3. **Are envied.** See G. 301, 3. — 7. **Of Ephesus,** *Ephēsus*, in apposition with *nomen*. — 9. **By all.** See G. 388. — 10. **What business,** Lat. idiom, *what of business.* See G. 396, III. 2, 3). — 11. **Is a glory,** Lat. idiom, *is for a glory.* See G. 390.

212. — 8. **For whom** = for whose interests, *cui*? See G. 385, 3. — 11. **Was a detriment.** See G. 390.

218. — 3. **Acceptable,** — because of its value. — 6. **Peculiar to Athens,** *proprium Athenarum.* See G. 391, 2, 4). — 8. **Borders,** *finibus.* See G. 384, 386. — 9. **Very near the camp.** See G. 392, II.

224. — 2. **To make.** See G. 489. — 3. **In military affairs,** *rei militaris.* See G. 399, 2, 2). — 5. **They had more zeal,** Lat. idiom, *more of zeal was to them.* — 6. **Very desirous,** *avidī*; the force of *very* being involved in *avidus*.

229. — 3. **Of great valor.** See G. 402, III. — 4. **Is characteristic of,** Lat. idiom, *is of.* See G. 402, I. — 7. **Not;** for the position of *non*, see G. 602, IV.

235. — 2. **With . . . forces,** *omnibus copiis.* See G. 414, 7. — **As aid, auxilio.** See G. 390. — 4. **More than five,** etc. See G. 417, 3. — 6. **Antioch, Antiochia,** an ancient city of Syria. — 7. **Than that of.** See G. 397, 1. — **Themistocles,** a celebrated Athenian general. — **Solon,** the famous lawgiver of Athens.

241. — 5. **And your.** Repeat *et*, but use the possessive only once. See 469; also G. 587, I. 6. — 6. **There was no need,** *nihil opus fuit.* — 7. **Make the best use of** = *use best*, i. e. in the best manner.

247. — 7. **Must be waged.** See G. 229. — 10. Here the thought requires that prominent places should be given to the Latin words for *man* and *capable*.

77

79

81

84

86

89

91

94

96

PAGE

99

**252.** — 1. **Pythagoras**, a celebrated Grecian philosopher. — **Brutus**, the deliverer of Rome from the oppression of Tarquin the Proud. — **In which, quo.** See G. 426. — 3. **On the first day of May, calendis Maiis**, lit. *on the May calends*. — 5. In this sentence, omit *his* in rendering into Latin. — 6. **Two years afterwards.** See G. 418; 427. — 11. **Is a man of such eloquence**, Lat. idiom, *is of, or with, such eloquence*. See G. 428. — **That he delights.** See G. 494.

102

**258.** — 1. **In the consulship**, etc., Lat. idiom, *Cassius being consul*. See G. 431. — **Under the yoke, sub jugum.** The yoke was used as the symbol of submission and servitude. — 3. **Having routed the army**, Lat. idiom, *the army having been routed*. — **Aquitaniens**, the inhabitants of ancient Aquitania in Gaul. — 4. **To fight** = to or for fighting, *ad pugnandum*. — 9. **In the time**, etc., Lat. idiom, *Cicero being alive*.

104

**263.** — 4. **Frequently.** See G. 443. — 5. **Assembled in the temple**, Lat. idiom, *came together into the temple*. — **Jupiter Stator.** *Stator*, the stayer, he who arrests the flight of soldiers and causes them to stand fast, is one of the epithets of Jupiter, the king of the gods. — 6. **Was the first**, etc., Lat. idiom, *the first accused*. See G. 442, 1.

107

**268.** — 6. **Who oppose.** See G. 445, 3, 2); 463, 1. — 7. **There are some.** See Model VII. — **Who fear.** See G. 501, I. — 8. **As we ought**, Lat. idiom, *that which we ought*. See G. 445, 7. — 9. **To ascertain**, Lat. idiom, *who may ascertain*. See G. 500; 445, 5. — **Are.** See G. 525. — 10. **Devoted himself to = studied.** — **Which, quod.** See G. 445, 4.

110

**274.** — 2. **On the 8th of Nov.**, Lat. idiom, *on the sixth day before the ides of November*. See G. 708; 708, 3; 709. — 4. **Such was . . . madness.** See G. 453, 4. — 5. **The best books which.** See Model V.; also G. 453, 5. — 7. **Their money.** See G. 447.

112

**279.** — 1. **It would be better**, See Model V.; also G. 475, 4, 1). — 3. **Should have been.** See 475, 1. — 5. **Could he not**, etc., Lat. idiom, *was he not able to order*. — 7. **Did judge.** See G. 494. — **The best thing to do.** See G. 570, 1. — 10. **From the founding**, etc., Lat. idiom, *from the city founded*. See 410; also G. 580.

114

**285.** — 1. **Like Catiline.** See G. 399, 3, 2). — **That they dared.** See G. 494; 481, II. 1. — 6. **When consul.** See G. 363, 3. — **For the safety, ad salutem**, lit. *to the safety*, i. e. to that end. See 380, III. — **Has been called.** See G. 482, 2. —

9. **Rest**, — in itself considered. — 10. **Rest**, i. e. as a means of invigorating its powers.

290. — 4. **Care must be taken**, *cavendum est*. — 6. **That** = 117 but that, *quin*. — 8. **I fear that**. See G. 492, 4, 1). — 9. **To watch**, *vigilemus*, lit. *that we should (may) watch*. See G. 496, 1. — 10. **From defending**, Lat. idiom, *by which he should less defend*. See G. 499.

296. — 1. **Ambassadors**, *legatos*. This word may stand after 119 the verb, directly before the Relative clause. — **To establish**, *qui confirmarent*, lit. *who should establish*. See G. 500. — 2. **Faesulae**, a town in Etruria. — 4. **Will lose**, *amittas*. See G. 492, 4; 479. — 8. **To be read**. See G. 501, III.

301. — 4. **Unless you suppress** = *unless you shall suppress*. 122 See G. 470, 2. — **Conscript Fathers**. The Roman senators were often thus addressed. — **For inaction**. See G. 410, II. — 8 **This conspiracy**, etc. See 419.

307. — 4. **That which**, *id quod*. But it is often better to begin 125 the sentence with the Relative clause, and let the antecedent follow; as, *quod est*, etc., *id*, etc. — 5. **With your aid**. See G. 414. — 6. **Let not fear deter**, *ne timor deterreat*. See G. 488, 3. — **From watching**. See G. 499. — 8. **What is right**. See G. 527.

312. — 1. **Came**, *venit*. See G. 518, 3. — 2. **When they** 127 **were**. See Model III.; also G. 518, II. — 3. **Because he has driven**, — the reason assigned by those who hate, not by the narrator. See G. 520, II. — 4. **Because he has driven**, — the reason assigned by the narrator himself. See G. 520, I. — 6. **These things**, *quae*, lit. *which things*. See G. 453. — 8. **Is recorded**. See G. 522, II.

317. — 2. **At the command**, etc., Lat. idiom, *the consul com-* 129 *manding*. See G. 431. — 3. **Upon** = *concerning*. — 4. **Difficult to say**. See G. 570. — 5. **Would preserve**, i. e. in the future. See G. 543.

323. — 1. **When he received**. See G. 531. — What mood 131 would be used in the direct discourse? See G. 518, 3. — 6. **That**, *quin*. See G. 498, 3. — 7. **Who does not desire**, *qui non cupiat*, or *quin cupiat*. See also Syn. 618.

329. — 5. **Would have gone**. See G. 532, 2, 2). — 6. **When** 133 **he comes**. See G. 532, 4. In the direct discourse this would be, *when I come* = *when I shall have come*. — 9. **Is the part of fortitude**, Lat. idiom, *is of fortitude*. See G. 402, I.

334. — 3. **Do not think**. See Model V.; also G. 535, 1, 3). 135 — 6. **Let me know**, Lat. idiom, *make (or cause) that I may know*.

- **Are doing.** See G. 525. — 8. **At his own personal peril,** *suo soltus periculo.* See G. 397, 3. — 9. **These books on philosophy,** Lat. idiom, *these concerning philosophy books.* See 419.
- 138 340. — 6. **To be happy.** See Model II. — 8. **In vain,** i. e. without success, without accomplishing his object. — 10. **To no purpose,** i. e. not only without accomplishing the desired object, but absolutely without any good result. — **Brought us,** Lat. idiom, *brought for us.* See G. 385. — 12. **To be wise.** See G. 547, II.
- 140 346. — 1. **Profess to be wise,** Lat. idiom, *profess themselves to be (that they are) wise.* — 2. **Who is unwilling.** See G. 501, I. — 5. **Upon the state.** See G. 386.
- 142 351. — 4. **He also says,** *idem dicit.* See G. 451, 3. — 5. **It is my duty,** *meum est.* See G. 404, 1. — 6. **What I think,** an indirect question. — **What you have done** = *that which you have done*, a Relative clause. See G. 525, 5, 1). — 7. **Whether—or.** See G. 526, II. 1. — **Of greater value,** *pluris.* See G. 402, III. 1. — 8. **That he had conquered.** See Model VIII.; also G. 554, IV.; 558, V. 2; 520, II. — 9. **That men are delighted.** See G. 556, II.
- 145 357. — 2. **That you are.** See G. 558, V. 1. — **Of securing.** See G. 563. — 4. **Upon the . . . saving,** etc., Lat. idiom, *upon the republic to be saved.* — 5. **For perceiving,** *ad* with the Gerundive. — 6. **To be plundered.** See G. 565, 3.
- 147 362. — 3. **Reading, writing.** Place the Latin word for the former at the end of the first clause, and that for the latter at the beginning of the second. See G. 595. — **For writing,** *scribendi*, lit. *of writing.* See G. 393, 1. — 6. **Of his hearers,** *audientium*, or *eorum qui audiunt.* See 438; also G. 575, 1; 577. — 7. **More necessary.** See G. 169, 2; 170. — **Than that of requiting,** Lat. idiom, *than requiting.* — 8. **To salute.** See G. 569.
- 149 367. — 3. In this sentence the relation of the different parts will be best shown by placing the verb before the object. — 4. **When they speak,** Lat. idiom, *speaking.* See G. 578, I. — 5. **From me,** *meam*, lit. *my.* See 462. — 7. **Having accomplished.** See G. 431, 2, (3).
- 152 373. — 1. **That.** See G. 498, 3. — 6. **And;** omit in rendering into Latin. See G. 587, I. 6. — **Pompey,** a celebrated Roman general. — 7. **In the temple,**—regarded simply as an edifice. — 8. **In this temple;** use the most general word.
- 154 379. — 2. **More,** *plura*, lit. *more things.* — **Have,** *habuero*, lit. *shall have had.* — 5. **Have to fear.** See G. 388, 1, 1).

**384.** — 1. **To see.** See G. 492, 3. — 4. **To be an honor,** 157  
 Lat. idiom, *to be for an honor.* See G. 390. — 5. **To say, qui**  
*dicērent*, lit. *who should say.* See G. 500. — 6. **To achieve, ad**  
 with Gerundive. See G. 565, 3.

**389.** — 2. **To set forth;** place the Latin Infinitive in this 159  
 instance at the end of the sentence. See 595, VI. — 4. **If any one**  
**should free.** See Model II. — 6. **If the fear, etc.** See G.  
 431, 2, (1).

**395.** — 3. **Though he is.** See G. 515, II. — 5. **Caius Mucius.** 161  
 While Porsena was besieging Rome, Caius Mucius, afterwards sur-  
 named Scaevola, attempted to deliver the city by slaying the king.

**401.** — 1. **When virtue governs.** See G. 431. — 2. **Hav-** 164  
**ing come,** Lat. idiom, *when I had come.* See G. 518, II. — 3.  
**Arganthonius,** a king of Tartessus in Spain. — 5. **At the age**  
**of eighty-five,** Lat. idiom, *having been born eighty-five years.* —  
 6. **Isocrates,** a celebrated Athenian orator. — **In his;** omit the  
 possessive in rendering. See G. 447. — 8. **Plato,** a celebrated  
 Greek philosopher. — 9. **While consul.** See G. 363, 3. — **Mari-**  
**us,** a celebrated Roman general.

**407.** — 1. **Which we, etc.** See G. 604, I. — 7. **Clodius,** an un- 166  
 principled Roman, and a bitter enemy of Cicero. — 10. **Servilius**  
**Ahala,** Master of Horse under the Roman Dictator Cincinnatus. —  
**Spurius Maelius,** a wealthy Roman knight. — **Because he**  
**was seeking.** See G. 578, II.

**416.** — 1. **Tarentum,** a town in Southern Italy. — 2. **Plautus,** 169  
 a celebrated Roman poet. — 3. **Just eighty-three.** See G. 452,  
 3. — **Before the consulship, etc.,** Lat. idiom, *before Cicero con-*  
*sul.* See 409. — 4. **With the attendance, etc.,** Lat. idiom,  
*fortune being the attendant.* — 5. **Of, de.** — 9. **From boyhood,**  
 Lat. idiom, *from a boy.* See 408. — 10. **The desire.** See 411.

**425.** — 3. **All . . . before Socrates.** See 419. — 6. **In an** 172  
**enemy, in hoste posita.** — 7. **Temples around the forum.**  
 See 420. — 10. **Epicurus,** the famous Greek philosopher from  
 whom the Epicureans have derived their name.

**433.** — 4. **Antiochus,** a king of Syria. — 5. **Achilles,** the 175  
 most famous Grecian hero in the Trojan war. — 7. **Wishes.** See  
 G. 525. — 11. **Of Antony, Antonii.** Place this word at the  
 beginning of the sentence. — **His;** omit in rendering into Latin.

**445.** — 1. Begin with *interest, ut.* — 2. **Gorgias,** a celebrated 178  
 Greek rhetorician. — **Leontini,** an ancient town in Sicily. — 3.  
**Prodicus,** a Greek rhetorician. — **Ceus, or Cea,** an island in the  
 Aegean Sea. — 4. **Pharsalia,** a plain in Thessaly, famous for



- Caesar's victory over Pompey. — Atticus, an intimate friend of Cicero. — 5. **Leuctra**, a town in Boeotia, famous for the victory of the Theban general Epaminondas over the Lacedaemonians. — 6. **One of the Seven**, Lat. idiom, *one from the Seven*, i. e. the Seven Wise Men of Greece. — 7. **Are no less useful**, Lat. idiom, *bring (impart) no less utility (advantage)*, or like the English. — **Warriors**, Lat. idiom, *those who wage war*. See 438. — 8. **Crotona**, a town in Southern Italy. — **In the fourth year**, etc., Lat. idiom, *Tarquinius Superbus reigning the fourth year*. See G. 431; 378. — **Tarquinius Superbus**, the seventh king of Rome. — 10. **While in exile**, Lat. idiom, *while they were in exile*. See G. 518, II. — 11. **So virtuous**, *ea virtute*. See 441, and Model III. — **No other aim**, Lat. idiom, *nothing else if not (unless)*.
- 181 455. — 3. **Armenians**, a people in Asia. — 7. **Many weighty**, Lat. idiom, *many and weighty*. — 10. **As possible**. See 449. — 14. **Many of the best**, *multi optimi*, lit. *many best*.
- 185 466. — 5. **When I heard**. This is intended to designate *time* simply. — 6. **Have to learn**. See G. 388, 1, 1). — 7. **As much time**. See G. 396, III. 2, 3); 594, III. — 8. **As certain**, Lat. idiom, *for certain*.
- 187 475. — 2. **Cimbrians**, a people of Northern Europe, who invaded the Roman empire and were defeated by Caius Marius. — 3. **Miletus**, a city in Asia Minor. — 6. **His**, *ejus*, referring to Socrates. See 468, 2. — 10. **The town of Antioch**. See G. 379, 2.
- 190 481. — 2. **For the safety of**. See G. 602, II. 3. — 4. Place the Relative clause at the beginning of the sentence. See G. 604, II. — 7. **He**, i. e. Thales. — **Astyages**, king of Media in the sixth century B. C. — 10. **That of Cicero**. See 476, 4.
- 194 491. — 2. **You or I?** See G. 346, II. 2, 1). — 4. **The conversation**. See 484. — 11. **All the good**. See 485. — 12. **Sextus Roscius**, a citizen of Ameria in Italy, defended by Cicero in an oration still extant. — **Was constantly**. See G. 443.
- 197 499. — 1. **All the greatest**. See 485. — 2. **Now that . . . old**. See G. 363, 3. — 5. **It seems . . . that Crassus**, Lat. idiom, *Crassus seems*. See 494. — 6. **So far . . . from admiring**. See G. 496, 3. — 9. **Valor of Scipio**. See 492.
- 199 505. — 4. **It is said that**. See 494. — **Xerxes**, a celebrated king of Persia. — 6. **Men may live**. Use the impersonal construction. See 500, III. — 7. **One should contend**. See 495, 1.
- 203 515. — 4. **When I obtain**, Lat. idiom, *when I shall have obtained*. — 6. **Indeed while I**, *qui dum*, lit. *who while*. See G.

453. — 9. **One can live.** Use the Impersonal Passive Construction. See 495; 500, III.

521. — 1. **What counsel,** Lat. idiom, *what of counsel*. — 2. 206 **Each day** = every day, *quoque die*. — 3. **When boys.** See G. 363, 3. — **We had the opinion** = *the opinion was to us*. — 4. **That one cannot live.** Use the Pass. Impers. construction, *non posse vivi*. — 5. **Says that no one** = *denies that any one*.

528. — 1. **In the whole of Asia.** See G. 422, 1, 1). — 3. 209 **Would be . . . to impel** = *would be able to impel*. — **You think,** *putāres*, not *putas*, as this clause is treated as a part of the conclusion, — *which you would in that event think best*. — 4. **I wish,** *velim*, lit. *I would wish*, — a modest, respectful form of expressing a wish. — **Would write.** See G. 493, 2. — **On what day.** Place this clause, on account of its importance, at the beginning of the sentence. — 6. **Should have been.** See G. 475, 1.

535. — 1. **That there were.** See G. 498, 3. — 2. **The study** 211 **in which,** *id studium in quo*. See 484. — **Be an honor to,** Lat. idiom, *be for an honor to*. See G. 390. — 3. **Have attained.** See G. 501, I. — 5. **As we wish** = *as we may wish*. — 6. **I desire,** *opto*, — involving no purpose. See Syn. 618. — 8. **Plans.** *Consilia* should begin the sentence to show its relation to both clauses. — 10. **Who . . . statesmen.** See 438.

541. — 1. **We must give.** See 557, III. — 2. **Archytas,** a 214 Pythagorean philosopher of Tarentum in Italy. — **To remember** = *that he should remember*, — indirect discourse. See G. 530, II. — 3. **To hear.** Use the Infinitive, or *ad* with the Gerund. — 5. **For the safety,** *ad* with the Acc. See 380, III. — 7. **Dion,** a brother-in-law of the tyrant Dionysius of Syracuse. — **Of Syracuse.** See 435. — **To liberate,** *ut* with the Subjunctive, or *ad* with the Gerundive. Use the latter. — 9. **Suitable to command,** Lat. idiom, *suitable who may command*. See G. 501, III. — 10. **To pay his respects.** Use Supine. — 12. **To be presented,** Lat. idiom, *that he should be presented*. See G. 495.

550. — 2. **Cicero.** The subject may be placed either before or 217 after the participial clause. — 5. **Having achieved . . . deeds.** Use the Abl. Abs. — **The ancient . . . Olympus,** *Olympum urbem antiquam*. — 6. **Having conquered.** Use *quum* with the Subjunctive. — **Mantineia,** a city in Arcadia. — 9. **Requite your favor** = *requite, or return to you, the favor*. — **Be grateful** = *have gratitude*. Here *gratiam* may be omitted, as it can be so readily supplied from the preceding clause.

556. — 1. **On . . . despising glory;** *de* with the Gerundive. 220

- 2. **Hippias**, a celebrated Greek rhetorician. — **Olympia**, a district in Elis, where the Olympic games were held. — 3. **Held with Cato**. This identifies the conversation. See 551, I. — 5. **At the age of nineteen**, Lat. idiom, *having been born nineteen years*. — 6. **What advice you gave** = *what you advised*. — 7. **Except injuries**, Lat. idiom, *if not (unless) injuries*. — 9. **And**; omit in rendering. See G. 587, I. 6.
- 223    561. — 1. **By means of money**, Abl. — 2. **One**. *One* should be omitted in rendering. — 3. **It must be admitted**. In the several sentences in this exercise, *must* is best rendered by the Periphrastic Conj. — **That . . . is**. With *concedo*, either the Infinitive, or *ut* with the Subjunctive, may be used. — 7. **Ought to do**, i. e. in view of the circumstances of the case. See 557, III. — 8. **Should be**. Use the Impers. construction. — **Be arranged with reference to** = *be referred to*. — 10. **By a . . . admiration**, *admiratione*.
- 227    569. — 2. **That which one thinks**, *id quod sentit*. The Subjunctive would not be incorrect, but would be less definite. — 3. **Not . . . either . . . or** = *neither . . . nor*. See 581. — 5. **For administering**, *ad* with the Gerundive. See 380, III.; 545. — 6. **To be negligent**. See G. 547, II. — 7. **As I think you are aware** = *which I think you know*. — **Think**. See Syn. 576. — **I have acquaintance** = *there is to me an acquaintance*. — 8. **Whatever**, *quae — ea*, those things which.
- 230    578. — 2. **Consult for the interests of a part**, Lat. idiom, *consult for a part*. — 3. **I supposed**. See G. 501, I. — 4. **Ought to have reference** = *ought to be referred*. — 5. **To sacrifice**. Use the Infinitive. — 7. **Without giving some precepts**, etc., Lat. idiom, *no precepts of duty being* (in the mean time) *given*. This sense — *being given*, not *having been given* — is best expressed by the Fut. Pass. Part. *tradendis*. — 11. **Attain**, suppose. Subjunctive. See G. 518, II.; 527.
- 234    587. — 1. **Learned studies**. See 440, 2. — 4. **And**. See G. 587, I. 6. — **Are perishable**. For gender of adjective, see G. 430, 2, 3). — 10. **Perhaps the greatest hero**, *haud scio an summum*. See G. 526, II. 2, 2). — **Lysis**, a celebrated Pythagorean philosopher of Tarentum.
- 237    594. — 3. **Have been taught** = *educated, trained*. See 585. — **To arrange**. Use Subj. of Purpose. — 5. **Would speak**. Use Pres. Infin. — 6. **Deserve to be seen**. See G. 231. — 7. **Nothing new** = *nothing of new*. — 8. **Lost in thought**, *cogitatione impediti*, engaged, occupied with thought. — 10. **I have**

**been desiring.** See G. 467, 2. — 12. **Though the tyrant was removed.** See G. 481, 2. — 13. **Also;** render by the proper form of *idem*. See G. 451, 3.

**599.** — 1. **And;** omit in rendering. See G. 587, I. 6. — 2. **240 Which we,** etc. Insert this in the principal clause. See G. 604, I. — 3. **Dionysius,** the tyrant of Syracuse. — 5. **He who obeys,** *eum qui paret*, or *pareat*. The former is more definite, and, perhaps, preferable in this sentence. — 7. **Having retained,** *quum* with Subj. See 543, 3. — 9. **Caius Duillius,** a celebrated Roman commander, who gained a naval victory over the Carthaginians in the first Punic war. — 11. **To another,** *altèri*, a second one, in contrast with *himself*. This contrast gives *altèri* an emphatic position at the end of the sentence.

**607.** — 1. **Was expected to speak,** *dicturus esset*, was about 243 to speak. — **For the purpose of hearing him;** *causa* with the Gerund. See 380, IV. — 4. **To be better,** *quo meliòres essent*. See G. 497. In this sentence the Latin verb for *have taught* is treated as a Historical tense. Hence *essent*, not *sint*. See G. 482, 1. — **As Lysis taught Epaminondas of Thebes,** *ut Lysis Epaminondam Thebānum*, or, inverting the order, as is often done in illustrations, *ut Thebānum Epaminondam Lysis*. The verb *taught* should be omitted in rendering, because it can be readily supplied. — 5. **And not only** = nor only, *neque solum*. See 581. — **Literary works,** *monumenta litterarum*. See 440, 2. — 7. **To disguise the fact that those things,** Lat. idiom, *to disguise that those things*. — 8. **Solon.** The Athenians had made it a capital offence to propose the recovery of Salamis from the Megarians. Accordingly Solon pretended to be mad, that, in his supposed frenzy, he might with impunity urge the unpopular measure.

**614.** — 1. **It is related of . . . that . . . first who** 247 **reigned,** Lat. idiom, *Servius Tullius is related first to have reigned*. See 610, III.; also G. 542. — 2. **Having been unable,** *quum* with the Subj. — **To Tarquinii, a city of Etruria,** *Tarquinius, in urbem Etruriae*. *Urbem* is not treated simply as an Appositive to *Tarquinius*, but with the preposition *in* it becomes a modifier of the verb. See G. 379, 2; 423, 8, 3). — **Cypselus,** a celebrated tyrant of Corinth. — 5. **Lycurgus,** the celebrated Spartan law-giver. — **The authority of the Delphic Apollo,** i. e. of the Oracle at Delphi. — 6. **Milo,** a famous athlete. — **Bearing** = *supporting*, or *sustaining the weight of*. Use *sustineo* in the Imperf. Subj. with *quum*. — 8. **As is admitted,** *id quod constat*. See G.

## PAGE

- 445, 7. — **To bring it**; omit the pronoun *it* in rendering. See 457. — 9. **They say**, *ferunt*. Place this verb after the Subject Acc. See 601. — 10. **Having been banished**, *quum*, with Subj.
- 250 620. — 2. **Themselves**, *se*. Place this at the beginning of the sentence to show its common relation to the several clauses. — **And**; omit. — 3. **The blessings which are past** = *past blessings*. — 4. **It seemed to me that**. See 610, I.; also G. 549, 4, 1). — **One of**, *unus ex*, one from. See G. 398, 4. — 5. **After the overthrow of the republic**. Use the Abl. Abs. — 10. **If we promise** = *if we shall promise*. See 627, III.; also G. 470, 2. — 11. **If we show** = *if we shall show*. — **Are about to state** = *shall be* (at that future time) *about to state*.
- 254 626. — 1. **I shall willingly communicate**. See 621, III. 1. — 3. **Will offend**. Use Pres. Subj. See G. 479. — 4. **Myself**, referring especially to native talents, *ingenium*. See 621, I. **Aid**. Use Plur. in Latin, *helps*, *aids*. See 411, 2. — 5. **This event** = *this thing*. — 6. **Treasures, possessions**, *res*, things. — 8. **Could have happened**, Lat. idiom, *was able to happen*. See G. 541, 3. — 10. **For empire**, *de imperio*, lit. *concerning empire*. — 11. **Letters**, *litterae*, written communications without special reference to epistolary form. See Syn. 200.
- 257 632. — 2. **Could say**. Use Present Infin. See G. 541, 1. — 4. **Weighty**; for the position of the Adj. in Latin, see G. 597, I. — 5. **Philo**, a celebrated Grecian philosopher. The Academy at Athens was a famous school of philosophy. — 7. **Say — not** = *deny*. — 9. **A letter from me**. See 462. — **For the purpose of recovering my voice**. Use *causa* with the Gerundive.
- 260 638. — 1. **For him**, *in eum*, against him. — **Should kill**; Plup. Subjunctive, to denote a completed action with reference to the time of punishment. — **Would commit**, Fut. Infin. — 6. **That it may not**. Use the Relative. See G. 501, I. — 7. **If they were not**. Insert the condition after the proper names, and observe that the words *by them* in the condition must be rendered by the noun *litteris*, and the words *of letters* in the conclusion, by the pronoun *eorum*, referring back to that noun. — **In the knowledge and practice**, *ad* with Gerundive, lit. *to perceiving and practising virtue*.

# ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.

For Explanation of References and Abbreviations, see page xi.

## A.

- Abandon. *Relinquo, ěre, liqui, lictum.*  
 Able, be able. *Possum, posse, potui.* G. 289.  
 Abound in. *Abundo, ěre, ěvi, ětum.*  
 About. To be about to, rendered by the Act. Periphras. Conj. G. 228.  
 Above. *Supra, adv.*  
 Absurd. *Absurdus, a, um.*  
 Abundance. *Copia, ae, f.*  
 Academy. *Academia, ae, f.*  
 Acceptable. *Acceptus, a, um; gratus, a, um.* See 216. Make acceptable, *probo, ěre, ěvi, ětum.*  
 Accommodate one's self to. *Obsequor, i, secutus sum, dep.*  
 Accomplish. *Conficio, efficio, ěre, feci, factum; asssequor, i, secutus sum, dep.* Achievements are accomplished, *res geruntur.*  
 Accordance, in accordance with. *Ex, e, prep. with abl.* G. 434, 3.  
 According to one's desire. *Ex sententia.* See 339.  
 Account, on account of. *Propter, prep. with acc.*  
 Accumulate (trans.). *Augeo, ěre, auxi, auctum.*  
 Accusation. *Crimen, inis, n.*  
 Accuse. *Accuso, ěre, ěvi, ětum.*  
 Achieve. *Ago, ěre, egi, actum.*  
 Achievement. *Res gesta.* See 474.  
 Achievements are accomplished, *res geruntur.*  
 Achilles. *Achilles, is, m.*  
 Acquaintance, experience. *Usus, us, m.* A very intimate acquaintance, *summus usus.*  
 Acquainted, be, become, acquainted with. *Cognosco, ěre, novi, nitum.*  
 Acquire. *Paro, ěre, ěvi, ětum.*  
 Acquit. *Absolvo, ěre, solvi, solutum.*  
 Across. *Trans, prep. with acc.*  
 Act. *Ago, ěre, egi, actum; facio, ěre, feci, factum.*  
 Action, deed. *Factum, i, n.*  
 Adjacent, nearest. *Proximus, a, um.*  
 Administer. *Gero, ěre, gessi, gestum.*  
 Admiration, a feeling of admiration. *Admiratio, onis, f.*  
 Admire. *Miror, admiror, ěri, ětus sum, dep.*  
 Admit, confess. *Confiteor, ěri, fessus sum, dep.* Admit, concede, *concedo, ěre, cessi, cessum.*  
 Admitted, it is admitted. *Constat, constitit.*  
 Admonish. *Moneo, admoneo, ěre, ui, itum.*  
 Admonition. *Admonitio, onis, f.*

- Adorn.** *Exorno, ãre, ãvi, ãtum.*  
 Adorn, clothe, *vestio, ãre, ãvi* and *ii, ãtum.*
- Advantage.** *Emolumentum, i, n.; commodum, i, n.; utilitas, ãtis, f.*
- Adversary.** *Adversarius, ii, m.*  
 See 504.
- Adversity.** *Res adversae, f. pl. G. 441, 4.*
- Advice.** *Consilium, ii, n.* To give advice, *suadeo, ãre, suasi, suasum. G. 385.*
- Advise.** *Moneo, ãre, vi, ãtum; suadeo, ãre, suasi, suasum.*
- Adviser.** *Auctor, ãris, m.*
- Aeduans.** *Aedui, ãrum, m. pl.*
- Affair, thing.** *Res, rei, f.* Military affairs, *res militãris, sing.*
- Affect.** *Afficio, ãre, feci, sectum.*  
 Affect, prompt, *commoveo, ãre, mōvi, mōtum.*
- Affection.** *Amor, ãris, m.* Dutiful affection, *pittas, ãtis, f.*
- Affluent, rich, copious.** *Uber, ãris.*
- Africa.** *Africa, ae, f.*
- Africanus.** *Africãnus, i, m.*
- After.** *Post, prep. with acc.*
- Afterwards.** *Post, adv.*
- Again and again.** *Etiã etque etiã.*
- Against.** *Contra; in; prep. with acc.*
- Age, period of life.** *Aetas, ãtis, f.*  
 Old age, *senectus, ãtis, f.* At the age of, *natus, a, um, with acc. of time. See 400.*
- Aged, old.** *Senex, senis.*
- Agency — through one's agency.** *Per, prep. with acc. See 232, 5.*
- Agis.** *Agis, idis, m.*
- Ago.** *Abhinc, adv.*
- Agreeable.** *Jucundus, a, um. See 216.*
- Ahala.** *Ahãla, ae, m.*
- Aid.** *Auxilium, ii, n.; adjumentum, i, n.* Means, *opes, opum, f. pl. G. 183, 1.*
- Aid, to aid.** *Adjũvo, ãre, jãvi, jãtum.*
- Aim — propose to one's self no other aim.** *Sibi nihil aliud nisi proponere (propono, ãre, posui, positum). See 444.*
- Alba Longa.** *Alba Longa, Albæ Longae, f.*
- Alexander.** *Alexander, dri, m.*
- Alive.** *Vivus, a, um.*
- All.** *Omnis, e.* Each, every, *quisque, quaeque, quodque* and *quicque* or *quidque.* All together, *cunctus, a, um.* At all, *omnino, adv.* Not at all, *nihil. G. 380, 2.*
- Allobroges.** *Allobroges, um, m. pl.*
- Allow.** *Concedo, ãre, cessi, cessum.*  
 Allow to pass, *intermitto, ãre, misi, missum.*
- Ally.** *Socius, ii, m.*
- Alone.** *Solus, a, um. G. 149.*  
 Without exception, *unus, a, um. G. 149.*
- Already.** *Jam, adv.*
- Also.** *Etiã, adv.* I, you, he, &c., also, *idem, eadem, idem. See 350.*
- Although.** *Etsi; licet; etiamsi; quamquam; quamvis. G. 515, 516.*
- Always.** *Semper, adv.*
- Ambassador.** *Legãtus, i, m.*
- Among.** *Inter, prep. with acc.*  
 Among, with, near to, *apud, prep. with acc.*
- Amount, quantity.** *Vis, vis, f.*
- Ample.** *Amplus, a, um.*
- Ancient.** *Antiquus, a, um; pristinus, a, um. See 162.*
- Ancus.** *Ancus, i, m.*
- And.** *Et; que; atque* or *ac, conj. G. 587, I. 2, 3.* And yet = and, *et.* And not, *neque, conj.* And that too, *et is; et is quidem (is ea, id).*
- Anger.** *Iracundia, ae, f.*
- Annoyance.** *Molestia, ae, f.*
- Another.** *Alius, a, ud. G. 149; 149, 3.* Another (of two), a fellow-creature, *alter, ãra, ãrum. G. 149; 149, 2.* Another's, *alienus, a, um.*
- Antioch.** *Antiochia, ae, f.*
- Antiochus.** *Antiochus, i, m.*
- Antipater.** *Antipater, tri, m.*

**Antony.** *Antonius*, ii, m.  
**Any.** *Ullus*, a, um; G. 149; *aliqui, qua, quod*. Any one, *quis*. Any thing, *quid*. G. 189. If any, *si quis*. G. 190, 2.  
**Apollo.** *Apollo*, inis, m.  
**Apparel.** *Vestitus*, us, m.  
**Appear, seem.** *Videor, eri, visus sum*. See 577.  
**Appius.** *Appius*, ii, m.  
**Apply to.** *Conféro, ferre, tûli, collatum, in* with acc. Apply one's self to, *se conferre ad* with acc. (*conféro, ferre, tûli, collatum*); *se applicâre ad* with acc. (*applicô, âre, âvi, âtum*).  
**Appoint.** *Constituo, ère, ui, âtum*.  
**Approach.** *Appropinquo, âre, âvi, âtum*; *accédo, ère, cessi, cessum*.  
**Appropriate, take.** *Sumo, ère, sumpsi, sumptum*. Appropriate to, apply to, *conféro, ferre, tûli, collatum, in* with acc.  
**Approve.** *Probo, âre, âvi, âtum*.  
**Aquitanians.** *Aquitâni, òrum, m. pl.*  
**Arar.** *Arar, âris*, m.; acc. *Arârim*.  
**Archytas.** *Archytas, ae*, m.  
**Arganthonius.** *Arganthonius, ii, m.*  
**Ariovistus.** *Ariovistus, i*, m.  
**Arise, become.** *Exsisto, ère, stîti, stîtum*.  
**Aristotle.** *Aristotêles, is*, m.  
**Armenian.** *Armenius, iî*, m.  
**Arms.** *Arma, òrum*, n. pl. G. 131, 1, 4).  
**Army.** *Exercitus, us*, m.; *agmen, inis*, n.; *acies, ei*, f. See 178.  
**Army on the march, agmen, inis, n.  
**Around.** *Circum*, adv., and prep. with acc.  
**Arouse.** *Ertigo, ère, rexi, rectum*.  
**Arrange (a line of battle).** *Instruo, ère, struxi, structum*. Arrange with reference to, *reféro, ferre, tûli, lâtum, ad* with acc. See 534.  
**Arrive.** *Pervénio, ire, vèni, ventum*. Arrive, come, *venio, ire, veni, ventum*.**

**Arrogance.** *Arrogantia, ae*, f.  
**Art.** *Ars, artis*, f.  
**As.** *Ut*, adv. As = since, *quum*, conj. As, after *tam, quam*, adv. As = for, *pro*, prep. with abl. As to, after *ita, ut*, conj. with subjunct. As — as possible, *quam*, adv. with superlat. See 449. As much, *quantus, a, um*. As much — as, *tantus, a, um — quantus, a, um*. See 527. As soon as, *quum primum*. As, relative, especially after *idem*, etc., *qui, quae, quod*. As = that which, a thing which, *id quod*. See 267; also G. 445, 7.  
**Ascanius.** *Ascanius, ii*, m.  
**Ascertain.** *Cognosco, ère, nôri, nîtum*.  
**Ashamed, be ashamed.** *Pudet, puduit* and *pudîtum est*. See 228; also G. 299; 410, III.  
**Asia.** *Asia, ae*, f.  
**Ask.** *Rogo, âre, âvi, âtum*. Ask (a question), *interrogô, âre, âvi, âtum*. Ask, inquire, *quaero, ère, quaesivi* and *ii, quaesitum*. Ask for, *peto, ère, ivi* and *ii, itum*. It is asked, *quaeritur, quaesitum est*.  
**Assemble.** *Convénio, ire, vèni, ventum*. Multitudes assemble, *concursus fit*. See 606.  
**Assembly.** *Concio, ònis*, f.  
**Assiduously.** *Studiôse*, adv.  
**Assign.** *Tribuo, ère, ui, âtum*.  
**Associate.** *Socius, ii*, m.  
**Astyages.** *Astyâges, is*, m.  
**At.** *Apud, ad*, prep. with acc. At the age of, *natus, a, um*, with acc. of time. See 400. At the suggestion of, *auctor*, in abl. abs. At all, *omnino*, adv. Not at all, *nihil*. G. 380, 2. At length, *tandem*, adv. At once, *jam*, adv. At times, *interdum*, adv.  
**Athenian.** *Atheniensis, is*, m. and f.  
**Athens.** *Athênâe, ârum*, f. pl.  
**Attack.** *Adorior, iri, ortus sum, dep.*



Attain. *Consequor, asssequor, i, secutus sum, dep.; adipiscor, i, adeptus sum, dep.*

Attempt. *Conor, ari, atus sum, dep.; tento, are, avi, atum.*

Attend to, serve. *Servio, ire, vi, itum. G. 385.*

Attendance, with the attendance of. *Comes, itis, in abl. abs.*

Attendant. *Comes, itis, m. and f.*

Attention, study. *Studium, ii, n.*

Attention, exertion, work, *opera, ae, f.*

Attentive. *Attentus, a, um.*

Atticus. *Atticus, i, m.*

Attract. *Allicio, ere, lexi, lectum.*

Audacity. *Audacia, ae, f.*

Author. *Auctor, oris, m. and f.*

Authority. *Auctoritas, atis, f.*

Avail. *Valeo, ere, ui, itum.*

Avaricious. *Avarus, a, um.*

Avoid. *Vito, are, avi, atum.*

Await. *Exspecto, are, novi, ntum.*

Award. *Tribuo, ere, ui, itum.*

Aware—be aware. *Scio, scire, sci-vi, scitum.*

### B.

Banish, throw off. *Abjicio, ere, jeci, jectum.* Banish, expel, *expello, ere, puli, pulsum.*

Base. *Turpis, e.*

Battle. *Proelium, ii, n.* A battle is fought, *pugnatur, atum est, impers.*

Be. *Sum, esse, fui.* Be a characteristic of. See 426. Be a law-giver, *leges scribo, ere, scripsi, scriptum.* See 438. Be a statesman, *rei publicae praesum, esse, fui.* See 438. Be a warrior, *bellum gero, ere, gessi, gestum.* See 444. Be able, *possum, posse, potui.* Be about to, Act. Periphrast. Conj. Be acquainted with, *cognosco, ere, novi, ntum.* Be ashamed, *pudet, puduit and puditum est.* See 228; also G. 410, III. Be aware, *scio, scire, sci-vi, scitum.* Be born, *nascor,*

*i, natus sum.* Be busy, *occupatione distineri (distineo, ere, ui, tentum).* See 631. How very busy one is, *quanta occupatione,* etc. Be conducive to, *conduco, ere, duxi, ductum.* See 289. Be consistent with one's self, *sibi consentire,* with *ipse, a, um,* in agreement with subject (*consentio, ire, sensi, sensum*). Be delighted with, *gaudeo, ere, gavisus sum.* Be destitute of, need, *ego, indigeo, ere, ui.* See 239, I. Be elated, *effero, ferri, elatus sum.* See 295. Be eminent, *unus, a, um, emineo, ere, ui,* or *emineo* alone. Be engaged in, *sum, esse, fui, in* with abl. See 534. Be evident, *consto, are, stiti, statum.* Be expected to, Act. Periphrast. Conj. Be free from, be without, *vaco, are, avi, atum;* *careo, ere, ui, itum;* *ego, ere, ui.* See 239, I. Be grateful, *gratiam habeo, ere, ui, itum.* See 548. Be held = to be, *sum, esse, fui.* Be ignorant of, *ignoro, are, avi, atum.* Be in command of, *praesum, esse, fui.* G. 386. Be in force, *vigeo, ere, vigui.* Be intimate with, *familiariter utor, i, usus sum, dep.* G. 419, I. Be mad, *furo, ere, ui.* Be needful, there needs, is need of, *opus est, fuit.* G. 419, 3. Be on one's guard, *caveo, ere, cavi, cautum.* Be one's intention, *in animo sum, esse, fui.* See 206. Be subject to, obey, *pareo, ere, ui, itum.* G. 385. Be sufficient, be able, *possum, posse, potui.* Be the duty, mark, part, &c., of, often rendered by the Pred. Gen. See 426. Be the result, *evenio, ire, veni, ventum.* Be the slave of, *servio, ire, vi and ii, itum.* G. 385. Be unable, *non possum, posse, potui.* Be unwilling, *nolo, nolle, nolui.* Be useful, *utilis, e, sum, esse, fui; utilita-*

- tem affero, ferre, attuli, allatum.*  
 See 444. Be willing, *volo, velle, volui.* Be without. See *Be free from.* Be wont, *soleo, ere, solitus sum.*
- Bear. *Fero, ferre, tuli, latum.*  
 Bear, suffer, *patior, pati, passus sum, dep.* Bear, support, *sustineo, ere, ui, tentum.*
- Beautiful. *Pulcher, chra, chrum.*  
 Beauty. *Pulchritudo, inis, f.*
- Because. *Quod, quia, conj.* See Lesson LXXX. Because of, *propter, prep.* with acc.
- Become. *Fio, fieri, factus sum.*  
 Become acquainted with, *cognosco, ere, novi, nitum.*
- Befall. *Accido, ere, i.*
- Before. *Ante, adv.,* and prep. with acc.
- Begin. *Coepi, isse.* G. 297, I.
- Beginning. *Initium, ii, n.*
- Behalf, in behalf of. *Pro, prep.* with abl.
- Behooves — if behooves. *Oportet, uit.*
- Belgians. *Belgae, arum, m. pl.*
- Believe. *Credo, ere, didi, ditum.* G. 385.
- Beneficence. *Beneficentia, ae, f.*
- Best. *Optimus, a, um.* G. 165.  
 In the best manner, *optime, adv.*
- Bestow. *Impertio, ire, ivi and ii, itum.* Bestow upon, *confero, ferre, tuli, collatum.*
- Betake one's self. *Se conferre (confero, ferre, tuli, collatum); se recipere (recipio, ere, cepi, ceptum).*
- Better. *Melior, ius.* G. 165. Better, preferable, *satius.* See 527.
- Between. *Inter, prep.* with acc.
- Bird. *Avi, avis, f.*
- Bitterly. *Acerbe, adv.*
- Blame. *Vitupero, are, avi, atum.*
- Blessing, good. *Bonum, i, n.*
- Blind. *Caecus, a, um.*
- Boast. *Glorior, ari, atus sum, dep.*
- Book. *Liber, bri, m.*
- Booty. *Praeda, ae, f.*
- Borders, territory. *Fines, ium, m. pl.*
- Born for. *Natus, a, um,* with dat., or *ad* with acc.
- Both — and. *Et — et.*
- Boy. *Puer, pueri, m.*
- Boyhood. See 408. From boyhood, *a puero.*
- Branch of learning. *Doctrina, ae, f.*
- Brave. *Fortis, e.*
- Bravely. *Fortiter, adv.*
- Break, offend against. *Violo, are, avi, atum.*
- Bring. *Affero, ferre, attuli, allatum.* Bring, bear, *fero, ferre, tuli, latum.* Bring to, *adduco, ere, duxi, ductum.* Bring to a close, *finio, ire, ivi and ii, itum.*
- Britain — of or from Great Britain, British. *Britannicus, a, um.*
- Brother. *Frater, tris, m.*
- Brutus. *Brutus, i, m.*
- Build, make. *Facio, ere, feci, factum.*
- Burn, burn up. *Exuro, ere, ussi, ustum.* Burn, set fire to, *incendo, ere, cendi, censum.*
- Business. *Negotium, ii, n.* To have business, *negotium esse,* with dat. of possessor.
- Busy, be busy. *Occupatione distineri (distineo, ere, ui, tentum).* See 631. How very busy one is, *quanta occupatione, etc.*
- But. *Sed; autem; vero.* G. 587, III. 2. But not, and not, *neque.*
- By. *A, ab, prep.* with abl. By = from, in accordance with, *e, ex, prep.* with abl. By = through, *per, prep.* with acc. By letter, *per litteras.* By myself, yourself, &c., *necum, etc.* See 568. By no means, *minime, adv.* See 586.

## C.

- Caesar. *Caesar, aris, m.*
- Caius. *Caius, ii, m.*
- Calamity. *Calamitas, atis, f.*
- Call. *Nomino, voco, appello, are, avi, atum.* See 184. Call to mind, *commemoro, are, avi, atum.*
- Camillus. *Camillus, i, m.*

- Camp. *Castra, ōrum, n. pl.*  
 Can, could. *Possum, posse, potui.*  
 Cannae. *Cannae, ōrum, f. pl.*  
 Capable. *Capax, ācis.*  
 Capture. *Capio, ēre, cepi, captum.*  
 Capua. *Capua, ae, f.*  
 Care — take care. *Caveo, ēre, cavi, cautum.*  
 Care, care for. *Curo, āre, āvi, ātum.*  
 Carefully. *Diligenter, adv.*  
 Caria. *Caria, ae, f.*  
 Carry. *Porto, āre, āvi, ātum.*  
 Carthage. *Carthāgo, īnis, f.*  
 Carthaginian. *Poenus, i, m.; Carthaginiensis, is, m. and f.*  
 Cassius. *Cassius, ii, m.*  
 Catiline. *Catīlina, ae, m.*  
 Cato. *Cato, ōnis, m.*  
 Catulus. *Catūlus, i, m.*  
 Cause. *Causa, ae, f.*  
 Cavalry. *Equitātus, us, m.*  
 Celebrated. *Clarus, a, um; celebris, bris, bre.* See 233.  
 Celestial. *Celestis, e.* Celestial bodies, *coelestia, ium, n. pl.*  
 Celts. *Celtae, ōrum, m. pl.*  
 Censor. *Censor, ōris, m.*  
 Censorship. See 409.  
 Censure. *Reprehendo, ēre, di, sum.*  
 Census — take the census of, *censeo, ēre, ui, censum.* See 490.  
 Certain. *Certus, a, um.* A certain, *quidam, quaedam, quoddam* and *quiddam.*  
 Certainly. *Certe, adv.*  
 Ceus, of Ceus. *Ceus, a, um.*  
 Chaeronea. *Chaerōnea, ae, f.*  
 Change. *Muto, āre, āvi, ātum.*  
 Characteristic. See 426.  
 Chariot. *Currus, us, m.*  
 Cheerfulness. *Hilaritas, ātis, f.*  
 Chief. *Summus, a, um.* G. 163, 3.  
 Children. *Libēri, ōrum, m. pl.*  
 Choice. *Conquistus, a, um.*  
 Choose, select. *Eligo, ēre, legi, lectum.*  
 Cicero. *Cicēro, ōnis, m.*  
 Cimbrian. *Cimbricus, a, um.* A victory over the Cimbrians, *Cimbrica victoria.*  
 Citadel. *Arx, arcis, f.*  
 Citizen. *Civis, civis, m. and f.*  
 City. *Urbs, urbis, f.* City walls, walls of the city, *moenia, ium, n. pl.* Founding of the city, *urbs condita.* G. 580.  
 Civil. *Civilis, e.* Civil, domestic, *domesticus, a, um.* Civil, belonging to the city, *urbānus, a, um.*  
 Claudius. *Claudius, ii, m.*  
 Clear. *Clarus, a, um; perspicuus, a, um.*  
 Cleopatra. *Cleopātra, ae, f.*  
 Clodius. *Clodius, ii, m.*  
 Close — bring to a close. *Finio, ire, iui and ii, itum.*  
 Coat of mail. *Lorica, ae, f.*  
 Collatinus. *Collatinus, i, m.*  
 Colleague. *Collega, ae, m.*  
 Come. *Venio, ire, veni, ventum.*  
 Come to the relief of, *subvenio, ire, veni, ventum.* G. 386. To come, future, *futurus, a, um.*  
 Command. *Impero, āre, āvi, ātum.* G. 385. Be in command of, *praesum, esse, fui.* G. 386. At the command of, Pres. Part. of *impero* in abl. abs.  
 Commander. *Imperator, ōris, m.*  
 Commend, make acceptable. *Probo, āre, āvi, ātum.*  
 Commit, do. *Facio, ēre, feci, factum.* Commit one's self, *se tradere; trado, ēre, didi, ditum.*  
 Commit, commit to memory, *edisco, ēre, didici.* Commit to writing, *litteris mando, āre, āvi, ātum.*  
 Common. *Communis, e.*  
 Commonwealth. *Res publica, rei publicae, f.*  
 Communicate, relate. *Trado, ēre, didi, ditum.* Communicate, converse, *colloquor, i, locutus sum, dep.*  
 Companions — my, &c., companions. *Mei, etc.* G. 441, 1.  
 Compare. *Conféro, ferre, tūli, colatum.*  
 Compel. *Cogo, ēre, cōgi, coactum.*

Complain. *Queror, i, questus sum, dep.*

Completely conquer. *Devinco, ēre, vici, victum.*

Conceal. *Celo, āre, āvi, ātum; occulto, āre, āvi, ātum.*

Concede. *Concedo, ēre, cessi, cessum.*

Concerning. *De, prep. with abl.*

Concerns, it concerns. *Refert, tūlit. G. 408.*

Condemn. *Damno, condemno, āre, āvi, ātum.*

Condition, state. *Status, us, m.*

Conducive — be conducive to. *Conduco, ēre, duxi, ductum. See 289.*

Conduct. *Perduco, ēre, duxi, ductum.* Conduct one's self, *se gerere (gero, ēre, gessi, gestum).*

Confess. *Confiteor, ēri, fessus sum, dep.*

Confidence. *Fides, ēi, f.*

Confirm. *Confirmo, āre, āvi, ātum.*

Connected. *Continens, entis.*

Connection — no connection. *Nihil conjunctum. See 637.*

Conquer. *Vinco, ēre, vici, victum.*

Conquer completely, *devinco, ēre, vici, victum.*

Conscript Fathers. *Patres Conscripti, m. pl.*

Consider. *Cogito, āre, āvi, ātum.*

Consider as, *arbitror, āri, ātus sum, dep.* Consider, judge, *existimo, āre, āvi, ātum.*

Consistent — be consistent with one's self. *Sibi consentire, with ipse, a, um, in agreement with subject (consentio, ire, sensi, sensum).*

Consistently. *Convenienter, adv.*

Conspiracy. *Conjuratio, ōnis, f.*

Conspirators. *Conjurati, ōrum, m. pl.*

Conspire. *Conjuro, āre, āvi, ātum.*

Constantly. *Assiduus, a, um. G. 443.*

Consternation. *Formido, inis, f. See 305.*

Consul. *Consul, ūtis, m.*

Consulship. See 409.

Consult, consult for, consult for the interest of. *Consulo, ēre, ui, sultum. G. 385, 3.*

Contemplate. *Contemplor, āri, ātus sum, dep.*

Contend. *Decerto, āre, āvi, ātum; contendo, ēre, di, tum.*

Content. *Contentus, a, um. G. 419, IV.*

Contract. *Contraho, ēre, traxi, tractum.*

Contracted, small. *Angustus, a, um.*

Contrary to. *Contra, praeter, prep. with acc.*

Conversation. *Sermo, ōnis, m.*

Convict. *Convinco, ēre, vici, victum.*

Corinth. *Corinthus, i, f.*

Correctly. *Recte, adv.*

Costly. *Pretiosus, a, um.*

Could, can. *Possum, posse, potui.*

Counsel. *Consilium, ii, n.*

Country. *Patria, ae, f.; rus, ruris, n.; ager, agri, m. See 245.* From the country, in the country. *G. 424, 2.*

Courage. *Virtus, ūtis, f.; animus, i, m.*

Course — to follow this course. *Hoc sequor, i, secutus sum, dep.*

Cover, clothe. *Vestio, ire, iui and ii, itum.*

Crassus. *Crassus, i, m.*

Credit. *Fides, ēi, f.*

Crime. *Scelus, ēris, n.*

Cross. *Transeo, ire, ii, itum.*

Crotona. *Croto, ōnis, m. and f.*

Crown. *Corōna, ae, f.*

Cruelty. *Crudelitas, ātis, f.*

Cultivate. *Colo, ēre, colui, cultum.*

Culture. *Cultus, us, m.*

Curio. *Curio, ōnis, m.*

Curtius. *Curtius, ii, m.*

Custom, habit. *Consuetudo, inis, f.; mos, moris, m. See 167.*

Cypselus. *Cypselus, i, m.*

## D.

Daily. *In dies, in dies singulos; quotidie.* See 399.

Danger. *Pericŭlum, i, n.*

Dare. *Audeo, ēre, ausus sum.*

Dated. *Datus, a, um.* See 366.

Day. *Dies, ei, m. and f.* G. 120.

Day before, *pridie, adv.* First day of the month, *calendae, ārum, f. pl.* Fifth day of the month (generally), *nonae, ārum, f. pl.* G. 708, I. 2. Seventh day of the month in March, May, July, and October, *nonae, ārum, f. pl.* G. 708, I. 2. Three days, *triduum, ui, n.* From day to day, *in dies.*

Dear. *Carus, a, um.*

Death. *Mors, mortis, f.* Put to death, *occido, ēre, cidi, cisum; interficio, ēre, feci, fectum.*

Debt. *Aes alienum, n.* See 454.

Decree. *Consultum, i, n.*

Deed. *Factum, i, n.* Deed, thing, *res, rei, f.* Good deed, *recte factum.* See 366.

Defence. *Praesidium, ii, n.*

Defend. *Defendo, ēre, di, sum.*

Defend, guard, *tueor, eri, itus sum, dep.*

Defendant. *Reus, i, m.*

Define. *Definio, ire, iui, itum.*

Delight. *Delecto, oblecto, āre, āvi, ātum.*

Delightful. *Dulcis, e.*

Deliver, give over. *Trado, ēre, didi, ditum.* Deliver (an oration), *habeo, ēre, ui, itum.*

Delphic. *Delphicus, a, um.*

Demand. *Postŭlo, āre, āvi, ātum.*

Demaratus. *Demarātus, i, m.*

Demosthenes. *Demosthēnes, is, m.*

Deny. *Nego, āre, āvi, ātum.*

Depart, depart from. *Discedo, ēre, cessi, cessum.* Depart, go from, *exeo, ire, ii, itum.* Depart, set out, *proficiscor, i, profectus sum.* Depart, go, *eo, ire, iui, itum.*

Depend upon. *Positus, a, um, esse, in with abl.* See 560.

Desert. *Desero, ēre, serui, sertum.*

Deserve. *Mereo, ēre, ui, itum; mereor, eri, itus sum, dep.* Deserve is often rendered by the Pass. Per. Conj. See G. 231.

Design. *Consilium, ii, n.*

Desirable. *Optabilis, e.*

Desire. *Cupiditas, ātis, f.; libido, inis, f.* According to one's desire, *ex sententia.* See 339.

Desire, to desire. *Cupio, ēre, iui, itum; opto, āre, āvi, ātum; volo, velle, volui.* See 618.

Desirous of. *Cupidus, a, um; studiōsus, a, um.* Very desirous, greedy, *avidus, a, um.* See 222.

Despair of. *Despero, āre, āvi, ātum, with acc., or de with abl.*

Despise. *Contemno, ēre, tempsi, temptum.*

Destitute of. *Expers, tis.* To be destitute of, *eg eo, indigeo, ēre, ui.* See 239.

Destroy. *Deleo, ēre, evi, etum.*

Deter. *Deterreo, ēre, ui, itum.*

Detriment. *Detrimentum, i, n.*

Devise. *Invenio, ire, venni, ventum.*

Devote one's self to. *Studeo, ēre, ui; G. 385; incumbō, ēre, cubui, cubitum, in with acc.* Devote one's self to, apply one's self to, *se conferre in or ad with acc. (confēro, ferre, tŭli, collātum).*

Dictate. *Dicto, āre, āvi, ātum.*

Die. *Morior, i, mortuus sum, dep.*

Difference — there is a difference.

*Intērest, fuit.*

Differently. *Aliter, adv.*

Difficult. *Difficilis, e.*

Dignity. *Dignitas, ātis, f.*

Diligence. *Diligentia, ae, f.*

Diligent. *Diligens, entis.*

Diligently. *Diligenter, adv.*

Diminish. *Minuo, ēre, ui, ātum.*

Dine. *Coeno, āre, āvi, ātum.*

Dinner. *Coena, ae, f.*

Dion. *Dio or Dion, ōnis, m.*

Dionysius. *Dionysius, ii, m.*

Disagree. *Dissentio, ire, sensi, sensum.*

Discharge, fulfil. *Fungor, i, functus sum, dep.*  
 Discord. *Discordia, ae, f.*  
 Discourse. *Oratio, ōnis, f.*  
 Disgraceful. *Turpis, e.*  
 Disguise. *Dissimūlo, āre, āvi, ātum.*  
 Displease. *Displīceo, ēre, ui, itum.*  
 G. 385.  
 Dissension. *Dissidium, ii, n.*  
 Distinguished. *Clarus, a, um.* See 233.  
 Distrusting. *Diffisus, a, um.* See 625.  
 Divide. *Divido, ēre, visi, visum.*  
 Divine. *Divinus, a, um.*  
 Do. *Facio, ēre, feci, factum; ago, ēre, egi, actum.* Do, perform, *gero, ēre, gessi, gestum.* Is doing, is done, *agitur, geritur.*  
 Domestic. *Domesticus, a, um.*  
 Doubt — there is no doubt. *Non dubium est.* See 322.  
 Doubt, to doubt. *Dubito, āre, āvi, ātum.*  
 Doubtful. *Dubius, a, um.*  
 Dream. *Somnium, ii, n.*  
 Drive. *Pello, ēre, pepuli, pulsum.*  
 Drive, cast out, *ejicio, ēre, jeci, jectum.*  
 Due — one's due. *Suum, i, n.* G. 441.  
 Duillius. *Duilius, ii, m.*  
 Dumnorix. *Dumnōrix, igis, m.*  
 During, in. *In, prep.* with abl.  
 Dutiful affection. *Piētas, ātis, f.*  
 Duty. *Officium, ii, n.* To be the duty of, often rendered by the *Pred. Gen.* See 426; also G. 404, 1.

# **E.**

Each, every. *Quisque, quaeque, quodque and quicque or quidque.*  
 One each, *singuli, ae, a.* Each topic, *quidque.*  
 Eager. *Alācer, cris, cre; studiosus, a, um; avidus, a, um.*  
 See 222.  
 Eagerly. *Cupide; vehementer, adv.*  
 Eagle. *Aquila, ae, f.*

Ear. *Auris, auris, f.*  
 Early, ancient. *Antiquus, a, um.*  
 Early in the morning, *mane, adv.*  
 Easily. *Facile, adv.*  
 Easy. *Facilis, e.*  
 Eclipse. *Defectio, ōnis, f.*  
 Edifice. *Aedes, is, f.* G. 132.  
 Egypt. *Aegyptus, i, f.*  
 Eighth of November. *Ante diem sextum idus Novembres (a. d. VI. id. Nov.).* G. 708.  
 Eighty. *Octoginta, indecl.*  
 Either — or. *Aut — aut; vel — vel.*  
 G. 587, II. 2.  
 Elated — be elated. *Effero, ferri, elatus sum, pass. of effero.*  
 Elegance. *Elegantia, ae, f.*  
 Elegantly. *Polite, adv.*  
 Eloquence. *Eloquentia, ae, f.*  
 Eloquent. *Elōquens, entis.*  
 Eminent, excelling. *Excellens, entis.* To be eminent, *unus, a, um, emineo, ēre, ui; or emineo alone.*  
 Emolument. *Emolumentum, i, n.*  
 Empire. *Imperium, ii, n.*  
 Enact. *Sancio, ire, sanzi, sanctum.* Enact, write, *scribo, ēre, scripsi, scriptum.*  
 Encamp. *Castra pono, ēre, posui, positum.*  
 Encounter. *Subeo, oseo, ire, ii, itum; oppeto, ēre, petivi or ii, itum.*  
 Endeavor. *Conor, āri, ātus sum, dep.*  
 Endowed with. *Praeditus, a, um.*  
 G. 419, III.  
 Endure. *Fero, ferre, tuli, latum.*  
 Enemy. *Hostis, is, m. and f.; inimicus, i, m.* See 344.  
 Engaged — be engaged in. *Sum, esse, fui, in* with abl. See 534.  
 Engagement, fight. *Proelium, ii, n.; pugna, ae, f.* See 256. Naval engagement, *pugna navālis.*  
 Enjoy. *Fruor, i, fructus and frui-tus sum, dep.* G. 419, I.  
 Enjoyment. *Delectatio, ōnis, f.*  
 Enlarge. *Amplio, āre, āvi, ātum.*  
 Ennius. *Ennius, ii, m.*  
 Entertain, hold. *Teneo, ēre, ui,*

- tentum*. Entertain gratitude, *gratiam habeo, ēre, ui, itum*. See 548. Entertain the same sentiments, *eādem sentio, ēre, sensi, sensum*.
- Entertainment. *Convivium, ii, n*.
- Entirely. *Omnino, adv.; totus, a, um*. G. 149; 443.
- Entitle. *Inscribo, ēre, scripsi, scriptum*.
- Envy, to look upon with envy. *Invideo, ēre, vīdi, visum*.
- Epaminondas. *Epaminondas, ae, m*.
- Ephesus. *Ephēsus, i, f*.
- Epicurus. *Epicūrus, i, m*.
- Equal. *Par, paris*.
- Equity. *Aequitas, ātis, f*.
- Erudition. *Eruditio, ōnis, f*.
- Escape. *Effugio, ēre, fugi*.
- Especially. *Maxime, praesertim, adv*.
- Establish. *Firmo, confirmo, āre, āvi, ātum*.
- Established — firmly established. *Firmus, a, um*.
- Esteem. *Aestimo, āre, āvi, ātum; facio, ēre, feci, factum*. Esteem lightly, despise, *contemno, ēre, tempsi, temptum*.
- Eternal. *Sempiternus, a, um*.
- Etruria. *Etruria, ae, f*.
- Even. *Etiā, adv*. Even if, *etiamsi, conj*. G. 516, III.
- Evening. *Vesper, ēris, m*. In the evening, *vespēri*.
- Event, issue. *Eventus, us, m*.
- Event, thing, *res, rei, f*.
- Ever. *Unquam, adv*. Ever = always, *semper, adv*. For ever, *in perpetuum*.
- Every. *Quisque, quaeque, quodque and quicque or quidque; omnis, e*.
- Evident — be evident. *Consto, āre, stiti, stātum*.
- Evil. *Malum, i, n*.
- Exalted, most exalted. *Summus, a, um*. G. 163, 3.
- Example. *Exemplum, i, n*.
- Exceedingly. *Vehementer, valde, adv*.
- Excel. *Excello, ēre, cellui, celsum*.
- Excellence, goodness. *Bonitas, ātis, f*.
- Excellent. *Praeclārus, a, um*. Excellent, good, *bonus, a, um*.
- Excellently. *Excellentē, adv*.
- Excelling. *Excellens, entis*.
- Except. *Praeter, prep. with acc*.
- Exception — without exception. *Unus, a, um*. G. 176, 1.
- Excessive. *Nimius, a, um*.
- Excite. *Excito, āre, āvi, ātum*.
- Exercise. *Exerceo, ēre, ui, itum*.
- Exertion, zeal. *Studium, ii, n*.
- Exertion, attention, *opēra, ae, f*.
- Exhort. *Hortor, cohortor, āri, ātus sum, dep*.
- Exile. *Exsilium, ii, n*.
- Exist. *Sum, esse, fui*.
- Expect. *Exspecto, āre, āvi, ātum*. To be expected to; rendered by the Act. Periphrast. Conj. G. 228.
- Expectation, opinion. *Opinio, ōnis, f*.
- Expel. *Expello, ēre, pūli, pulsum*.
- Experience. *Usus, us, m*.
- Expose one's self. *Se opponere (oppōno, ēre, posui, positum)*.
- Express, utter. *Elōquor, i, locūtus sum, dep*. Express opinion, think, *censeo, ēre, ui, censum*. See 576.
- Express thanks, *gratias ago, ēre, egi, actum*. See 548.
- Extol. *Extollo, ēre, with laudibus or laudando*.
- Eye. *Oculus, i, m*.

## F.

- Fabius. *Fabius, ii, m*.
- Fable. *Fabula, ae, f*.
- Fabricius. *Fabricius, ii, m*.
- Faesulac. *Faesulae, ārum, f, pl*.
- Fail. *Deficio, ēre, feci, fectum*.
- Faith. *Fides, ēi, f*.
- False. *Falsus, a, um*.
- Familiarly. *Familiariter, adv*.
- Famous. *Clarus, a, um*. The

- famous, sometimes rendered by *ille, a, ud.* G. 450, 4.
- Far—so far. *Tantum*, adv. So far am I from, *tantum abest ut* with subj. See 498. Thus far, *adhuc*, adv.
- Father. *Pater, tris*, m. Conscript Fathers, *Patres Conscripti*, m. pl.
- Fault. *Culpa, ae, f.*
- Favor. *Beneficium, ii, n.* To requite a favor, *gratiam refēro, ferre, tūli, lātum.* See 548.
- Favor, to favor. *Faveo, ēre, favi, faultum.* G. 385.
- Fear. *Metus, us, m.; timor, ōris, m.* See 305.
- Fear, to fear. *Metuo, ēre, ui; timeo, ēre, ui; vereor, ēri, veritus sum*, dep. Fear greatly, *pertimesco, ēre, timui.*
- Feast. *Epūlae, ārum, f. pl.*
- Feel the need of. *Indigeo, ēre, ui.* See 239, I.; also G. 419, III.; 409, I.
- Feeling of admiration. *Admiratio, ōnis, f.*
- Few. *Pauci, ae, a, pl.*
- Fidelity. *Fidelitas, ātis, f.; fides, ei, f.*
- Field. *Ager, agri, m.*
- Fifth. *Quintus, a, um.* Fifth day of the month (generally), *Nonae, ārum, f. pl.* G. 708, I. 2.
- Fiftieth. *Quinquagesimus, a, um.*
- Fight, battle. *Pugna, ae, f.*
- Fight, to fight. *Pugno, āre, āvi, ātum.* Fight (a battle), lit. make, *facio, ēre, feci, factum.* See 257. A battle is fought, *pugnātur, ātum est.*
- Fill. *Compleo, ēre, ēvi, etum.*
- Find, by accident. *Invenio, ire, vēni, ventum.* Find, by search, *repērio, ire, pēri, pertum.*
- Finish, bring to a close. *Finio, ire, ōvi and ii, itum.*
- Fire. *Ignis, is, m.* Set fire to, *inflammo, āre, āvi, ātum; incendio, ēre, di, sum.* With fire and sword, *ferro ignēque.* See 117.
- Firmly established. *Firmus, a, um.*
- First. *Primus, a, um.* First, for the first time, *primum*, adv. First day of the month, *Calendae, ārum, f. pl.*
- Fitting—it is fitting. *Oportet, uit, impers.*
- Five. *Quinque*, indecl.
- Flaccus. *Flaccus, i, m.*
- Flee. *Fugio, ēre, fugi, fugitum; profugio, ēre, fugi.*
- Flight. *Fuga, ae, f.*
- Flourishing. *Florens, entis.*
- Flow into. *Influo, ēre, fluxi, fluxum.*
- Foe. *Inimicus, i, m.*
- Follow. *Sequor, consequor, i, secutus sum*, dep. Follow this course, *hoc sequor.*
- Folly. *Stultitia, ae, f.* Surpass the folly of, *esse dementior.* See 480.
- Fond of. *Amans, antis; cupidus, a, um; diligens, entis.*
- Foolish. *Demens, entis.*
- For, prep. *Pro*, prep. with abl. For = about, concerning, *de*, prep. with abl. For = against, *in*, prep. with acc. For—because of, *propter*, prep. with acc. For = during, *per*, prep. with acc. For = to secure, *ad*, prep. with acc. For after *idoneus, parātus*, etc., *ad*, prep. with acc. For ever, *in perpetuum.* For his, &c., own sake, *propter sese (se).* For my, &c., sake, *mea causa*, etc. G. 414, 2, 3). For the purpose of, for the sake of, *causa* or *gratia* with gen. G. 414, 2, 3). For a long time, *jamdūdum; jampridem.* G. 467, 2. For the first time, *primum*, adv. For the reason that, *propterea quod.*
- For, conj. *Enim, nam*, conj.
- Force. *Vis, vis, f.*; frequently used in pl. *vires, ūrum.* A force, forces, *copiae, ārum, f. pl.* To be in force, *vigeo, ēre, vigui.*
- Forced marches. *Magna itinēra, n. pl.* See 246.
- Ford. *Vadum, i, n.*



Forefathers. *Majōres*, *um*, pl.  
Forget. *Obliriscor*, *i*, *oblitus sum*,  
dep. G. 406, II.

Form, make. *Facio*, *ēre*, *feci*, *factum*.

Formerly. *Quondam*, *antea*, adv.  
Forth — set forth. *Exprōmo*, *ēre*,  
*prompsi*, *promptum*. Set forth  
views, state, *praedico*, *āre*, *āvi*,  
*ātum*.

Fortify. *Munio*, *ire*, *ivi* and *ii*,  
*itum*.

Fortitude. *Fortitudo*, *inis*, f.

Fortunate. *Fortunatus*, *a*, *um*.

Fortune. *Fortuna*, *ae*, f. To be  
one's good fortune, *contingo*, *ēre*,  
*tigi*, *tactum*.

Forty. *Quadraginta*, indecl.

Forum. *Forum*, *i*, n.

Forward — look forward to. *Ex-  
specto*, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātum*.

Found. *Condo*, *ēre*, *didi*, *dītum*.

Founding of the city. *Urbs con-  
dita*. G. 580.

Four. *Quattuor*, indecl.

Fourth. *Quartus*, *a*, *um*.

Free. *Liber*, *ēra*, *erum*. To be  
free from, *vaco*, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātum*;  
*careo*, *ēre*, *ui*, *itum*; *eggeo*, *ēre*,  
*ui*. See 239, I.

Free from. *Libero*, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātum*.  
G. 425, 3, 2).

Frequently. *Saepe*, *crebro*, adv.;  
*frequens*, *entis*. G. 443.

Friend. *Amicus*, *i*, m. My, &c.,  
friends, *mei*, *orum*, etc., m. pl.  
G. 441, 1. Friend of the people,  
*populāris*, *is*, m. and f.

Friendly. *Amicus*, *a*, *um*.

Friendship. *Amicitia*, *ae*, f.

From. *A*, *ab*; *e*, *ex*; prep. with  
abl. G. 434, 3. From, after  
verbs of hindering, *quominus*,  
conj. G. 499. From boyhood, *a  
puero*. From day to day, *in  
dies*. From that place, thence,  
*inde*, adv.

Fulfil. *Fungor*, *i*, *functus sum*,  
dep. G. 419, I.

Full, in full numbers. *Frequens*,  
*entis*.

Fully — more fully. *Pluribus ver-  
bis*. See 514.

Furnish. *Orno*, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātum*.

## G.

Gain. *Emolumentum*, *i*, n.

Game. *Ludus*, *i*, m.

Garden. *Hortus*, *i*, m.

Gate. *Porta*, *ae*, f.

Gaul. *Gallia*, *ae*, f.

Gaul, a Gaul. *Gallus*, *i*, m.

General. *Imperātor*, *oris*, m.

Geneva. *Genēva*, *ae*, f.

Genius. *Ingenium*, *iti*, n.

German. *Germānus*, *i*, m.

Gift. *Donum*, *i*, n.

Give. *Do*, *dare*, *dedi*, *datum*.

Give, deliver, *trado*, *ēre*, *didi*,  
*dītum*. Give, confer, *confēro*, *fer-*

*re*, *tūli*, *collātum*. Give advice,

*suadeo*, *ēre*, *suasi*, *suasum*. G.

385. Give heed, *opēram do*, *dare*,

*dedi*, *datum*. Give precepts,

*praecipio*, *ēre*, *cēpi*, *ceptum*.

Gladly. *Lacite*, adv.

Glorious. *Gloriosus*, *a*, *um*.

Glory. *Gloria*, *ae*, f.

Glory in. *Glorior*, *āri*, *ātus sum*,

dep.

Go. *Eo*, *ire*, *ivi* and *ii*, *itum*. Go

from, *exeo*, *ire*, *ii*, *itum*.

God. *Deus*, *i*, m. G. 45, 6.

Gold. *Aurum*, *i*, n.

Golden. *Aureus*, *a*, *um*.

Good. *Bonus*, *a*, *um*. Good deed,

*recte factum*, n. See 366. Good

will, *benevolentia*, *ae*, f. To be

one's good fortune, *contingo*, *ēre*,

*tigi*, *tactum*.

Good, a good. *Bonum*, *i*, n.

Goodness. *Bonitas*, *ātis*, f.

Gorgias. *Gorgias*, *ae*, f.

Govern. *Guberno*, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātum*;

*rego*, *ēre*, *rexi*, *rectum*.

Government. *Regnum*, *i*, n.

Gracchus. *Gracchus*, *i*, m.

Grain. *Frumentum*, *i*, n.

Grandson. *Nepos*, *ōtis*, m.

Grateful—be grateful. *Gratiam habeo, ere, ui, itum.* See 548.

Gratitude. *Gratia, ae, f.* To entertain gratitude, *gratiam habeo, ere, ui, itum.*

Gravity. *Gravitas, atis, f.*

Great. *Magnus, a, um.* Great, illustrious, *amplus, a, um.* Great, severe, *gravis, e.* How great, *quantus, a, um.* So great, *tantus, a, um.*

Great Britain—of or from Great Britain. *Britannicus, a, um.*

Greater. *Major, us.* G. 165. Of greater value, *pluris.* G. 402, III. 1. To render a greater service, *plus prosum, prodesse, profui.* G. 290.

Greatest. *Maximus, a, um.* G. 165. Greatest (in rank), highest, *summus, a, um.* G. 163, 3.

Greatly. *Valde, magnopere, adv.* Greatly, with interest and refert, *magni.* G. 408, 3.

Greece. *Graecia, ae, f.*

Greedy. *Avidus, a, um.*

Greek. *Graecus, a, um.*

Greek, a Greek. *Graecus, i, m.*

Greek, in Greek. *Graece, adv.*

Grieve. *Doleo, ere, ui, itum.*

Guard—be on one's guard. *Caveo, ere, cavi, cautum.*

Guard, to guard. *Custodio, ire, iui and ii, itum.* Guard, defend, *tueor, eri, itus sum, dep.*

Guidance—under the guidance of. *Dux, ducis, in abl. abs.*

Guide. *Dux, ducis, m. and f.*

## H.

Habit. *Consuetudo, inis, f.* See 167.

Hand. *Manus, us, f.*

Hannibal. *Hannibal, alis, m.*

Happen. *Fio, fieri, factus sum, dup.* Happen, of desirable occurrences, *contingo, ere, iigi, tactum.* Of undesirable, *accido, ere, cidi.* See 624.

Happily. *Beate, feliciter, adv.*

Happiness, success. *Felicitas, atis, f.*

Happy. *Beatus, a, um.*

Harm. *Injuria, ae, f.*

Harmony. *Concordia, ae, f.*

Hasten. *Contendo, ere, di, tum.*

Hate. *Odi, odisse.* G. 297, I.

Hatred. *Odium, ii, n.*

Have. *Habeo, ere, ui, itum; sum, esse, fui,* with dat. of possessor. To have business, *negotium esse,* with dat. of possessor. To have confidence in, *fidem habeo, ere, ui, itum* with dat. To have a prosperous voyage, *ex sententia navigo, are, avi, atum.* See 339. To have reference to, *referor, ferri, latus sum, ad* with acc. See 577.

He, she, &c. *Is, ea, id.* He himself, &c., *ipse, a, um.* He, &c., he also = the same, *idem, eadem, idem.* He, &c. = this one, *hic, haec, hoc.*

Health. *Valetudo, inis, f.*

Hear. *Audio, ire, iui, itum.*

Hearer. *Audiens, entis, m. and f.; auditor, oris, m.; is qui audit.* See 438.

Hearing, in the hearing of, pres. part. of *audio* in abl. absol. See 555.

Heaven, heavens. *Coelum, i, n.*

Heavy. *Gravis, e.*

Heed, give heed to. *Opëram do, dare, dedi, datum.*

Held, to be held = to be. *Sum, esse, fui.*

Helvetian. *Helvetius, a, um.*

Helvetians. *Helvetii, orum, m. pl.*

Herald. *Praeco, onis, m.*

Here. *Hic, adv.*

Hero. *Vir, viri, m.*

Herodotus. *Herodôtus, i, m.*

Hesitate. *Dubito, are, avi, atum.*

High. *Altus, a, um.* High, ample, *amplus, a, um.* High, great (price), *magnus, a, um.* At a high price, *magno.* G. 416.

Highest, of the highest degree. *Summus, a, um.* G. 163, 3.

Highest results, *summa, ōrum*, n. pl. G. 441, 1. Highest welfare of the state, highest public welfare, *summa res publica*.  
 Highly, with verbs of valuing. *Magni*. Very highly, *maximi*. More highly, *pluris*. How highly, *quanti*. G. 402, III. 1.  
 Himself. *Sui, sibi*. Himself, intensive, *ipse, a, um*. By himself, *secum*.  
 Hippias. *Hippias, ae, m*.  
 His. *Suus, a, um*; not reflexive, *ejus*. See 468, 2. His own things, productions, *sua, ōrum*, n. pl. G. 441, 1.  
 History. *Historia, ae, f*.  
 Hold. *Teneo, ēre, ui, tentum*.  
 Have, *habeo, ēre, ui, itum*.  
 Home. *Domus, i, f*. G. 117, 1.  
 Homer. *Homērus, i, m*.  
 Honestly. *Honeste, adv*.  
 Honor. *Honor, ōris, m*; *honestas, ātis, f*.  
 Honorable. *Honestus, a, um*.  
 Hope. *Spes, spei, f*.  
 Hope, to hope. *Spero, āre, āvi, ātum*.  
 Horse. *Equus, equi, m*.  
 Hortensius. *Hortensius, ii, m*.  
 Hostile. *Inimicus, a, um*.  
 Hostility, enmity. *Odium, ii, n*.  
 Hour. *Hora, ae, f*.  
 House, one's house. *Domus, us and i, f*. G. 117, 1. Walls of my, &c., house, *mei parietes*, etc. See 378.  
 How. *Quam, adv*. How great, how large, *quantus, a, um*. How highly, with verbs of valuing, *quanti*. G. 402, III. 1. How long, *quousque, adv*. How many, *quot*, indecl. How very busy one is, *quanta occupationē distinetur (distīneo, ēre, ui, tentum)*. See 631.  
 However. *Quamvis, adv*. However much, *quantumvis, adv*.  
 Hundred. *Centum*, indecl.

## I.

I. *Ego, mei*. I, emphatic, *egōmet*. G. 184, 3. I myself, *ipse, a, um*. I would that, *utinam, adv*. G. 488, 1.  
 Ides. *Idus, uum, f. pl.* G. 708, I. 3.  
 If. *Si, conj*. See Lesson LXXVII.  
 If only, *dummōdo, conj*. If any, *si quis*. G. 190, 2.  
 Ignorance — keep in ignorance. *Celo, āre, āvi, ātum*. G. 374, 2, 1); 3, 1).  
 Ignorant — be ignorant of. *Ignōro, āre, āvi, ātum*. To keep ignorant of, in regard to, *celo, āre, āvi, ātum, de* with abl. G. 374, 3, 1).  
 Illustrious. *Illustris, e*. Most illustrious, highest, *summus, a, um*. G. 163, 3.  
 Imitate. *Imitor, āri, ātus sum, dep*.  
 Immediately. *Jam, adv*.  
 Immense. *Ingens, entis*.  
 Immortal. *Immortālis, e*.  
 Impel. *Impello, ēre, pūli, pulsum*.  
 Impel, incite, *concito, āre, āvi, ātum*.  
 Impious. *Impius, a, um*.  
 Implore. *Oro, āre, āvi, ātum*.  
 Important, great. *Magnus, a, um*.  
 It is important, *intērest, fuit*. G. 408.  
 Impose upon. *Impōno, ēre, posui, positum*.  
 Impudence. *Impudentia, ae, f*.  
 In. *In, prep.* with abl. In accordance with, *e, ex, prep.* with abl. In behalf of, *pro, prep.* with abl. In regard to, *de, prep.* with abl.; sometimes rendered by the gen. In = situated in, *positus, a, um, in* with abl. In the censorship, consulship, life, reign, etc., of. See 409. In the presence of, *apud, prep.* with acc. In the vicinity of, *ad, prep.* with acc. In a spirited manner, *acriter, adv*. In full numbers, *frequens, entis*. In vain, *frustra; nequidquam, adv*. See 338.

Inaction, inactivity. *Inertia*, *ae*, *f*.  
Incite. *Incito*, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātum*.

Inclined. *Propensus*, *a*, *um*.

Increase, intrans. *Cresco*, *ēre*, *crevi*, *cretum*; trans., *augeo*, *ēre*, *auxi*, *auctum*.

Incursion. *Incursio*, *ōnis*, *f*.

Indeed. *Quidem*; *enim*; *tandem*; adv. See 606. Indeed I, &c. See 514.

Individual, onc. *Unus*, *a*, *um*. G. 176, 1.

Induce. *Indūco*, *ēre*, *duxi*, *ductum*.

Industry. *Industria*, *ae*, *f*.

Infer. *Colligo*, *ēre*, *lēgi*, *lectum*.

Influence. *Indūco*, *addūco*, *ēre*, *duxi*, *ductum*.

Inform. *Certidorem facio*, *ēre*, *fecī*, *factum*. See 527. Inform, teach, *doceo*, *ēre*, *ui*, *doctum*.

Inhabitant. *Incōla*, *ae*, *m*. and *f*.

Injure. *Noceo*, *ēre*, *ui*, *itum*. G. 385.

Injury. *Injuria*, *ae*, *f*.

Inner. *Interior*, *iūs*. G. 166.

Innocence. *Innocentia*, *ae*, *f*.

Innumerable. *Innumerabilis*, *e*.

Inquire. *Quaero*, *ēre*, *quaesivi*, *itum*.

Inscribe. *Inscribo*, *ēre*, *scripsi*, *scriptum*.

Insolence. *Insolentia*, *ae*, *f*.

Instance, thing. *Res*, *rei*, *f*.

Instruct. *Erūdio*, *ire*, *ivi* and *ii*, *itum*. Instruct, teach, *doceo*, *ēre*, *docui*, *doctum*.

Instructor. *Praceptor*, *ōris*, *m*.

Integrity. *Integritas*, *ātis*, *f*.

Intention — be one's intention. *In animo sum*, *esse*, *fui*, with dat. of possessor. See 206.

Interest — object of interest. *Quod visendum est*. See 527.

Interests, advantage. *Utilitas*, *ātis*, *f*.

Interests, it interests. *Intērest*, *fuit*. G. 408.

Interrupt. *Interpello*, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātum*.

Intimate—a very intimate acquaint-

ance. *Summus usus*. To be intimate with, *familiariter utor*, *i*, *usus sum*, dep. G. 419, 1.

Into. *In*, prep. with acc.

Introduce, bring in. *Indūco*, *ēre*, *duxi*, *ductum*.

Invent, devise. *Fingo*, *ēre*, *finxi*, *factum*. See 605.

Invention. *Inventum*, *i*, *n*.

Invite. *Voco*, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātum*; see 184, 2; *invito*, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātum*.

Is doing, is done. *Agitur*; *geritur*.

Island. *Insūla*, *ae*, *f*.

Isocrates. *Isocrātes*, *is*, *m*.

It. *Is*, *ea*, *id*; *ille*, *a*, *ud*. It itself, *ipse*, *a*, *um*. It, the same thing, *idem*, *eodem*, *idem*. Its, *suus*, *a*, *um*; *ejus*. See 468, 2.

Italy. *Italia*, *ae*, *f*.

Itself. *Sui*, *sibi*; intensive, *ipse*, *a*, *um*.

## J.

Journey. *Iter*, *itinēris*, *n*.

Joy. *Gaudium*, *ii*, *n*.; *laetitia*, *ae*, *f*. See 294.

Joyful. *Laetus*, *a*, *um*.

Judge. *Judex*, *icis*, *m*.

Judge, to judge. *Judico*, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātum*. Judge, consider, *existimo*, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātum*.

July — sixth of July. *Pridie Nonas Quintiles*. G. 708; 437, 1.

July — of July. *Quintilis*, *e*.

June — of June. *Junius*, *a*, *um*.

Junius. *Junius*, *ii*, *m*.

Jupiter. *Jupiter*, *Jovis*, *m*.

Just. *Justus*, *a*, *um*. Just, with numbers, *ipse*, *a*, *um*. G. 452, 3.

Justice. *Justitia*, *ae*, *f*.

Justly. *Juste*, adv.

## K.

Keep. *Servo*, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātum*.

Keep from, *prohibeo*, *ēre*, *ui*, *itum*. Keep from, keep off, *arceo*, *ēre*, *ui*, *arctum*. G. 425, 2, 2). Keep in ignorance, *celo*,

*āre, āvi, ātum.* G. 374, 2, 1); 3, 1). Keep ignorant of, in regard to, *celo, āre, āvi, ātum, de* with abl. G. 374, 3, 1).

Kill. *Enēco, āre, ui, nectum.*

Kind. *Benignus, a, um.*

Kind, class. *Genus, ēris, n.* Every kind, *omne genus, n.*

Kindness. *Benignitas, ātis, f.*

King. *Rex, regis, m.*

Know, know how. *Scio, scire, scivi, scitum.* Know, be acquainted with, *cognosco, ēre, nōvi, nītum.* Know, comprehend, *percipio, ēre, cēpi, ceptum.* Know, understand, *intelligo, ēre, lexi, lectum.* Not to know, *nescio, ire, iri* and *ii, itum.*

Knowledge. *Scientia, ae, f.* See also Note on 638, 7, page 276.

Practical knowledge, *usus, us, m.*

Known — well known, sometimes rendered by *ille, a, ud.* G. 450, 4.

## L.

Labienuus. *Labiēnus, i, m.*

Labor. *Labor, ōris, m.*

Lacedaemonian. *Lacedaemonius, ii, m.*

Laelius. *Laelius, ii, m.*

Lake. *Lacus, us, m.*

Land. *Terra, ae, f.* On sea and land, *terra marique.*

Language, tongue. *Lingua, ae, f.*

Large. *Magnus, a, um.* How large, *quantus, a, um.*

Lasting. *Sempiternus, a, um.*

Latin, in Latin. *Latine, adv.*

Law. *Lex, legis, f.; jus, juris, n.* See 405. Civil law, *jus civile.*

The law of nations, *jus gentium.*

Lawful — it is lawful. *Licet, licuit* and *licitum est, impers.*

Lawgiver. *Is qui leges scribit* (*scribo, ēre, scripsi, scriptum*).

See 438.

Lay waste. *Vasto, āre, āvi, ātum.*

Lead. *Duco, ēre, duxi, ductum.*

Lead across, *traduco, ēre, duxi,*

*ductum.* Lead on, *adduco, ēre, duxi, ductum.* Lead out, *educo, ēre, duxi, ductum.* Lead (a life), live, *vivo, ēre, vixi, victum.*

Leader. *Dux, ducis, m. and f.*

Learn. *Disco, ēre, didici.* Learn, receive, hear, *accipio, ēre, cēpi, ceptum.*

Learned. *Doctus, a, um.* Learned, of learning, *doctrinae.* See 440, 2.

Learning. *Doctrina, ae, f.; eruditio, ōnis, f.* Branch of learning, *doctrina, ae, f.*

Least. *Minimus, a, um; G. 165; minime, adv.*

Leisure. *Otium, ii, n.* At leisure, *otiosus, a, um.*

Leisure, unoccupied. *Vacuus, a, um.*

Lemannus. *Lemannus, i, m.*

Length — at length. *Tandem, adv.*

Leonidas. *Leonidas, ae, m.*

Leontini — of Leontini, Leontine.

*Leontinus, a, um.*

Less. *Minor, us; G. 165; minus, adv.*

Let = cause that. *Facio, ēre, feci, factum, ut* with subj.

Letter of the alphabet. *Littera, ae, f.* Letter, epistle, *epistola, ae, f.; litterae, arum, f. pl.* See 200. By letter, *per litteras.* Letter from me, &c., *mea epistola, or epistola a me, etc.* See 366. Letters, literature, *litterae, arum, f. pl.*

Leuctra. *Leuctra, ōrum, n. pl.*

Of Leuctra, Leuctrian, *Leuctricus, a, um.*

Liberal. *Liberālis, e.*

Liberality. *Liberālitās, ātis, f.*

Liberate. *Libero, āre, āvi, ātum.* G. 425, 3, 2).

Liberty. *Libertas, ātis, f.*

Life. *Vita, ae, f.* Period of life, *aetas, ātis, f.*

Light. *Lux, lucis, f.*

Lighten. *Levo, āre, āvi, ātum.*

Lightly. *Leviter, adv.* Esteem lightly, despise, *contemno, ēre, tempsi, temptum.*

Like. *Similis*, e.  
 Line of battle. *Acies*, ei, f.  
 Lines—these lines, these things.  
*Haec*, n. pl.  
 Literary = of letters. *Litterarum*.  
 See 440, 2.  
 Literature, letters. *Litterae*, arum, f. pl.  
 Little—think little of, despise. *Contemno*, ere, tempsi, temptum.  
 Live. *Vivo*, ere, vixi, victum. One lives, men live, *vivitur*, victum est, impers.  
 Live, living. *Vivus*, a, um.  
 Load, to pile up. *Exstruo*, ere, struxi, structum.  
 Long. *Longus*, a, um. Long continued, very long, *perdiuturnus*, a, um. For a long time, *jamdudum*, *jamprius*. G. 467, 2.  
 How long, *quousque*, adv.  
 Long for. *Expeto*, ere, petivi and ii, itum.  
 Look—look forward to. *Exspecto*, are, avi, atum. Look upon, *suspicio*, ere, spexi, spectrum.  
 Look upon with envy, *invideo*, ere, vidi, visum. G. 385.  
 Lose. *Amitto*, ere, misi, missum.  
 Loss. Rendered by the Perf. Pass. Part. of *amitto*, ere, misi, missum. G. 580.  
 Lost, engaged, busy. *Impeditus*, a, um.  
 Loud, great. *Magnus*, a, um. With a loud voice, *magna voce*.  
 Love. *Amor*, oris, m.  
 Love, to love. *Amo*, are, avi, atum.  
 Lucius. *Lucius*, ii, m.  
 Lucullus. *Lucullus*, i, m.  
 Lycurgus. *Lycurgus*, i, m.  
 Lysis. *Lysis*, idis, m.

**M.**

Macedon—of Macedon, a Macedonian. *Macedo*, oris, m.  
 Macedonia. *Macedonia*, ae, f.  
 Mad—be mad. *Furo*, ere, ui.

Madness. *Furor*, oris, m.  
 Maelius. *Maelius*, ii, m.  
 Magian, pl. the Magi. *Magus*, i, m.  
 Magistrate. *Magistratus*, us, m.  
 Magnificent. *Magnificus*, a, um.  
 Maiden. *Virgo*, inis, f.  
 Mail, coat of mail. *Loricæ*, ae, f.  
 Make. *Facio*, ere, feci, factum; *efficio*, ere, feci, factum. Make acceptable, *probo*, are, avi, atum.  
 Make a boast, *glorior*, ari, atus sum, dep. Make use of, *utor*, i, usus sum, dep. G. 419, 1.  
 Man. *Homo*, inis, m. and f.; *vir*, *vir*, m. See 239, II.  
 Manifest. *Apertus*, a, um.  
 Manilius. *Manilius*, ii, m.  
 Manius. *Manius*, ii, m.  
 Manner. *Modus*, i, m. In a spirited manner, *acriter*, adv. In the best manner, *optime*, adv.  
 Mantinea. *Mantineæ*, ae, f.  
 Many, many of the. *Multi*, ae, a, pl. How many, *quot*, indecl. So many, *tot*, indecl.  
 March. *Iter*, *itinêris*, n. Forced marches, *magna itinêra*. See 246. On the march, *in itinêre*.  
 March—of March. *Martius*, a, um.  
 Marcius. *Marcus*, ii, m.  
 Marcus. *Marcus*, i, m.  
 Marius. *Marius*, ii, m.  
 Mark. See 426.  
 Mars. *Mars*, *Martis*, m.  
 Master. *Magister*, tri, m.  
 Mausolus. *Mausolus*, i, m.  
 May, it may be that. *Fieri potest ut*, with subj.  
 May—of May. *Maius*, a, um.  
 Mean. *Volo*, *velle*, *volui*, with ethical dat. G. 389, 2.  
 Means, property. *Res*, rei, f. Means, resources, *opes*, *opum*, f. pl. By no means, *minime*, adv. See 586.  
 Measure. *Metior*, iri, *mensurus* sum, dep.  
 Memory. *Memoria*, ae, f.  
 Mention. *Commemoro*, are, avi, atum; *dico*, ere, dixi, dictum.  
 Mercury. *Mercurius*, ii, m.  
 Messenger. *Nuntius*, ii, m.

Miletus — of Miletus, Milesian.

*Milesius, a, um.*

Military. *Militāris, e.* Military, pertaining to war, *bellicus, a, um.*

Military affairs, military science, *res militāris.*

Milo. *Milo and Milon, ōnis, m.*

Mina. *Mina, ae, f.*

Mind. *Animus, i, m.; mens, mentis, f.* See 355. To occupy the mind, *in animo versor, āri, ātus sum, dep.* See 454. To call to mind, *commemōro, āre, āvi, ātum.* To recall to mind, *recordor, āri, ātus sum, dep.* G. 406, II.

Minister. *Minister, tri, m.; ministra, ae, f.*

Minister to. *Minister, tra, sum, esse, fui,* with gen. See 560.

Mithridates. *Mithridates, is, m.*

Modest. *Modestus, a, um.*

Modesty. *Verecundia, ae, f.*

Money, sum of money. *Pecunia, ae, f.* Money, copper, *aes, aeris, n.*

Month. *Mensis, is, m.*

Monument. *Monumentum, i, n.*

Moral worth. *Honestas, ātis, f.; virtus, ātis, f.*

More. *Plus, pluris;* G. 165, 1; *magis, adv.* More highly, with verbs of valuing, of more value, *pluris.* G. 402, III. 1. More fully, *pluribus verbis.* See 514.

Morning, early in the morning. *Mane, adv.*

Most exalted. *Summus, a, um.* G. 163, 3.

Mother. *Mater, tris, f.*

Mountain. *Mons, montis, m.*

Mourn over. *Maereo, ēre.*

Move. *Moveo, commōveo, ēre, mōvi, mōtum.* Move, affect, *afficio, ēre, feci, sectum.*

Much. *Multum, adv.* Much, exceedingly, *valde, adv.* Much, with comparatives, *multo, adv.* Very much, *plurimum, adv.* However much, *quantumvis, adv.*

Mucius. *Mucius, ii, m.*

Multitude. *Multitudo, īnis, f.* Mul-

titudes assemble, *concursum fit.* See 606.

Muse. *Musa, ae, f.*

Must. See 557.

My. *Meus, a, um.*

Myself, reflexive, not intensive. *Ego, mei;* intensive, *ipse, a, um.* By myself, *mecum.*

## N.

Name. *Nomen, īnis, n.*

Name, to name. *Nomino, appello, āre, āvi, ātum.* See 184.

Narrow. *Angustus, a, um.*

Nasica. *Nasica, ae, m.*

Nation. *Gens, gentis, f.; populus, i, m.* The law of nations, *jus gentium.*

Native talent. *Ingenium, ii, n.*

Nature. *Natura, ae, f.*

Naval. *Navālis, e.* A naval battle, naval engagement, *pugna navālis.*

Near. *Prope (propius, proxime), adv.* Near, near to, *ad, apud,* prep. with acc.

Nearest. *Proximus, a, um.* G. 166.

Nearly. *Paene, adv.*

Necessary. *Necessarius, a, um.* It is necessary, *necesse est, fuit.*

Necessity. *Necessitas, ātis, f.*

Need—there is need of, there needs. *Opus est, fuit.* G. 419, 3. To need, *ego, indigeo, ēre, ui.* See 239, I. To feel the need of, *indigeo, ēre, ui.*

Needful—to be needful (there needs, is need of). *Opus est, fuit.* G. 419, 3.

Neglect. *Negligo, ēre, lexi, lectum.*

Negligent. *Negligens, entis.*

Neither—nor. *Neque or nec—neque or nec.*

Never. *Nunquam, adv.*

New. *Novus, a, um.* New Carthage, *Carthāgo Nova, f.*

Night. *Nox, noctis, f.*

Nile. *Nīlus, i, m.*

Nineteen. *Undeviginti, indecl.*

Ninetieth. *Nonagesimus, a, um.*  
 No. *Nullus, a, um*; G. 149; *non*, adv. No one, *nemo, intis, m.* and f. G. 457, 2. That no one, in clauses denoting purpose, *ne quis*. G. 190, 2. By no means, *minime*, adv. See 586. To no purpose, *nequidquam*, adv.  
 Noble. *Nobilis, e*. Noble-minded, honorable, *honestus, a, um.*  
 Nomination—without a nomination from the people. *Injussu populi*. G. 414, 2, 3).  
 Nones. *Nonae, arum, f.* pl. G. 708, I. 2.  
 Nor. *Neque* or *nec*, conj.; with imperatives, *neve*, conj.  
 Not. *Non*, adv.; interrog., *nonne*; G. 346, II. 1; with imperatives, *ne*, adv. Not at all, not = not at all, *nihil*. G. 380, 2. Not, followed by either — or = neither — nor, *neque* or *nec* — *neque* or *nec*. Not even, *ne quidem*. See 577. Not only — but also, *non solum* or *non modo* — *sed etiam*. Not very, *non ita*, adv. Not yet, *nondum*, adv. And not, but not, *neque* or *nec*. Not to know, *nescio, ire, iri* and *ii, itum*. To say — not = to deny, *nego, are, avi, atum*.  
 Nothing. *Nihil, n.* indecl.  
 Nourish. *Alo, ere, ui, altum* and *altum*.  
 Novel. *Novus, a, um.*  
 Now. *Nunc*, adv. Now, already, *jam*, adv.  
 Numa. *Numa, ae, m.*  
 Numantia. *Numantia, ae, f.*  
 Number. *Numerus, i, m.* In full numbers, *frequens, entis*. G. 443.  
 Numitor. *Numitor, oris, m.*

O.

O, oh that. *Utinam*, adv. G. 488, 1.  
 Obedience. *Obtemperatio, onis, f.*

Obey. *Pareo, ere, ui, itum*. G. 385.  
 Object, thing. *Res, rei, f.* Object of interest, *quod visendum est*. See 527.  
 Observe, keep. *Servo, are, avi, atum*. Observe, retain, *teneo, ere, ui, tentum*.  
 Obstinacy. *Pertinacia, ae, f.*  
 Obtain. *Potior, iri, itus sum*, dep.; G. 419, I.; *nanciscor, i, nactus sum*, dep. Obtain, find, *invenio, ire, vni, ventum*.  
 Occasion—there is occasion. *Opus est, fuit*. G. 419, 3.  
 Occult. *Occultus, a, um.*  
 Occupy. *Occupo, are, avi, atum*. To occupy the mind, *in animo versor, ari, atus sum*, dep. See 454.  
 Of, concerning. *De*, prep. with abl. Of, from, *a, ab*, prep. with abl. Out of, *e, ex*, prep. with abl. Of, after superlatives=among, *inter*, prep. with acc. Of, before proper nouns. See 435, 436. Of greater value, *pluris*. G. 402, III. 1.  
 Offend. *Offendo, ere, di, sum*. G. 385, 1. Offend against, *violō, are, avi, atum*.  
 Offer. *Affero, ferre, attuli, allatum*.  
 Often. *Saepe*, adv.  
 Oh that. *Utinam*. G. 488, 1.  
 Old. *Senex, senis*; as substant., old man. Old age, *senectus, utis, f.*  
 Older. *Major, oris, or major natu*.  
 Olive tree. *Olea, ae, f.*  
 Olympia. *Olympia, ae, f.*  
 Olympus. *Olympus, i, m.*  
 On = concerning, on the subject of. *De*, prep. with abl. On account of, *propter*, prep. with acc. On the part of, often rendered by the gen. On sea and land, *terra marique*. On the march, *in itinere*.  
 Once. *Semel*, adv. Once, formerly, *quondam*, adv. At once, *jam*, adv.  
 One. *Unus, a, um*. G. 176, 1. One, any one, any thing, *quis*.



- See 500, III.; also G. 190. One's self, *sui, sibi*. One's, one's own, *suus, a, um*. No one, *nemo, inis, m. and f.* G. 457, 2. That no one, in clauses denoting purpose, *ne quis*. G. 190, 2. One each, *singuli, ae, a, pl.*
- Only. *Modo, adv.*
- Open, to open. *Apèrio, ire, ui, pertum.*
- Open. *Apertus, a, um*. Open adversary, *palam adversarius, ii, m.*
- Openly. *Palam, adv.*
- Opinion. *Sententia, ae, f.; opinio, ònis, f.* To express opinion, *censeo, ère, ui, censum.*
- Opponent. *Adversarius, ii, m.*
- Oppose. *Obsisto, ère, stiti, stitum; obsto, àre, stiti, stitum.* To oppose one's self, *se opponère (oppono, ère, posui, positum).*
- Opulent. *Opulentus, a, um.*
- Or. *Aut, conj.*; in questions, *an, conj.* Or not, usually *annon* in direct questions, *necne* in indirect.
- Oration. *Oratio, ònis, f.*
- Orator. *Oràtor, òris, m.*
- Oratory. *Dicendi, o, gerund of dico.*
- Order. *Jubeo, ère, jussi, jussum.*
- Orgetorix. *Orgetòrix, ìgis, m.*
- Other. *Alius, a, ud.* G. 149; 459. The other, the second of two, *alter, èra, èrum*. G. 149; 149, 2; 459. The others, the rest, *cetèri, ae, a, pl.* Of others, another's, *aliènus, a, um.*
- Ought. *Debeo, ère, ui, itum.* Also rendered by the Pass. Periphrast. *Conj.* G. 229.
- Our. *Noster, tra, trum.* Our own things, productions, *nostra, -rum, n. pl.* G. 441, 1.
- Out of. *E, ex, prep.* with abl. G. 434, 3. To set out, *proficiscor, i, profectus sum, dep.*
- Overcome. *Vinco, ère, vici, victum.*
- Overthrow of. Rendered by the perf. pass. part. of *evertò, ère, verti, versum.* See 439; also G. 580.
- Overthrow, to overthrow. *Evertò, ère, verti, versum.*
- Owe. *Debeo, ère, ui, itum.*
- Own, often expressed by the possessive, or when more emphatic by the gen. of *ipse, a, um*, with the possessive. G. 452, 4.
- Ox. *Bos, bovis, m.* G. 90, 2.

## P.

- Pain. *Dolor, òris, m.*
- Paint. *Pingo, ère, pinxi, pictum.*
- Painting. *Tabùla picta, f.* See 378.
- Panathenaicus. *Panathenàicus, i, m.*
- Parent. *Parèns, entis, m. and f.*
- Part. *Pars, partis, f.* On the part of, to be the part of, often rendered by the gen. See 426.
- Pass — allow to pass. *Intermitto, ère, misi, missum.*
- Past. *Praeteritus, a, um.*
- Path. *Semita, ae, f.*
- Pay one's respects to. *Saluto, àre, àvi, àtum.*
- Peace. *Pax, pacis, f.* To reduce to a state of peace, *paco, àre, àvi, àtum.*
- Peculiar to. *Proprius, a, um.*
- Penalty. *Pœna, ae, f.*
- People, a people. *Popùlus, i, m.* Friend of the people, *populàris, is, m. and f.* Without a nomination from the people, *injussu popùli.* G. 414, 2, 3).
- Perceive. *Percipio, ère, cepi, ceptum; perspicio, ère, spexi, spectum; sentio, ire, sensi, sensum.* Perceive, discern, *cerno, ère.*
- Perfect. *Perfectus, a, um.*
- Perform. *Ago, ère, egi, actum; gero, ère, gessi, gestum.*
- Perhaps. *Forsthan, fortasse, adv.*; sometimes rendered by *haud scio an* with subj. See 586.
- Pericles. *Pericles, is, m.*
- Peril. *Pericùlum, i, n.*

- Perishable. *Cadūcus, a, um.*  
 Permitted — it is permitted. *Licet, licuit* and *licitum est*, impers.  
 Perpetual. *Perpetuus, a, um.*  
 Perseus. *Perseus, ei, m.*  
 Personal, of one's self alone, gen. of *solus, a, um.* G. 149; 397, 3.  
 Persuade. *Persuādeo, ēre, si, sum.* G. 385.  
 Pertain to. *Pertīneo, ēre, ui, tentum.*  
 Pharsalian, of Pharsalus, or Pharsalia. *Pharsalius, a, um.*  
 Philip. *Philippus, i, m.*  
 Philo. *Philo* or *Philon, ōnis, m.*  
 Philosopher. *Philosōphus, i, m.*  
 Philosophy. *Philosophia, ae, f.*  
 Pity. *Misereor, ēri, itus sum*, dep.; G. 406, 1; *misēret, uit*, impers. G. 410, III. See 228.  
 Place. *Locus, i, m.* G. 141. From that place, *inde*, adv. To take place, *fio, fieri, factus sum.* G. 294.  
 Plan. *Consilium, ii, n.*  
 Plato. *Plato* and *Platon, ōnis, m.*  
 Plautus. *Plautus, i, m.*  
 Play. *Ludo, ēre, lusi, lusum.*  
 Please. *Placeo, ēre, ui, itum.* G. 385.  
 Pleased — be pleased, rejoice. *Lætor, āri, ātus sum*, dep.  
 Pleasure. *Voluptas, ātis, f.* Pleasure, enjoyment, *delectatio, ōnis, f.*  
 Plunder. *Diripio, ēre, ui, reptum.*  
 Poem. *Poēma, ātis, n.*  
 Poet. *Poēta, ae, m.*  
 Point, thing. *Res, rei, f.*  
 Pompey. *Pompēius, eīi, m.*  
 Poor. *Pauper, ēris.* Poor, with limited means, *inops, ōpis.*  
 Popilius. *Popilius, ii, m.*  
 Porsena. *Porsēna, ae, m.*  
 Possess. *Possideo, ēre, sēdi, sessum.* Possess, have, *habeo, ēre, ui, itum.*  
 Possessed of. *Præditus, a, um.* G. 419, III.  
 Possession. *Possessio, ōnis, f.* Possessions, things, *res, rerum*, f. pl.  
 Possible — as . . . as possible. *Quam*, adv. with superlat. See 449.  
 Power. *Potentia, ae, f.* Regal power, *regnum, i, n.*  
 Powerful. *Potens, entis.*  
 Practical knowledge. *Usus, us, m.*  
 Practice. See Note on 638, 7, page 276.  
 Practise. *Colo, ēre, colui, cultum.*  
 Praetor. *Praetor, ōris, m.*  
 Praetorship. See 409.  
 Praise. *Laus, laudis, f.*  
 Praise, to praise. *Laudo, āre, āvi, ātum.*  
 Praiseworthy. *Laudabilis, e.*  
 Pray, I pray, parenthetical. *Quaeso.*  
 Precept. *Praeceptum, i, n.* To give precepts, *praecipio, ēre, cēpi, ceptum.*  
 Preceptor. *Praeceptor, ōris, m.*  
 Preceptress. *Praeceptorix, icis, f.*  
 Predict. *Praedico, ēre, dixi, dictum.*  
 Prefer. *Praefero, ferre, tūli, lātum*; *antepōno, ēre, posui, positum.* Prefer, would rather, *malo, malle, malui.* G. 293.  
 Preferable. *Satius.* See 527.  
 Prepared. *Parātus, a, um.*  
 Presence — in the presence of. *Apud*, prep. with acc.  
 Present. *Donum, i, n.*  
 Present, to present. *Dono, āre, āvi, ātum.* To present one's self, *se praebere* (*praebeo, ēre, ui, itum*).  
 Present, at hand. *Praesens, entis.*  
 Preserve. *Servo, conseruo, āre, āvi, ātum.*  
 Preside over. *Praesum, esse, fui.* G. 386.  
 Presume. *Credo, ēre, didi, dictum.*  
 Pretend. *Simūlo, āre, āvi, ātum.*  
 Price. *Pretium, ii, n.*  
 Pride. *Superbia, ae, f.*  
 Prince. *Princeps, ipis, m.*  
 Princely. *Regālis, e.*  
 Principal. *Princeps, ipis, m.* and *f.*  
 Priscus. *Priscus, i, m.*  
 Prize. *Praemium, ii, n.*

Prize, to prize. *Aestimo, āre, āvi, ātum.*

Proceed. *Pergo, ěre, perrexi, perrectum.*

Proclaim. *Proclāmo, āre, āvi, ātum.*

Prodicus. *Prodicus, i, m.*

Produce, bear. *Fero, ferre, tuli, latum.*

Profess. *Profiteor, ěri, fessus sum, dep.*

Profit. *Utilitas, ātis, f.*

Profit, to profit. *Conducō, ěre, duxi, ductum.* See 289.

Profitable. *Fructuosus, a, um.*

Promise. *Promissum, i, n.*

Promise, to promise. *Polliceor, ěri, pollicitus sum, dep.*

Prompt, affect. *Commōveo, ěre, mōvi, mōtum.*

Pronounce, speak. *Dico, ěre, dixi, dictum.*

Proof. *Testimonium, ii, n.*

Properly, worthily enough. *Satis digne, adv.*

Property, means. *Res, rei, f.*

Propose to one's self no other aim. *Nihil sibi aliud nisi proponere (propōno, ěre, posui, postum).* See 444.

Prosperity. *Res secundae, f. pl. G. 441, 4.*

Prosperous. *Felix, icis; beātus, a, um.* See 393. 'To have a prosperous voyage, *ex sententia navigo, āre, āvi, ātum.* See 339.

Protection — to receive under protection. *In deditiōnem accipio, ěre, cēpi, ceptum.*

Proud. *Superbus, a, um.*

Prove. *Probo, āre, āvi, ātum.*

Provide for. *Provideo, ěre, vidi, visum.* G. 386.

Province. *Provincia, ae, f.*

Prudence. *Prudentia, ae, f.*

Ptolemy. *Ptolemaeus, i, m.*

Public. *Publicus, a, um.* Highest public welfare, *summa res publica, f.*

Publius. *Publius, ii, m.*

Punic. *Punicus, a, um.*

Punishment. *Supplicium, ii, n.*

Punishment, penalty, *poena, ae, f.*

Pupil. *Discipulus, i, m.*

Purchase. *Emo, ěre, emi, emptum.*

Purpose, wish. *Sententia, ae, f.* For the purpose of, *causa* with gen. G. 414, 2, 3). To no purpose, *nequidquam, adv.*

Pursue. *Sequor, i, secutus sum, dep.*

Pursuit, study, exertion. *Studium, ii, n.*

Put to death. *Occido, ěre, di, sum, interficio, ěre, feci, sectum.*

Pydna. *Pydna, ae, f.*

Pythagoras. *Pythagōras, ae, m.*

Pythagorean. *Pythagorēus, a, um.*

## Q.

Queen. *Regina, ae, f.*

Question. *Quaestio, ōnis, f.*

Quickly. *Celeriter, adv.*

Quiet. *Otium, ii, n.*

Quintus. *Quintus, i, m.*

## R.

Raise, conduct. *Perducō, ěre, duxi, ductum.*

Ranks in line of battle. *Acies, ei, f.*

Rare. *Rarus, a, um.*

Rather, more. *Magis, adv.* Would rather, *malo, malle, malui.* G. 293.

Read. *Lego, ěre, legi, lectum.*

Readily. *Facile, adv.*

Reason. *Ratio, ōnis, f.* For the reason that, *propterea quod, conj.*

Recall, mention. *Commemōro, āre, āvi, ātum.* Recall to mind, *recordor, āri, ātus sum, dep.* G. 406, II.

Receive. *Accipio, ěre, cēpi, ceptum.*

Recollection. *Memoria, ae, f.*

Record. *Perscribo, ěre, scripsi, scriptum.*

Recover. *Recupero, āre, āvi, ātum.*

Recover, restore, *recreo, āre, āvi, ātum.*

- Reduce to a state of peace. *Paco, are, avi, atum.*
- Reference — to arrange with reference to. *Refēro, ferre, tūli, lātum, ad* with acc. See 534. To have reference to, *refēror, ferri, lātus sum, ad* with acc. See 577.
- Refinement. *Humanitas, atis, f.*
- Refinements, culture, *cultus, us, m.*
- Refute. *Refuto, are, avi, atum; refello, ere, felli.*
- Regal power. *Regnum, i, n.*
- Regard — in regard to. *De*, prep. with abl.; sometimes rendered by gen. See 577.
- Regard, hold. *Habeo, ere, ui, itum.* Think, regard as, *puto, are, avi, atum; statuo, ere, ui, atum.*
- Reign — in the reign of. Pres. Part. of *regno, in* abl. abs. (*regno, are, avi, atum*).
- Reign, to reign. *Regno, are, avi, atum.*
- Rejoice, rejoice in. *Gaudeo, ere, gavisus sum; laetor, ari, atus sum, dep.*
- Rejoicing, joy. *Laetitia, ae, f.*
- Relate. *Narro, are, avi, atum; fero, ferre, tūli, lātum; trado, ere, didi, ditum.*
- Release. *Libēro, are, avi, atum.* G. 425, 3, 2).
- Relief — to come to the relief of. *Subvēnio, ire, vēni, ventum.* G. 386.
- Relying upon. *Fretus, a, um.* G. 419, IV.
- Remain. *Maneo, ere, mansi, mansum.* It remains, *reliquum est, fuit, ut* with subj.
- Remarkable. *Singularis, e.*
- Remember. *Memini, meminisse; G. 297, I.; 406, II.; reminiscor, i.* G. 406, II.
- Remissness. *Nequitia, ae, f.*
- Remove, take away. *Tollo, ere, sustūli, sublātum.*
- Render service. *Prosum, prodesse, profui.* See 606; also G. 290; 386.
- Renew. *Instauro, are, avi, atum.*
- Repeat. *Reddo, ere, didi, ditum.*
- Repent. *Poenitet, uit, impers.* G. 410, III. See 228.
- Reply. *Respondeo, ere, di, sum.*
- Report. *Rumor, oris, m.*
- Repose. *Tranquillitas, atis, f.*
- Republic. *Res publica, rei publicae, f.*
- Request. *Rogātus, us, m.*
- Require, compel. *Cogo, ere, coēgi, coactum.*
- Requite a favor. *Gratiam refēro, ferre, tūli, lātum.* See 548.
- Rescue. *Eripio, ere, ripui, reptum.*
- Reside. *Habito, are, avi, atum.*
- Resources, means. *Opes, opum, f. pl.*
- Respects — pay one's respects to. *Salūto, are, avi, atum.*
- Rest. *Quies, etis, f.; requies, etis, f.* See 283.
- Rest upon, be situated in. *Positus, a, um, sum, esse, fui, in* with abl.
- Rest, the rest. *Cēleri, ae, a, pl.*
- Restore. *Restoro, are, avi, atum.*
- Restrain. *Arceo, ere, ui, arctum.*
- Result. *Exitus, us, m.* Highest results, *summa, orum, n. pl.* See 415. To be the result, *evēnio, ire, vēni, ventum.*
- Retain. *Teneo, ere, ui, tentum.*
- Return. *Redeo, ire, ii, itum.* Return, turn back, *revertor, i, versus sum, dep.* G. 273, III., *verto.*
- Revolution. *Res novae, f. pl.* See 223.
- Reward. *Praemium, ii, n.* Reward, wages, *merces, edis, f.*
- Rhetorician. *Rhetor, oris, m.*
- Rhine. *Rhenus, i, m.*
- Rhone. *Rhodanus, i, m.*
- Rich. *Dives, itis.* G. 165, 2.
- Riches. *Divitiae, arum, f. pl.*
- Right. *Rectus, a, um.* Right, the right, *fas, n. indecl.* See 405, 1. The right, integrity, *honestas, atis, f.*

Rightly. *Recte*, adv.  
 River. *Flumen*, *inis*, n.  
 Road. *Via*, *viae*, f.  
 Robber. *Praedo*, *onis*, m.  
 Roman. *Romānus*, *a*, um.  
 Roman, a Roman. *Romānus*, *i*, m.  
 Rome. *Roma*, *ae*, f.  
 Romulus. *Romulus*, *i*, m.  
 Roscius. *Roscius*, *ii*, m.  
 Rout. *Pello*, *ere*, *pepuli*, *pulsum*.  
 Route. *Iter*, *itinēris*, n.  
 Ruin, demolish. *Diruo*, *ere*, *ui*,  
*utum*.  
 Rule. *Dominatio*, *onis*, f.  
 Rule, to rule. *Rego*, *ere*, *rexi*, *rec-*  
*tum*; *impēro*, *āre*, *avi*, *atum*.  
 G. 385.  
 Rumor. *Rumor*, *oris*, m.

## S.

Sabine. *Sabinus*, *a*, um.  
 Sacred. *Sanctus*, *a*, um; *sacer*,  
*cra*, *crum*.  
 Sacrifice, to spend. *Profundo*, *ere*,  
*fudi*, *fusum*.  
 Sad. *Tristis*, *e*.  
 Safe. *Salvus*, *a*, um. Safe, secure,  
*tutus*, *a*, um. See 321.  
 Safety. *Salus*, *utis*, f.  
 Saguntum. *Saguntum*, *i*, n.  
 Sail. *Navigo*, *āre*, *avi*, *atum*.  
 Sake — for the sake of. *Causa* or  
*gratia* with gen. G. 414, 2, 3).  
 For my, &c., sake, *mea causa*,  
 etc.  
 Salute. *Saluto*, *āre*, *avi*, *atum*.  
 Same. *Idem*, *eodem*, *idem*. To  
 entertain the same sentiments,  
*eodem sentio*, *ire*, *sensi*, *sensum*.  
 Satisfy. *Satisfacio*, *ere*, *feci*, *fac-*  
*tum*. G. 26, 2, 3), (b); 385.  
 Saturnia. *Saturnia*, *ae*, f.  
 Save. *Servo*, *conseruo*, *āre*, *avi*,  
*atum*.  
 Say. *Dico*, *ere*, *dizi*, *dictum*. Say,  
 relate, *fero*, *ferre*, *tuli*, *latum*.  
 They say, *ferunt*. Say — not,  
 deny, *nego*, *āre*, *avi*, *atum*.  
 Scaevola. *Scaevola*, *ae*, m.

Scarcely, scarcely yet. *Vixdum*,  
 adv.  
 School. *Ludus*, *i*, m.; *schola*, *ae*, f.  
 Science, learning. *Doctrina*, *ae*, f.  
 Military science, *res militāris*, f.  
 Scipio. *Scipio*, *onis*, m.  
 Sea. *Mare*, *maris*, n. On sea and  
 land, *terra marique*.  
 Second, another. *Alter*, *era*, *erum*.  
 G. 149; 149, 2. A second time,  
*it̄erum*, adv.  
 Secure, safe. *Tutus*, *a*, um. See  
 321.  
 Secure, to secure, conciliate. *Con-*  
*cilio*, *āre*, *avi*, *atum*.  
 Sedition. *Seditio*, *onis*, f.  
 See. *Video*, *ere*, *vidi*, *visum*. See  
 that, take care — that, *curo*, *āre*,  
*avi*, *atum*.  
 Seek. *Quaero*, *ere*, *quaestvi*, *quae-*  
*situm*; *peto*, *appeto*, *expeto*, *ere*,  
*petivi* and *ii*, *itum*. Seek, pur-  
 sue, *sequor*, *i*, *secutus sum*, dep.  
 Seem. *Videor*, *eri*, *visus sum*. See  
 577.  
 Seize. *Rapio*, *ere*, *ui*, *raptum*.  
 Select. *Eligo*, *ere*, *legi*, *lectum*.  
 Select, selected. *Exquiritus*, *a*, um.  
 Self, one's self, reflexive. *Sui*, *si-*  
*bi*; intensive, *ipse*, *a*, um.  
 Sell. *Vendo*, *ere*, *didi*, *ditum*.  
 Senate. *Senātus*, *us*, m.  
 Senator. *Senātor*, *oris*, m.  
 Send. *Mitto*, *ere*, *misi*, *missum*.  
 Sense. *Sensus*, *us*, m.  
 Sentiments — entertain the same  
 sentiments. *Eodem sentio*, *ire*,  
*sensi*, *sensum*.  
 Serve. *Servio*, *ire*, *ivi* and *ii*,  
*itum*. G. 385.  
 Service — render service. *Prosum*,  
*prodesse*, *profui*. See 606; also  
 G. 290; 386.  
 Servilius. *Servilius*, *ii*, m.  
 Servitude. *Servitus*, *utis*, f.  
 Servius. *Servius*, *ii*, m.  
 Set, set before. *Propōno*, *ere*, *po-*  
*sui*, *positum*. Set fire to, *in-*  
*flammo*, *āre*, *avi*, *atum*; *incendo*,  
*ere*, *cendi*, *censum*. Set forth,  
*exprobo*, *ere*, *prompsi*, *promp-*

- tum*. Set forth views, state, *prædico, ære, avi, atum*. Set out, *proficiscor, i, profectus sum*, dep.
- Seven. *Septem*, indecl.
- Seventh time. *Septimum*, adv.
- Seventh day of the month, — in March, May, July, and October. *Nonæ, arum*, f. pl. G. 708, I. 2.
- Several. *Complures, a* or *ia*, pl.
- Severe. *Severus, a, um*. Severe, grievous, *gravis, e*.
- Sextus. *Sextus, i, m*.
- Share. *Communico, ære, avi, atum*.
- Sharply. *Acriter*, adv.
- Short, brief. *Brevis, e*.
- Shoulder. *Humérus, i, m*.
- Show. *Ostendo, ère, di, sum* and *tum*; *monstro, demonstro, ære, avi, atum*.
- Sicily. *Sicilia, ae, f*.
- Silent. *Mutus, a, um*.
- Silver. *Argentum, i, n*.
- Since, as. *Quum, quoniam*, conj.
- Since, ago, *abhinc*, adv.
- Six. *Sex*, indecl.
- Six hundredth. *Sexcentestmus, a, um*.
- Sixth. *Sextus, a, um*. Sixth of July, *pridie Nonas Quintiles*. G. 708, III.; 437, 1.
- Sixtieth. *Sexagesimus, a, um*.
- Skilled in, skilful in. *Peritus, a, um*.
- Slave — be the slave of. *Servio, ire, ivi* and *ii, itum*. G. 385.
- Slay. *Interficio, ère, feci, factum*; *occido, ère, cidi, cisum*.
- Sleep. *Dormio, ire, ivi, itum*.
- Small. *Parvus, a, um*. Small, contracted, *angustus, a, um*.
- So. *Tam, ita*, adv.; sometimes rendered by *is, ea, id*. See 444. In such a manner, *sic*, adv. So greatly, to such an extent, *adeo*, adv. So — as, with adjectives, *tam* — *quam*, adv.; with verbs, *sic* — *ut*, adv. So far, *tantum*, adv. So far am I from, *tantum abest, ut* with subj. See 498. So great, *tantus, a, um*. So many, *tot*, indecl. So much, *tantus, a, um*; *tantopere*, adv. So that, *ut*, conj. Not so much, *non tam*, adv.
- Socrates. *Socrætes, is, m*.
- Soldier. *Miles, itis, m*. and f.
- Solon. *Solo* and *Solon, onis, m*.
- Some. *Nonnulli, ae, a, pl*. Some, any, *aliqui, qua, quod*. Some one, a certain one, *quidam, quædam, quoddam*. Somebody, something, *aliquis*. G. 191. At some time, *aliquando*, adv.; *aliquo tempore*. G. 426. Some — others, *alii* — *alii*. G. 459.
- Sometime. *Aliquando*, adv.
- Sometimes. *Interdum*, adv.
- Son. *Filius, ii, m*.
- Soul. *Anîmus, i, m*.
- Sovereignty. *Imperium, ii, n*.
- Spain. *Hispania, ae, f*.
- Sparta. *Sparta, ae, f*.
- Speak. *Dico, ère, dixi, dictum*; *loquor, i, locutus sum*, dep.
- Spend. *Consumo, ère, sumpsi, sumptum*. Of time, *ago, ère, egi, actum*.
- Spirit, courage. *Anîmus, i, m*.
- Spirited, in a spirited manner. *Acriter*, adv.
- Spurious. *Spurius, ii, m*.
- Squander. *Profundo, ère, fudi, fûsum*.
- Stadium. *Stadium, ii, n*.
- Start, set out. *Proficiscor, i, profectus sum*, dep.
- State, condition. *Status, us, m*. To reduce to a state of peace, *paco, ære, avi, atum*. The state, *civitas, atis, f*. State, commonwealth, *res publica, rei publicæ, f*. The highest welfare of the state, *summa res publica*.
- State, say. *Dico, ère, dixi, dictum*.
- Statesman. *Is qui rei publicæ præest (præsum, esse, fui)*. See 438.
- Station, to place. *Collôco, ære, avi, atum*.
- Stator. *Stator, oris, m*.
- Statue. *Signum, i, n*.
- Stoic. *Stoicus, i, m*.
- Strengthen. *Alo, ère, alui, altum* and *altum*.

Strife. *Pugna, ae, f.*

Strive. *Nitor, niti, nisus* and *nixus sum, dep.*

Strong, ample. *Amplus, a, um.* In the strongest terms, *amplissimis verbis.*

Strongly. *Valde, adv.*

Student of. *Studiōsus, a, um.*

Studiously. *Studiōse, adv.*

Study. *Studium, ii, n.*

Subject, thing. *Res, rei, f.* On the subject of, concerning, *de, prep.* with abl.

Subject—to be subject to. *Pareo, ēre, ui, itum.* G. 385.

Succeed. *Succedo, ēre, cessi, cessum.* G. 386.

Success. *Felicitas, atis, f.*

Successful. *Secundus, a, um.*

Such. *Talis, e*; sometimes rendered by *qui, quae, quod.* Such, so great, *tantus, a, um.* Such—as, *talis, e—qualis, e*; *is, ea, id—qui, quae, quod*; *tantus, a, um—quantus, a, um.* See 534.

Sudden. *Subitus, a, um.*

Suffer. *Patior, i, passus sum, dep.*

Suffering, pain. *Dolor, oris, m.*

Sufficient—to be sufficient, be able.

*Possū, posse, potui.*

Sufficiently. *Satis, adv.*

Suggestion—at the suggestion of. *Auctor, in abl. absol.* See 504.

Suitable. *Idoneus, a, um.*

Suitably=worthily enough. *Satis digne, adv.*

Sulla. *Sulla, ae, m.*

Sum of money. *Pecunia, ae, f.*

Sumptuous. *Sumptuosus, a, um.*

Sun. *Sol, solis, m.*

Sunset. *Solis occāsus, us, m.*

Superbus. *Superbus, i, m.*

Supplicate. *Supplicō, āre, āvi, ātum.*

Suppose, think. *Arbitror, āri, ātus sum, dep.*; *puto, āre, āvi, ātum.*

Suppress. *Comprimo, ēre, pressi, pressum.*

Supreme. *Summus, a, um.* G. 168, 8

Sure. *Certus, a, um.*

Surely. *Certe, adv.*

Surpass. *Supero, āre, āvi, ātum.* To surpass the folly of = to be more foolish than, *sum, esse, fui, demētiōr, ius.*

Surround. *Circūdo, āre, dēdi, datum*; *cingo, ēre, cinxi, cinctum.*

Sword. *Ferrum, i, n.* See 117. With fire and sword, *ferro ignēque.*

Syllable. *Syllaba, ae, f.*

Syracuse. *Syracusae, arum, f. pl.* Of Syracuse, Syracusan, *Syracusus, a, um.*

## T.

Table. *Mensa, ae, f.*

Tablet. *Tabula, ae, f.*

Take, take up. *Capio, ēre, cepi, captum.* Take, appropriate, *sumo, ēre, sumpsi, sumptum.* Take, carry, *porto, āre, āvi, ātum.* Take away, *tollo, ēre, sustūli, sublātum.* Take care, *caveo, ēre, cavi, cautum.* Take place, *fio, fieri, factus sum.* Take the census of, *censeo, ēre, ui, censum.* See 490.

Talent, native talent. *Ingenium, ii, n.* Talent, mental ability, *mens, mentis, f.* Talent, a sum of money, *talentum, i, n.*

Tarentum. *Tarentum, i, n.*

Tarquin, Tarquinius. *Tarquinius, ii, m.*

Tarquinius. *Tarquinius, orum, m. pl.*

Tarry. *Commōror, āri, ātus sum, dep.*

Teach. *Docco, ēre, ui, doctum.*

Teach, instruct, *erūdio, ire, ixi and ii, itum.* Teach, train up, *instītuō, ēre, ui, itum.* See 585.

Teacher. *Doctor, oris, m.*; *magister, tri, m.* See 423.

Tear. *Lacrīma, ae, f.*

Tedious, long. *Longus, a, um.*

Tell. *Dico, ēre, dixi, dictum.*

Temperate. *Temperans, antis.*

Temple. *Templum*, i, n.; *aedes*, is, f.; *fanum*, i, n. See 371.

Ten. *Decem*, indecl.

Terms—in the strongest terms. *Amplissimis verbis*.

Terrify. *Terreo*, ēre, ui, itum.

Territory. *Fines*, ium, m. pl.

Thales. *Thales*, is, m.

Than. *Quam*, conj.

Thank. *Gratias ago*, ēre, egi, actum. See 548.

Thanks. *Gratiae*, ārum, f. pl. G. 132. To express thanks, *gratias ago*, ēre, egi, actum.

That. *Ille*, a, ud; is, ea, id, less strongly demonstrative than *ille*. And that too, *et is*; *et is quidem*. G. 451, 2.

That, in that. *Quod*, conj. That, expressing purpose or result, *ut*, conj. with subj. That, expressing purpose, when the dependent clause contains a comparative, *quo*, conj. with subj. That = but that, *quin*, conj. with subj. G. 498.

The = that, emphatic. *Ille*, a, ud; not emphatic, *is*, ea, id. The—the, with comparatives, *quo*—eo. See 454.

Theban, of Thebes. *Thebānus*, a, um.

Theft. *Furtum*, i, n.

Their, theirs. *Suus*, a, um; not reflexive, *eōrum*, *eārum*. See 468, 2. Their own things, productions, *sua*, ōrum, n. pl. G. 441, 1.

Themistocles. *Themistōcles*, is, m.

Then. *Tum*, adv.

There. *Illic*, adv.

Thermopylae. *Thermopylae*, ārum, f. pl.

Thing. *Res*, rei, f.

Think. *Sentio*, ire, sensi, sensum; *puto*, āre, āvi, ātum; *arbitror*, āri, ātus sum, dep. Think, be of opinion, *censeo*, ēre, ui, censum. See 576. Think, ponder, *cogito*, āre, āvi, ātum. Think out, *commentor*, āri, ātus sum, dep.

Think little of, despise, *contemno*, ēre, tempsi, temptum.

Third. *Tertius*, a, um.

Thirty. *Triginta*, indecl.

Thirty-eight. *Duodequadraginta*, indecl.

This. *Hic*, *haec*, *hoc*. This = that, not strongly demonstrative, *is*, ea, id.

Thou, you. *Tu*, *tui*. Thou thyself, you yourself, intensive, *ipse*, a, um.

Though. See Lesson LXXVIII.

Thought, opinion. *Sententia*, ae, f. Thought, reflection, *cogitatio*, ōnis, f.

Thousand. *Mille*. G. 178.

Three. *Tres*, *tria*. Three days, *triduum*, ui, n.

Three hundred. *Trecenti*, ae, a, pl.

Through. *Per*, prep. with acc.

Thus. *Sic*, adv. Thus far, *adhuc*, adv.

Thy, your. *Tuus*, a, um.

Thyself, yourself, emphatic or reflexive, not intensive. *Tu*, *tui*.

By thyself, by yourself, *tecum*.

Tiberius. *Tiberius*, ii, m.

Tigranes. *Tigrānes*, is, m.

Till. *Colo*, ēre, colui, cultum.

Time. *Tempus*, ōris, n. At some time, *aliquando*, adv.; *aliquo tempore*. G. 426. At times, *interdum*, adv. For the first time, *primum*, adv. The second time, *iterum*, adv. The seventh time, *septimum*, adv. For a long time, *jamdudum*; *jampridem*, adv. G. 467, 2. In the time of. See 255, 2.

Timid. *Timidus*, a, um.

To. *Ad*, prep. with acc. To, towards, of friendly feelings and conduct towards a person, *erga*, prep. with acc. To no purpose, *nequidquam*, adv.

Toil, labor. *Labor*, ōris, m.

To-morrow. *Cras*, adv.

Tongue. *Lingua*, ae, f.

Too. *Nimis*, adv.; often expressed by the comparative. See 448.



- And that too, *et is; et is quidem (is, ea, id)*. G. 451, 2.  
 Topic — each topic, each thing. *Quidque*.  
 Torture. *Crucio, āre, āvi, ātum*.  
 Touch. *Tango, ěre, tetigi, tactum*.  
 Towards. *Adversus, versus*, prep. with acc.; *versus*, adv. G. 433, 2. Towards, of friendly feelings and conduct towards a person, *erga*, prep. with acc.  
 Town. *Oppidum, i, n*.  
 Treachery, treason. *Proditio, ōnis, f*.  
 Treasures, things. *Res, rerum, f. pl*.  
 Tried. *Spectatus, a, um*.  
 Troublesome. *Molestus, a, um*.  
 True. *Verus, a, um*.  
 Trumpeter. *Tubicen, inis, m*.  
 Trust, to hope. *Spero, āre, āvi, ātum*. Trust in, *confido, ěre, fisisum*. G. 419, II.; 4, 2).  
 Truth. *Veritas, ātis, f; verum, i, n*. G. 441, 2.  
 Try. *Tento, āre, āvi, ātum*.  
 Tullius. *Tullius, ii, m*.  
 Twenty. *Viginti*, indecl.  
 Twice. *Bis*, adv.  
 Two. *Duo, duae, duo*. G. 176, 2.  
 Tyranny. *Tyrannis, idis, f*.  
 Tyrant. *Tyrannus, i, m*.

## U.

- Unable, be unable. *Non possum, posse, potui*.  
 Unbridled. *Effrenatus, a, um*.  
 Uncertain. *Incertus, a, um*.  
 Under. *Sub*, prep. with acc. and abl. G. 435. Under the guidance of, *dux, ducis*, in abl. abs.  
 Understand. *Cognosco, ěre, nōvi, nītum*.  
 Understanding. *Mens, mentis, f*.  
 Undertake. *Suscipio, ěre, cēpi, ceptum*.  
 Unfriendly. *Inimicus, a, um*.  
 Unhappy. *Infelix, icis*.  
 Unharmful. *Incolūmis, e; sine injuria*. See 504.  
 Unimpaired. *Intēger, gra, grum*. Unless. *Nisi*, conj. G. 507.  
 Unmindful. *Immēmor, ōris*.  
 Unnecessary. *Non necessarius, a, um*.  
 Unpopularity. *Invidia, ae, f*.  
 Until. *Dum, donec*, conj. G. 522.  
 Unusual. *Inusitatus, a, um*.  
 Unwilling — to be unwilling. *Nolo, nolle, nolui*. G. 293.  
 Unwillingly. *Invitus, a, um*. G. 443.  
 Upon. *In*, prep. with acc. and abl. G. 435. Upon, concerning, *de*, prep. with abl.  
 Upright. *Probus, a, um*.  
 Urge. *Impello, ěre, pūli, pulsum*.  
 Use, make use of. *Utor, i, usus sum, dep*. G. 419, I.  
 Useful. *Utilis, e*. To be useful, *utilis, e, sum, esse, fui; utilitatem affēro, ferre, attūli, allātum*. See 444.  
 Usefulness. *Utilitas, ātis, f*.  
 Useless. *Inutilis, e*.  
 Utter. *Elōquor, i, locūtus sum, dep*.  
 Utterly. *Funditus*, adv.

## V.

- Vain — in vain. *Frustra, nequidquam*, adv. See 338.  
 Valor. *Virtus, ātis, f*.  
 Value, price. *Pretium, ii, n*. Of greater value, of more value, *pluris*. G. 402, III. 1.  
 Vender. *Venditor, ōris, m*.  
 Verres. *Verres, is, m*.  
 Verse. *Versus, us, m*.  
 Very. *Valde*; often rendered by the superlative. See 448. Very, with nouns, *ipse, a, um*. G. 452, 2. Very much, *plurimum*, adv. Very highly, with verbs of valuing, *maximi*. G. 402, III. 1). Not very, *non ita*, adv. How very busy one is, *quanta occupationē distinetur*. See 631.  
 Viands. *Epulae, ārum, f. pl*.

Vice. *Vitium*, *ii*, n.  
 Vicinity — in the vicinity of, near.  
*Ad*, prep. with acc.  
 Victor. *Victor*, *oris*, m.  
 Victory. *Victoria*, *ae*, f. Victory over the Cimbrians, *Cimbrica victoria*.  
 Views — set forth views, state.  
*Praedico*, *äre*, *ävi*, *ätum*.  
 Vigilant. *Vigilans*, *antis*.  
 Vigilantly, sharply. *Acrius*, adv.  
 Village. *Vicus*, *i*, m.  
 Violate. *Violo*, *äre*, *ävi*, *ätum*.  
 Virtue. *Virtus*, *ütis*, f.  
 Visit. *Viso*, *äre*, *visi*, *visum*.  
 Voice. *Vox*, *vocis*, f. A feeble voice, *vocula*, *ae*, f.  
 Voyage — have a prosperous voyage. *Ex sententia navigo*, *äre*, *ävi*, *ätum*. See 339.

W.

Wage. *Gero*, *äre*, *gessi*, *gestum*.  
 Wage against, *infero*, *ferre*, *tüli*, *illätum*. G. 386.  
 Wait. *Exspecto*, *äre*, *ävi*, *ätum*.  
 Walk. *Ambulo*, *äre*, *ävi*, *ätum*.  
 Walk, go along, *ingredior*, *i*, *ingressus sum*, dep.  
 Wall. *Murus*, *i*, m.; *moenia*, *ium*, n. pl.; *paries*, *ëtis*, m. See 377.  
 Walls of the city, city walls, *moenia*, *ium*, n. pl. Walls of my, &c., own house, *mei*, etc., *parietes*. See 378.  
 War. *Bellum*, *i*, n.  
 Warrior. *Is qui bellum gerit* (*gero*, *äre*, *gessi*, *gestum*). See 444.  
 Watch. *Vigilo*, *äre*, *ävi*, *ätum*.  
 Way, manner. *Modus*, *i*, m. In no way, *nullo modo*; in no thing, *nulla re*.  
 Wealth. *Divitiae*, *arum*, f. pl.  
 Wealthy. *Dives*, *itis*.  
 Weary. *Defatigo*, *äre*, *ävi*, *ätum*.  
 Weep at. *Illacrimor*, *äri*, *ätus sum*, dep. G. 386.  
 Weighty. *Gravis*, *e*.  
 Welfare, advantage. *Commödum*,

*i*, n. Highest welfare of the state, highest public welfare, *summa res publica*.  
 Well. *Bene*, adv. Well known, sometimes rendered by *ille*, *a*, *ud*. G. 450, 4.  
 What, interrog. *Qui*, *quae*, *quod*, adj.; *quis*, *quae*, *quid*, substant.  
 Whatever. *Quisquis*, *quaequae*, *quodquod* and *quicquid* or *quidquid*. Whatever = that which, *is*, *ea*, *id* — *qui*, *quae*, *quod*.  
 When. *Quum*, adv. When and while are sometimes rendered by the abl. abs., by a participle, by an adjective, or by an appositive. See Lesson LXXIX.; also G. 431, 1 and 2, (1); 578, I.; 442; 363, 3. When, interrog., *quando*, adv.  
 Where. *Ubi*, adv.  
 Whether. *Num*, conj.; in double questions, *utrum*; *num*; *ne*, enclit. conj. Whether — not, *nonne*. Whether — or, *utrum* — *an*. G. 346, II. 2.  
 Which, relat. *Qui*, *quae*, *quod*; interrog., *qui*, *quae*, *quod*, adj., *quis*, *quae*, *quid*, substant. Which one, of two, *uter*, *utra*, *utrum*. G. 149.  
 While. *Dum*, conj. G. 522. When, *quum*, conj. See also "When."  
 Who, which, what, relat. *Qui*, *quae*, *quod*; interrog., *qui*, *quae*, *quod*, adj., *quis*, *quae*, *quid*, substant.  
 Whoever. *Quisquis*, *quaequae*, *quodquod* and *quicquid* or *quidquid*. Whoever = he, etc. — who, *is*, *ea*, *id* — *qui*, *quae*, *quod*.  
 Whole, the whole of. *Totus*, *a*, *um*; G. 149; *cunctus*, *a*, *um*; *omnis*, *e*; *universus*, *a*, *um*.  
 Wholly, whole. *Totus*, *a*, *um*. G. 149; 443.  
 Why. *Quare*; *cur*; adv.; *quid*. G. 454, 2.  
 Wicked. *Scelerätus*, *a*, *um*; *improbus*, *a*, *um*.  
 Wickedness. *Scelus*, *ëris*, n.

Will — good will. *Benevolentia*,  
ae, f.

Willing — be willing. *Volo, velle*,  
volui. G. 293.

Willingly. *Libenter*, adv.

Winter. *Hiems, ĕmis*, f. Winter  
quarters, *hiberna, ōrum*, n. pl.

Wisdom. *Sapientia*, ae, f.

Wise. *Sapiens, entis*.

Wisely. *Sapienter*, adv.

Wish. *Volo, velle, volui*. G. 293.

With. *Cum*, prep. with abl. With,  
among, near to, at the house of,  
*apud*, prep. with acc. With is  
sometimes rendered by the abl.  
abs. With the attendance of,  
*comes, itis*, in abl. abs. With  
each other, *inter se*. G. 448, 1.  
With fire and sword, *ferro ignē-*  
*que*. See 117.

Withdraw, call off. *Arĕo, āre, āvi*,  
ātum. Withdraw, retire, *se re-*  
*movĕre* (*remōveo, ĕre, mōvi, mō-*  
*tum*); *deĕdo, ĕre, cessi, cessum*.

Within. *Intra*, prep. with acc.

Without. *Sine*, prep. with abl.;  
sometimes rendered by *nullus, a*,  
*um*, G. 149, in agreement with  
noun; sometimes by *quin*, conj.  
with subj. See 571; also G. 498,  
3. Without exception, alone,  
*unus, a, um*. G. 176, 1. With-  
out a nomination from the peo-  
ple, *injussu popŭli*. G. 414, 2,  
3). To be without, *vaco, āre*,  
āvi, ātum; *careo, ĕre, ui, itum*;  
*egĕo, ĕre, ui*. See 239, I.

Witness. *Testis, is*, m. and f.

Witness, to witness. *Specto, āre*,  
āvi, ātum.

Wonder, wonder at. *Miror, āri*,  
ātus sum, dep.

Wonderful. *Mirabilis, e*; *admi-*  
*rabĭlis, e*; *mirus, a, um*.

Wont, be wont. *Soleo, ĕre, solitus*  
sum.

Word. *Verbum, i*, n. Word for  
word, *ad verbum*. See 361.

Work, monument. *Monumentum*,  
*i*, n.

World. *Mundus, i*, m.

Worship. *Venĕror, āri, ātus sum*,  
dep.

Worth, moral worth. *Honestas*,  
ātis, f.; *virtus, ūtis*, f.

Worthily. *Digne*, adv.

Worthy. *Dignus, a, um*.

Would rather. *Malo, malle, malui*.  
G. 293.

Would that. *Utinam*, adv. G.  
488, 1.

Write. *Scribo, ĕre, scripsi, scrip-*  
*tum*.

Writing. *Scriptum, i*, n. To com-  
mit to writing, *littĕris mando*,  
āre, āvi, ātum.

Wrong. *Pravus, a, um*.

Wrong, crime. *Nefas*, n. indecl.

## X.

Xenophon. *Xenŏphon, ontis*, m.

Xerxes. *Xerxes, is*, m.

## Y.

Year. *Annus, i*, m.

Yesterday. *Hĕri*, adv.; *hesterno*  
*die*. G. 426. Yesterday's, of  
yesterday, *hesternus, a, um*.

Yet. *Tamen*, adv.

Yoke. *Jugum, i*, n.

You, thou. *Tu, tui*. You your-  
self, *ipse, a, um*.

Young man. *Adolescens, entis*, m.;  
*juvĕnis, is*, m.

Your. *Vester, tra, trum*. Your, thy,  
*tuus, a, um*. Your companions,  
&c., *vestri, ōrum*; *tui, ōrum*; m.  
pl. G. 441, 1.

Yourself, emphatic, not intensive.  
*Tu, tui*; intensive, *ipse, a, um*.  
By yourself, *tecum*.

Youth. *Juvĕnis, is*, m. and f.

## Z.

Zeal. *Studium, ii*, n.

## Arnold's Latin Course :

### **I. FIRST AND SECOND LATIN BOOK AND PRACTICAL GRAMMAR**

Revised and carefully Corrected, by J. A. SPENCER, D.D. 12mo, 359 pages.

### **II. PRACTICAL INTRODUCTION TO LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION. Re-**

vised and carefully Corrected, by J. A. SPENCER, D.D. 12mo, 356 pages.

### **III. CORNELIUS NEPOS. With Questions and Answers, and an Imitative Exercise on each Chapter. With Notes by E. A. JOHNSON, Professor of Latin in University of New York. New Edition, enlarged, with a Lexicon, Historical and Geographical Index, &c. 12mo, 350 pages.**

Arnold's Classical Series has attained a circulation almost unparalleled, having been introduced into nearly all the leading educational institutions in the United States. The secret of this success is, that the author has hit upon the true system of teaching the ancient languages. He exhibits them not as dead, but as living tongues; and by imitation and repetition, the means which nature herself points out to the child learning his mother tongue, he familiarizes the student with the idioms employed by the elegant writers and speakers of antiquity.

The First and Second Latin Book should be put in the hands of the beginners, who will soon acquire from its pages a better idea of the language than could be gained by months of study according to the old system. The reason of this is, that every thing has a practical bearing, and a principle is no sooner learned than it is applied. The pupil is at once set to work on exercises.

The Prose Composition forms an excellent sequel to the above work, or may be used with any other course. It teaches the art of writing Latin more correctly and thoroughly, more easily and pleasantly, than any other work. In its pages Latin synonyms are carefully illustrated, differences of idioms noted, cautions as to common errors impressed on the mind, and every help afforded toward attaining a pure and flowing Latin style.

*From N. WHEELER, Principal of Worcester County High School.*

"In the skill with which he sets forth the *idiomatic peculiarities*, as well as in the directness and simplicity with which he states the facts of the ancient languages, Mr. Arnold has no superior. I know of no books so admirably adapted to awaken an interest in the study of the language, or so well fitted to lay the foundation of a correct scholarship and refined taste."

*From A. B. RUSSELL, Oakland High School.*

"The style in which the books are got up are not their only recommendation. With thorough instruction on the part of the teacher using these books as text-books, I am confident a much more ample return for the time and labor bestowed by our youth upon Latin must be secured. The time certainly has come when an advance must be made upon the old methods of instruction. I am glad to have a work that promises so many advantages as Arnold's First and Second Latin Book to beginners."

*From C. M. BLAKE, Classical Teacher, Philadelphia.*

"I am much pleased with Arnold's Latin Books. A class of my older boys have just finished the First and Second Book. They had studied Latin for a long time before, but never understood it, they say, as they do now."

## Arnold's First Latin Book ;

Remodelled and Rewritten, and adapted to the Ollendorff Method of Instruction. By ALBERT HARKNESS, A.M. 12mo, 302 pages.

Under the labors of the present author, the work of Arnold has undergone radical changes. It has been adapted to the Ollendorff improved method of instruction, and is superior to the former work in its plan and all the details of instruction. While it proceeds in common with Arnold on the principle of imitation and repetition, it pursues much more exactly and with a surer step the progressive method, and aims to make the pupil master of every individual subject before he proceeds to a new one, and of each subject by itself before it is combined with others ; so that he is brought gradually and surely to understand the most difficult combinations of the language. An important feature of this book is, that it carries along the Syntax *part passé* with the Etymology, so that the student is not only all the while becoming familiar with the forms of the language, but is also learning to construct sentences and to understand the mutual relations of their component parts.

Special care has been taken in the exercises to present such idioms and expressions alone as are authorized by the best classic authors, so that the learner may acquire, by example as well as precept, a distinct idea of pure Latinity.

It has been a leading object with the author so to classify and arrange the various topics as to simplify the subject, and, as far as possible, to remove the disheartening difficulties too often encountered at the outset in the study of an ancient language.

*From W. E. TOLMAN, Instructor in Providence High School.*

"I have used Arnold's First Latin Book, remodelled and rewritten by Mr. Harkness, in my classes during the past year, and find it to be a work not so much remodelled and rewritten as one *entirely new*, both in its plan and in its adaptation to the wants of the beginner in Latin."

*From WM. RUSSELL, Editor of the First Series of the Boston Journal of Education.*

"The form which this work has taken under the skillful hand of Mr. H. is marked throughout by a method purely elementary, perfectly simple, gradually progressive, and rigorously exact. Pupils trained on such a manual cannot fail of becoming distinguished, in their subsequent progress, for precision and correctness of knowledge, and for rapid advancement in genuine scholarship."

*From GEORGE CAPRON, Principal of Worcester High School.*

"I have examined the work with care, and am happy to say that I find it superior to any similar work with which I am acquainted. I shall recommend it to my next class."

*From J. B. BOIER, Professor of Ancient Languages in Michigan University.*

"I have examined your First Book in Latin, and am exceedingly pleased both with the plan and execution. I shall not fail to use my influence toward introducing it into the classical schools of this State."

## Second Latin Book ;

Comprising an Historical Latin Reader, with Notes and Rules for Translating, and an Exercise Book, developing a Complete Analytical Syntax, in a series of Lessons and Exercises, involving the Construction, Analysis, and Reconstruction of Latin Sentences. By ALBERT HARKNESS, A.M., Senior Master in the Providence High School. 12mo, 362 pages.

This work is designed as a sequel to the author's "First Latin Book." It comprises a complete analytical syntax, exhibiting the essential structure of the Latin language, from its simplest to its most expanded and elaborate form.

The arrangement of the lessons is decidedly philosophical, gradually progressive, and in strict accordance with the law of development of the human mind. Every new principle is stated in simple, clear, and accurate language, and illustrated by examples carefully selected from the reading lessons, which the student is required to translate, analyze, and reconstruct. He is also exercised in forming new Latin sentences on given models. This, while it gives variety and interest to what would otherwise be in the highest degree monotonous, completely fixes in the mind the subject of the lesson, both by analysis and synthesis.

The careful study of this volume, on the plan recommended by the author, will greatly facilitate the pupil's progress in the higher departments of the language. Such is the testimony of the numerous institutions in which Harkness's improved edition of Arnold has been introduced.

*From J. A. SPENCER, D.D., late Professor of Latin in Burlington College, N. J.*

"The present volume appears to me to carry out excellently the system on which the late lamented Arnold based his educational works; and in the Selections for Reading, the Notes and Rules for Translating, the Exercises in Translating into Latin, the Analyses, &c., I think it admirably adapted to advance the diligent student, not only rapidly, but soundly, in an acquaintance with the Latin language."

*From PROF. GAMMELL, of Brown University.*

"The book seems to me, as I anticipated it would be, a valuable addition to the works now in use among teachers of Latin in the schools of the United States, and for many of them it will undoubtedly form an advantageous substitute."

*From PROF. LINCOLN, of Brown University.*

"It seems to me to carry on most successfully the method pursued in the First Book. Though brief, it is very comprehensive, and combines judicious and skillfully formed exercises with systematic instruction."

*From J. J. OWEN, D.D., Professor of the Latin and Greek Languages and Literature in the Free Academy, New York.*

"This Second Latin Book gives abundant evidence of the author's learning and tact to arrange, simplify, and make accessible to the youthful mind the great and fundamental principles of the Latin language. The book is worthy of a place in every classical school, and I trust will have an extensive sale."

*From PROF. ANDERSON, of Lewisburg University, Pennsylvania.*

"A faithful use of the work would diminish the drudgery of the student's earlier studies, and facilitate his progress in his subsequent course. I wish the work a wide circulation."

## A Latin Grammar for Schools and Colleges

By A. HARKNESS, PH.D., Professor in Brown University.

To explain the general plan of the work, the Publishers ask the attention of teachers to the following extracts from the Preface :

1. This volume is designed to present a systematic arrangement of the great facts and laws of the Latin language; to exhibit not only grammatical forms and constructions, but also those *vital principles* which underlie, control, and explain them.

2. Designed at once as a text-book for the class-room, and a book of reference in study, it aims to introduce the beginner easily and pleasantly to the first principles of the language, and yet to make adequate provision for the wants of the more advanced student.

3. By brevity and conciseness in the choice of phraseology and compactness in the arrangement of forms and topics, the author has endeavored to compress within the limits of a convenient manual an amount of carefully-selected grammatical facts, which would otherwise fill a much larger volume.

4. He has, moreover, endeavored to present the whole subject in the light of modern scholarship. Without encumbering his pages with any unnecessary discussions, he has aimed to enrich them with the *practical results* of the recent labors in the field of philology.

5. Syntax has received in every part special attention. An attempt has been made to exhibit, as clearly as possible, that beautiful system of laws which the genius of the language—that highest of all grammatical authority—has created for itself.

6. Topics which require extended illustration are first presented in their completeness in general outline, before the separate points are discussed in detail. Thus a single page often foreshadows all the leading features of an extended discussion, imparting a completeness and vividness to the impression of the learner, impossible under any other treatment.

7. Special care has been taken to explain and illustrate with the requisite fulness all difficult and intricate subjects. The Subjunctive Mood—that severest trial of the teacher's patience—has been presented, it is hoped, in a form at once simple and comprehensive.

## Harkness's Latin Grammar.

*From Rev. Prof. J. J. OWEN, D.D., New York Free Academy.*

"I have carefully examined Harkness's Latin Grammar, and am so well pleased with its plan, arrangement, and execution, that I shall take the earliest opportunity of introducing it as a text-book in the Free Academy."

*From Mr. JOHN D. PHILBRICK, Superintendent of Public Schools, Boston, Mass.*

"This work is evidently no hasty performance, nor the compilation of a mere book maker, but the well-ripened fruit of mature and accurate scholarship. It is eminently practical, because it is truly philosophical."

*From Mr. G. N. BIGELOW, Principal of State Normal School, Framingham, Mass.*

"Harkness's Latin Grammar is the most satisfactory text-book I have ever used."

*From Rev. DANIEL LEACH, Superintendent Public Schools, Providence, R. I.*

"I am quite confident that it is superior to any Latin Grammar before the public. It has recently been introduced into the High School, and all are much pleased with it."

*From Dr. J. B. CHAPIN, State Commissioner of Public Instruction in Rhode Island.*

"The vital principles of the language are clearly and beautifully exhibited. The work needs no one's commendation."

*From Mr. ABNER J. PHIPPS, Superintendent of Public Schools, Lowell, Mass.*

"The aim of the author seems to be fully realized in making this a useful Book, and as such I can cheerfully commend it. The clear and admirable manner in which the intricacies of the Subjunctive Mood are unfolded, is one of its marked features."

"The evidence of ripe scholarship and of familiarity with the latest works of German and English philologists is manifest throughout the book."

*From Dr. J. T. CHAMPLIN, President of Waterville College.*

"I like both the plan and the execution of the work very much. Its matter and manner are both admirable. I shall be greatly disappointed if it does not at once win the public favor."

*From Prof. A. S. PACKARD, Bowdoin College, Brunswick, Maine.*

"Harkness's Latin Grammar exhibits throughout the results of thorough scholarship. I shall recommend it in our next catalogue."

*From Prof. J. J. STANTON, Bates College.*

"We have introduced Harkness's Grammar into this Institution. It is much more logical and concise than any of its rivals."

*From Mr. WM. J. ROLFE, Principal Cambridge High School.*

"Notwithstanding all the inconveniences that must attend a change of Latin Grammars in a large school like mine, I shall endeavor to secure the adoption of Harkness's Grammar in place of our present text-book as soon as possible."

*From Mr. L. R. WILLISTON, Principal Ladies' Seminary, Cambridge, Mass.*

"I think this work a decided advance upon the Grammar now in use."

*From Mr. D. B. HAGER, Principal Elliot High School, Jamaica Plain, Mass.*

"This is, in my opinion, by far the best Latin Grammar ever published. It is admirably adapted to the use of learners, being remarkably concise, clear, comprehensive and philosophical. It will henceforth be used as a text-book in this school."



## Harkness's Latin Grammar.

*From Prof. C. S. HARRINGTON and Prof. J. C. VAN BENSCHOTEN, of the Wesleyan University.*

"This work is clear, accurate, and happy in its statement of principles, is simple yet scholarly, and embraces the latest researches in this department of philological science. It will appear in our catalogue."

*From Mr. ELBRIDGE SMITH, Principal Free Academy, Norwich, Ct.*

"This is not only the best Latin Grammar, but one of the most thoroughly prepared school-books that I have ever seen. I have introduced the book into the Free Academy, and am much pleased with the results of a month's experience in the class-room."

*From Mr. H. A. PRATT, Principal High School, Hartford, Ct.*

"I can heartily recommend Harkness's new work to both teachers and scholars. It is, in my judgment, the best Latin Grammar ever offered to our schools."

*From Mr. I. F. CADY, Principal High School, Warren, R. I.*

"The longer I use Harkness's Grammar the more fully am I convinced of its superior excellence. Its merits must secure its adoption wherever it becomes known."

*From Messrs. S. THURBER and T. B. STOCKWELL, Public High School, Providence.*

"An experience of several weeks with Harkness's Latin Grammar, enables us to say with confidence, that it is an improvement on our former text-book."

*From Mr. C. B. GOFF, Principal Boys' Classical High School, Providence, R. I.*

"The practical working of Harkness's Grammar is gratifying even beyond my expectations."

*From Rev. Prof. M. H. BUCKHAM, University of Vermont.*

"Harkness's Latin Grammar seems to me to supply the desideratum. It is philosophical in its method, and yet simple and clear in its statements; and this, in my judgment, is the highest encomium which can be bestowed on a text-book."

*From Mr. E. T. QUIMBY, Appleton Academy, New Ipswich, N. H.*

"I think the book much superior to any other I have seen. I should be glad to introduce it at once."

*From Mr. H. ORCUTT, Glenwood Ladies' Seminary, W. Brattleboro', Vt.*

"I am pleased with Harkness's Latin Grammar, and have already introduced it into this seminary."

*From Mr. CHARLES JEWETT, Principal of Franklin Academy.*

"I deem it an admirable work, and think it will supersede all others now in use. In the division and arrangement of topics, and in its mechanical execution, it is superior to any Latin Grammar extant."

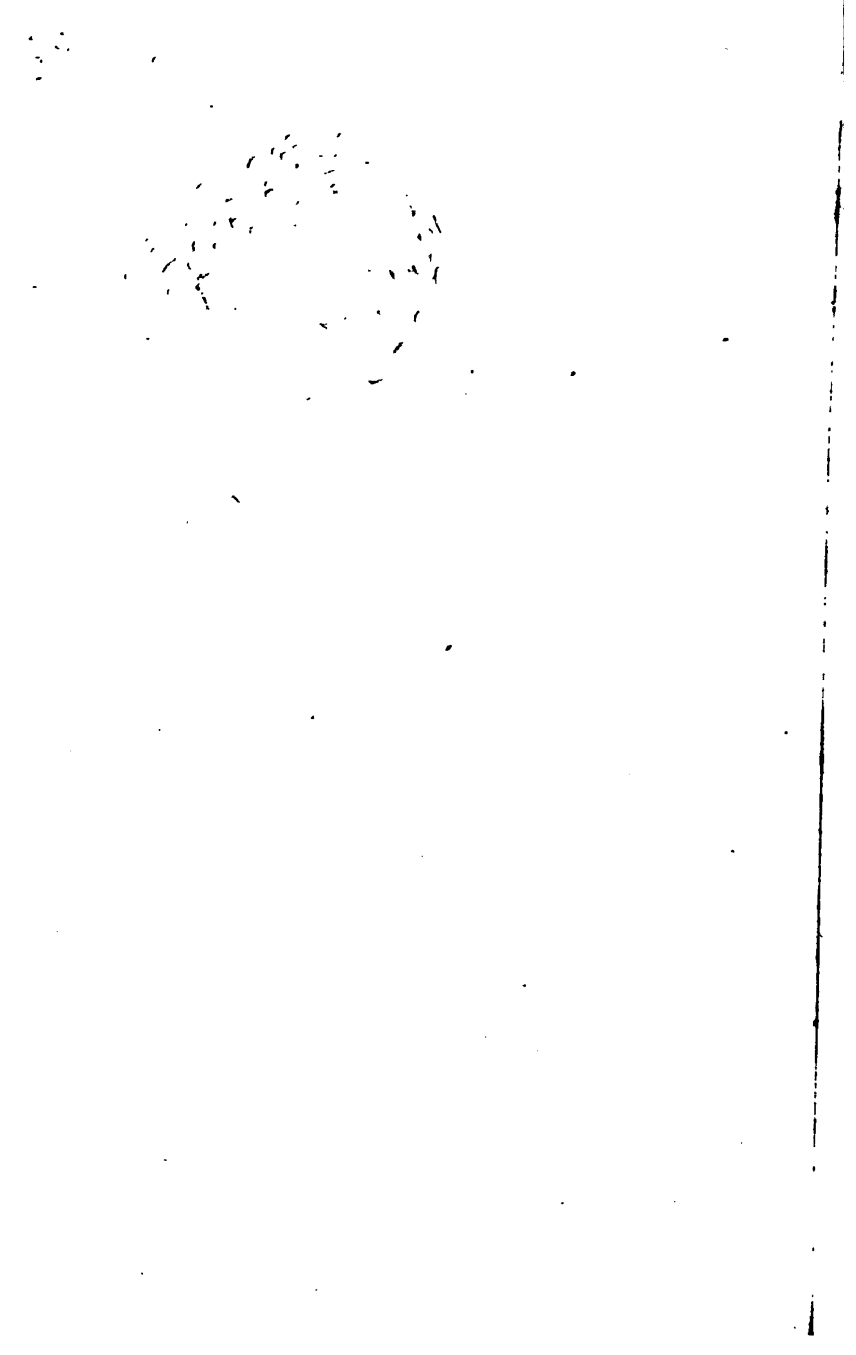
*From Mr. C. C. CHASE, Principal of Lowell High School.*

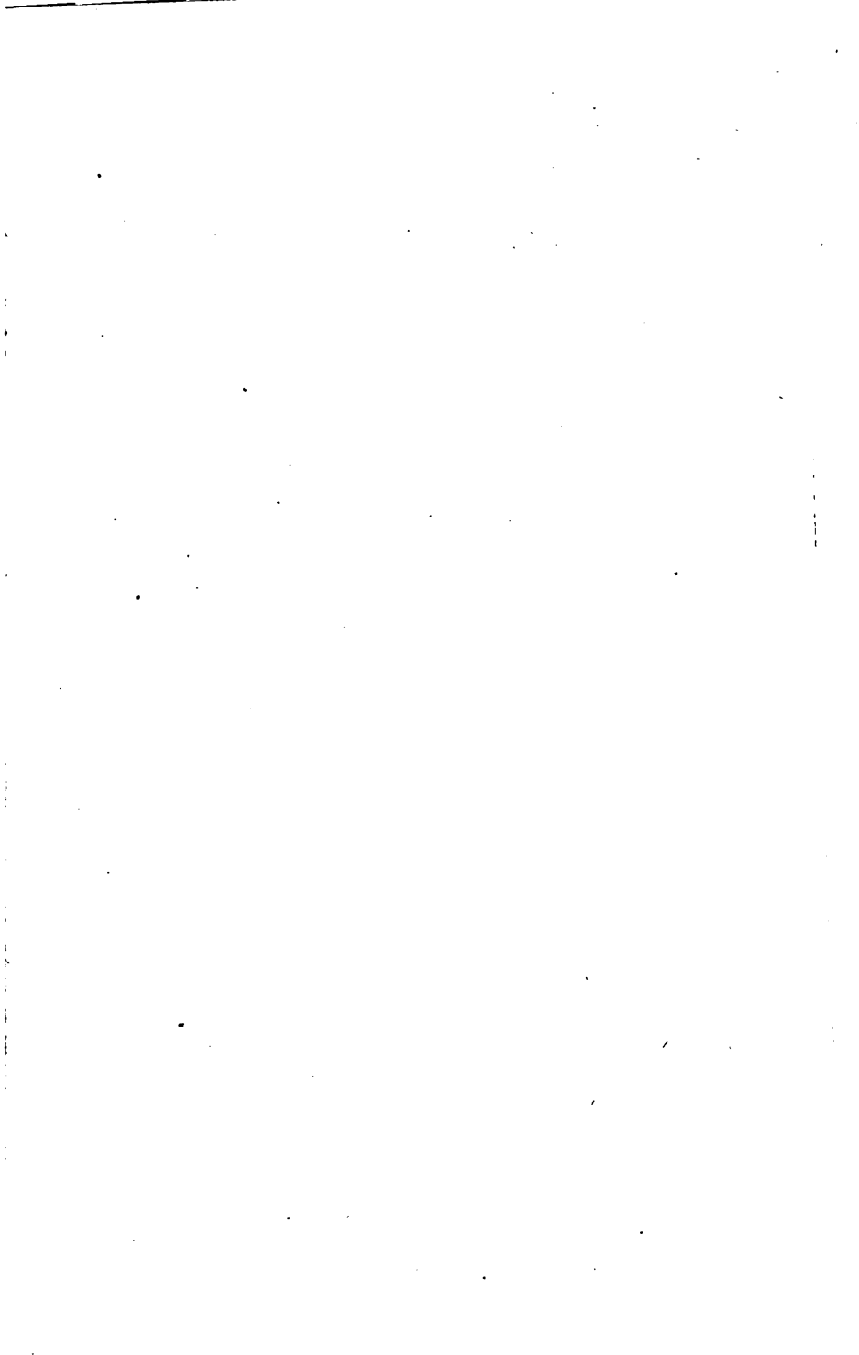
"Prof. Harkness's Grammar is, in my opinion, admirably adapted to make the study of the Latin language agreeable and interesting."

*From Mr. J. KIMBALL, High School, Dorchester, Mass.*

"It meets my ideal of what is desirable in every grammar, to wit: compression of general principles in terse definitions and statements, for ready use; and fulness of detail, well arranged for reference."







## Standard Classical Works.

**Arnold's Practical Introduction to Greek Prose Composition.\*** 12mo. 297 pages.

**Arnold's Second Part to the above.\*** 12mo. 248 pages.

**Arnold's Greek Reading Book.** Containing the Substance of the Practical Introduction to Greek Construing and a Treatise on the Greek Particles; also, Copious Selections from Greek Authors, with Critical and Explanatory English Notes, and a Lexicon. 12mo. 618 pages.

Dr. Arnold's Greek Courses have been carefully revised, corrected, and improved by J. A. SPENCER, D.D., making them a thorough, practical, and easy Greek course.

**Boise's Exercises in Greek Prose Composition.**

Adapted to the First Book of Xenophon's Anabasis. By JAMES R. BOISE, Professor of Greek in University of Michigan. 12mo. 185 pages.

**Champlin's Short and Comprehensive Greek Grammar.** By J. T. CHAMPLIN, Professor of Greek and Latin in Waterville College. 12mo. 208 pages.

**First Lessons in Greek;** or, the Beginner's Comparison-Book to Hadley's Grammar. By JAMES MORRIS WHITON, rector of Hopkins's Grammar School, New Haven, Ct. 12mo.

**Hadley's Greek Grammar,\*** for Schools and Colleges. By JAMES HADLEY, Professor in Yale College. 12mo. 866 pages.

**Herodotus, Selections from;** Comprising mainly such portions as give a Connected History of the East, to the Fall of Babylon and the Death of Cyrus the Great. By HERMAN M. JOHNSON D.D., Professor of Philosophy and English Literature in Dickinson College. 12mo. 185 pages.

**Homer's Iliad,** according to the Text of WOLF, with Notes by JOHN J. OWEN, D.D., LL.D., Professor of the Latin and Greek Languages and Literature in the Free Academy of the City of New York. 1 vol., 12mo. 740 pages.

**Homer's Odyssey,** according to the Text of WOLF, with Notes by JOHN J. OWEN. Sixteenth Edition. 12mo.

**Kuhner's Greek Grammar.** Translated by Professors EDWARDS and TAYLOR. Large 12mo. 620 pages.

**Kendrick's Greek Ollendorff.\*** Being a Progressive Exhibition of the Principles of the Greek Grammar. By ASAHEL C. KENDRICK, Professor of Greek Language in the University of Rochester. 12mo. 871 pages.

**Owen's Greek Reader:** Containing selections from various authors. Adapted to Sophocles' and Kuhner's Grammars. With Notes and a Lexicon by JOHN J. OWEN. New and Revised Edition. With Map. 12mo.

